

Manual for FOMA[®] D901i '05.1



Contents/Cautions

Before Using D901i

Making/Receiving Calls

Video-phone Calls

Phonebook

Sounds/Displays/Lights

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode

Mail

i-appli

i-motion

Data Management

Other Convenient Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Character Entry

Appendix

INDEX/Quick Reference

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D901i.

Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D901i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone and those other related devices so that you are able to use them correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, call the number for General Inquiries that is listed on the back of this manual. Your FOMA D901i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Before using this manual

Be sure to thoroughly read this manual before using your FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card). Use with care when storing the manual to avoid losing or misplacing it.

How to refer this manual

- Refer to the front cover and side indexes:
Select to look at operation items or functions of the front cover or side indexes.
- Refer to the Contents:
Select to look at operation items or functions of the Contents. ➡P2
- Refer to the Index:
Select to look at operation items or functions of the Index. ➡P580
- Refer to the features. ➡P4
- Use Quick Reference Manual. ➡P588

- In the manual for FOMA D901i, the FOMA D901i is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- This manual explains functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is required separately.
Before using the miniSD memory card ➡P387
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Note: Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" on P8.

The structure of this manual and the manner of description are explained here.

- The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations. ▶P29
For shortcut operations for the each menu item, see the menu list. ▶P524
- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with  (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing  (enter key) is referred to as “select”. Also, the step of pressing  which requires after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.
- When there are two or more possible operation procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into the entry field). ▶P512
- The images or illustration provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual displays or products.

Title

Notes for operation

INDEX
Chapter title

Important screens displayed while in operation or performing steps

Supplement to operation

Status Message
Setting Status Message

[Default](#) [On-hold tone](#) [Standard](#)

You can record a response hold guidance in your own voice.

- One guidance up to 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or a video-phone call is on Response and Hold, the status message set by this function is played.

Example Setting a recorded data for guidance

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[8]** **[5]** **[7]** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **On-hold tone** field and press **[2]** **[5]**.
• Press **[1]** and go to Step 4 to reset to the default message.
- 3 Select **“Record”** in Edit message field and speak the response hold guidance after the beep.


➔


An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

Recording will start after the message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the start of recording.
- Press  to stop in the middle of the guidance recording.
- “Record” cannot be selected when a recorded data has already been registered. Select “Delete”, select “Yes” and record after deleting the recorded data.
- Select “Play” to check the recorded status message.

- 4 Press **[0]**.

INFORMATION

- If “Standard” is set for On-hold tone, the guidance “I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)” is played for the other party while on Response and Hold.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the default status guidance is reset.

Default setting

Functional overview

Basic operating procedure

Indicates the following screen exists

INFORMATION
Useful information or reference pages

72

INFORMATION

- Some screens do not support bilingual function and are displayed in Japanese. The Japanese terms which are used in this manual are described both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
Before using this manual.....	Inside front cover
How to use this manual.....	1
Features of FOMA D901i	4
Making full use of D901i.....	6
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions).....	8
Handling instructions.....	18
About intellectual property rights	20
Basic package and optional accessories	22

Before Using D901i

23

Names and functions of parts Reading display Menu selection
 Using UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing battery pack Charging
 Battery Level Check Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting
 Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls

49

Making calls Redial 186/184 WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
 Open Answer Close Setting Received Calls Volume Ring volume
 Response and Hold Driving Mode Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

81

Making video-phone calls Receiving video-phone calls Chara-den
 Setting images to send Customizing video-phone call display
 Video-phone Setting etc.

Phonebook

101

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
 Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

127

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Stand-by Display
 Mail/Call Image Illumination Setting Clock Display Format etc.

Safety settings

151

Security Code Change Terminal Security Code PIN code All Lock
 Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting
 Key Lock Remote Lock Secret Mode etc.

Camera

173

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode

197

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
 Bookmark Screen Memo Save Image i-melody i-mode Setting Message R/F
 Certificate etc.

Mail**241**

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Saving i-mode Mail
 Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message Mail Setting Chat Mail
 Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-α ppli**319**

Download Starting software i-α ppli To function i-α ppli Stand-by Display etc.

i-motion**345**

i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data**351**

Displaying image Playing video/i-motion Chara-den Playing melody
 miniSD memory card Managing data Infrared communication
 Sound Recorder etc.

Other Convenient Functions**419**

Multiaccess Multitask Edit by Slide Auto Power ON/OFF Alarm
 Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Call Duration/Call Cost
 Calculator Notepad Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch
 Reset Delete All Data etc.

Network Services**461**

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking
 Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number
 Arrival Call Act Remote Control etc.

Data Communication**475**

Data communication Connecting PC Installing communication configuration file
 Using FOMA PC configuration software AT command etc.

Character Entry**511**

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character
 KUTEN Code Input Save Word Slot Input Method Input Method Setting

Appendix**523**

Menu list List of dial keys and character assignments Troubleshooting
 Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update
 Virus Scan Function etc.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual**579**

Features of FOMA D901i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation wireless communications (IMT-2000).

**It's amazing
because it's
i-mode!**

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode devices. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet web sites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode mail.

Main functions of FOMA D901i

3D x 3D

The powerful 3D sounds and beautiful 3D graphics allow you to enjoy realistic games such as car race games. Your FOMA terminal provides the preinstalled game "電車でGO! 3D サウンド 山手線一周 (Go by Train! 3D Sound: Going round in Yamanote line)".
●P129, P325, P329

Deco-mail

You can compose and send your original messages by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text. Enjoy expressive decorated mail.
●P253

Chara-den

You can choose to display a preset character or a downloaded character instead of your image during video-phone call. A motion and expression can also be attached to the character by key operation. ●P88, P376

Infrared communication and infrared remote control

You can use the infrared communication function to exchange data between two FOMA terminals. In addition, devices that support TV infrared remote control can be operated from your FOMA terminal. ●P406, P413

Safety settings

Key Lock

Prevents from the wrong operation of keys when FOMA terminal is closed. ●P163

Privacy Mode

By setting Privacy Mode, access to phonebook entries, mail messages, images, schedules, received call list, redial list is prevented without entering the terminal security code. You can also set Privacy Mode automatically when you do nothing for a certain period of time on FOMA terminal. ●P161

Secret Mode

The phonebook data and the schedule data that have set a secret attribute can not be displayed except when Secret Mode is ON. ●P166

Note: For details on other Safety settings, see P151

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (paid service)*1 ●P463
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ●P466
- Short Message Service (SMS) (free of charge)*2
●P310

*1 Separate application is required.

- Call Waiting Service (paid service)*1 ●P465
- Dual Network Service (paid service)*1 ●P470

*2 Separate application is not required.

Useful functions

Functions interlocked with slide operation

- To receive an incoming call, open FOMA terminal by slide operation. ●P64
To put the call on hold or end the conversation, close it. ●P64
- The received message reply screen or the schedule edit screen can be displayed by only opening FOMA terminal. ●P426

Video-phone

Phone conversations can be made while displaying both your image and the other party's image simultaneously. Instead of your image, you can send another image such as scenery by switching to the out-camera. ●P82

High resolution video recording/playback

You can record or play smooth motion video. Moreover, recording and replaying video on the display of the QVGA size (240 x 320 dots) are possible. ●P184, P366

High-quality melody playback

The FOMA terminal also supports ring tones such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects, etc. (ADPCM sounds).

Built-in camera

An out-camera and in-camera, which is useful for shooting yourself, are provided and can be switched when shooting. You can take images with the out-camera or in-camera while viewing the large display with FOMA terminal closed. You can shoot a still image of up to 2M pixels using Auto Focus. In addition to Max 20 x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and continuous shooting. ●P174

[Out-camera] Effective pixels: 2M

(Max record pixels: 2M)

[In-camera] Effective pixels: 320K

(Max record pixels: 310K)

Support for i-appli/i-appli DX

You can conveniently use FOMA terminal by downloading software from sites. FOMA terminal also supports the i-α ppli stand-by display and the i-α ppli DX. ●P320

Multi-indicator

When a call arrives, the multi-indicator flashes in the lighting pattern you set. You can choose from various lighting patterns. ●P147

Large high-definition display

The 2.4-inch TFT LCD (240 x 320 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters.

i-motion

Video/sound can be downloaded from sites or Internet to enjoy them. i-motion obtained can be set to a ring tone or incoming image (Movie ringtone). ●P346

i-motion Mail

Video taken with the built-in camera or i-motion downloaded from sites can be attached to i-mode Mail to send them. ●P260

i-shot

Still images shot with the built-in camera can be attached to i-mode Mail to send them. ●P260

Chat mail

You can send and receive mail like making conversation by registering chat members. ●P303

Multiaccess function

Voice call and packet communication can be used simultaneously. This allows you to talk during an i-mode connection or send/receive mail while talking. ●P420

Multitask function

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can read mail or register phonebook entries while making a call. ●P423

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned using the built-in camera. You can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail. ●P194

Advanced functions for external data interchange

Support for miniSD memory card

A miniSD memory card enables you to back up data stored in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook entries and mail messages. ●P387

USB storage

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional), the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of a PC. ●P479

Making full use of D901i

A variety of functions of D901i visual communications are explained here.



Chara-den to express your feeling

During video-phone call, you can send a character instead of your image to have it display on the other party's screen. Actions such as movement and expression can be attached to the character by key operation to express your feeling. ●P88, P376

Your screen



©BVIG

Press dial keys to have a character make actions

Other party's screen



©BVIG

A character moves

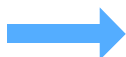


One-shot Message to send images

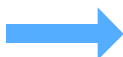
You can shoot an image with the camera during a voice call and mail it immediately to the other party. ●P193



While talking



Shoot an image while talking



Mail address stored in the phonebook is set and you can easily compose and send mail



Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) to signal incoming calls and alarms

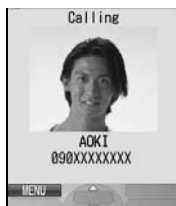
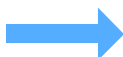
If i-motion or video recorded with D901i is set for ring alert, incoming calls are notified by the video with image and voice/sound. You can also register the other party's video in the phonebook. ●P369

If i-motion or video is set for an alarm, the set time is informed by the video with image and voice/sound.

●P428, P433



Set video in the phonebook



Video with image and voice/sound is played when a call arrives



Plentiful stand-by display

The FOMA terminal allows you to view and check the display quickly on the large screen because of the slide system. Also, you can choose from various types of clock display. ●P149

By displaying information on unread mail, missed calls, calendars or schedules on the stand-by display, those detailed screens can be opened with simple operations (Custom stand-by display). ●P138

Example of the clock display



Custom stand-by display



Press to select an area

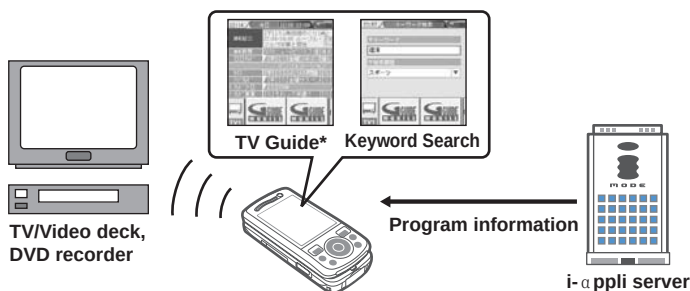


Check the contents



G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

The FOMA terminal is equipped with an i-appli "G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller" for operating the TV, video deck and DVD recorder remotely while viewing the TV program information. In addition, you can search for TV program information using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. It allows to register a TV program in the FOMA terminal's Scheduler and sound an alarm when the TV program starts. ●P332

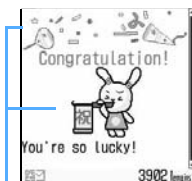


* The display shown here represents an example and may differ from the actual display. Channels according to the home area are displayed.



Deco-mail

This function allows you to create your original message by changing the character color and background color or by pasting images in the text. Deco-mail picture is preinstalled to quickly set an image in the text. ●P253 You can also use Deco-mail template. ●P262



Example of Deco-mail picture



Example of Deco-mail template

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.

 DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.

 This indicates the action is prohibited.			
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.		This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.		

 This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.	
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

- The SAFETY PRECAUTIONS are separated into six categories.

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM (general information) ...	P9
Handling FOMA terminal	P10
Handling battery pack	P12
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder)	P14
Handling UIM (FOMA card)	P16
Handling FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices	P17



DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

- Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D03

Desktop holder: D03

Rear cover: D03

FOMA AC adapter: 01

FOMA DC adapter: 01

For additional details about compatible products, check with your nearest DoCoMo service center.



WARNING



Do not use in environments exposed to combustible or explosive materials, such as a gas station.

- Using the equipment in locations exposed to flammable gases or liquids such as propane or gasoline could cause fire or explosion.



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal or adapter (and charger) in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other cooking device.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



Carry out the following immediately should you detect smoke, strange smells or some other malfunction.

1. Remove the power plug from the power outlet or power socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

- In such a situation, continuing to use (charge) the equipment could cause fire or other failure. Remove the battery pack and contact your nearest DoCoMo service center.



Do not use or place the components close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause to overheat, rupture or catch fire.



CAUTION



Keep out of the reach of small children.

- The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.

- Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.

- Doing so could damage the equipment.



Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.

- Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Do not use or leave the components in locations exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as a car exposed to the hot sun.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire, and the equipment to malfunction or deform. Part of the case may become very hot, causing burn injuries, etc.

Handling FOMA terminal



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipments. If the auto power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.
If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.
Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment.
Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.

- The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.



WARNING



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.

- Use of the FOMA terminal in vehicles could cause unsafe driving conditions. Park the car in a safe place before using the phone or use Driving Mode. From November 1, 2004, the Road Traffic Law has been revised and using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations.



Do not disassemble or alter.

- Doing so could cause fire, injury, electric shock or damage to the equipment.



Do not aim the infrared port at your eyes and attempt to transmit.

- Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.



Do not hold the FOMA terminal close to your ear during speakerphone operation.

- Doing so could cause the hearing loss.



Do not aim the Compact light toward oncoming vehicles or other drivers.

- The other driver could be temporarily blinded or momentarily startled, causing an accident.



CAUTION



Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.

- Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
Slide rails on the back side of the display, surroundings of the out-camera, and surroundings of Easy Selector Plus and other keys (display side)	Aluminum
Easy Selector Plus except the center key,  ,  ,  ,  , 	Chromium plating (The metallic paint is used in the part of blue color.)
 , 	Chromium plating



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.

- Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.

- Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.



CAUTION



Do not expose the FOMA terminal to water.

- The FOMA terminal may overheat, cause electric shock, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where it could get wet.



Do not bring magnetic cards, etc. near the FOMA terminal.

- Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



Do not use the Compact light for purposes other than for use with the camera.

- The Compact light is turned off if no action is taken. In such a case, the surrounding environment could suddenly become dark, possibly inadvertently causing an accident.



Do not hold your finger inside when closing the FOMA terminal.

- Doing so could cause injury.



Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.

- As use of the FOMA terminal while driving could cause unsafe driving conditions, do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.



Do not aim the Compact light at your eyes and attempt to transmit. When the Compact light is on, do not look at the lighting part directly.

- Your vision could be adversely affected.



Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.

- Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.

Handling battery pack

- Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
リチウムポリマー	Lithium polymer battery



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.

- Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not use or place the battery pack close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



DANGER



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not expose the battery pack to water.

- The battery pack could overheat, cause electric shock or be damaged if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the battery pack in locations where it could be exposed to liquids.



Do not disassemble or alter. Do not directly solder.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.

- Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.

- Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If you notice any unusual conditions such as strange odors, overheating, discoloration or deformation while using, charging or storing the battery pack, immediately detach it from the FOMA terminal and stop using it.

- Continued use under such conditions could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.

- Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



Do not use or leave the battery pack in areas exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as in a car left in the hot sun.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak or overheat, and lead to loss of performance or shorten battery life.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.

- Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer in use and take it to any DoCoMo service center. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.



WARNING



Use care to not short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.

- Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

- Doing so could cause electric shock.



Do not expose the adapter (and charger) to water.

- The adapter may overheat, cause electric shock or be damaged if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the adapter in locations where it could get wet.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.

- Doing so could cause electric shock.



Never use the adapter (or charger) when it has a damaged power cord.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.

- Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using your FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: 100V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter
: 100V to 240V

(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)

DC adapter: 12V DC, 24V DC
(specific for negative ground)
vehicle)



Do not disassemble or alter the adapter (and charger) or holder.

- Doing so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



WARNING



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.

- Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Never use them with positive ground cars.

- Doing so could result in fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

- Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.

- Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



If it is difficult to disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, do not attempt to forcefully disconnect.

- Doing so could damage the equipment, resulting in electric shock or accident.



Do not carry out using beyond the rating of a wall outlet or wiring accessories.

- Using in excess of rating such as plugging too many leads into a single socket could cause overheat or fire.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.

- Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

- Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.



Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.

- Doing so could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Never attempt to charge the battery pack when it is wet.

- Doing so could cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Do not place the UIM in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.



CAUTION



Store the UIM out of reach of small children.

- The UIM can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Take care when removing the UIM (IC section).

- Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.



Do not expose the UIM to the heat or throw it into a fire.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.



Do not use or place the UIM close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.



Do not to damage the IC.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.



Do not touch the IC or short-circuit it.

- Doing so could cause data loss and failure.



Do not drop the UIM or expose it to shock.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.



Do not bend or place heavy objects on the UIM.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.



Do not expose the UIM to water.

- Exposing the UIM to water, urine from pet and other liquids could cause the UIM to fail.



Do not disassemble or alter the UIM.

- Doing so could cause data loss or damage.



Do not store the UIM in a location exposed to direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.



Do not store the UIM in a dusty location.

- Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.



CAUTION



Use the UIM only with devices designated by NTT DoCoMo.

- Using the UIM with other devices could lead to data loss or failure. Consult a DoCoMo service center for details on what devices the UIM can be used with.

Using FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the auto power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Handling instructions

General

- Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.

In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

- Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.

- Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).

- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

- Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

- Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

- Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

- Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

- Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with an ambient temperature of 5-35 °C and relative humidity of 45-85%.

- If the FOMA terminal is used near a radios, televisions or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipments. Use the phone as far away from such equipments as possible.

- With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Doing so could damage the equipment.

- Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.

Doing so could damage the equipment and result in malfunction.

- Use the hand strap while holding the FOMA terminal.

Failure to do so could cause you to drop the phone, resulting in equipment failure.

- Usually, use the FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external device terminal cap, and the miniSD memory card slot cover closed.

Failure to do so could allow water or other contaminants to get inside the unit, causing equipment failure.

- Do not aim the camera directly at the sun.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

- It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

- Do not attach a thick seal on the back side of the display or on the keypad face.

Malfunction or damage may result.

Battery pack

- The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

- Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
- When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.
- The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.
- Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Tape the terminals of battery packs that are no longer needed and take them to an DoCoMo service center. Alternately, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.
- Recharge the battery pack once every 6 months even when you do not use the battery for a long time.
Failure to fully charge the battery pack periodically could negatively impact battery performance and service life.

Adaptor (and charger)

- Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
Do not recharge in the following locations:
 - Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
 - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios
- It is normal for the adaptor (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adaptor.
- When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adaptor, always keep the car engine running.
Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.
- When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

UIM (FOMA card)

- Do not use excessive force to remove the card's IC section.
- Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.
- The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer (external device) not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.
- Make sure that the IC is kept clean.
- Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the UIM.
- It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.
If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- Any UIMs that are no longer needed should be returned to an DoCoMo service center for proper disposal.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

miniSD memory card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, turn the power off or apply impact while using it.
The data may be corrupted.

[Shooting and sending images]

When you shoot images or send those images as mail attachments, pay careful attention to not infringe intellectual property rights such as copyrights and other rights including the right of portrait and right to privacy. If you infringe other's rights or shoot or send images as mail attachments that cause a nuisance or are against public order or morality, you may be punished as stipulated by law or be the subject of legal action claiming compensation.

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images or music for which another party owns the copyrights to, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet web sites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner. Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.

In addition, if you use this product to take a another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet web site and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

- Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.
- "FOMA", "movia", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-α ppli", "i-α ppli search", "i-melody", "i-anime", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "i-motion mail", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "Chara-den", "Multiaccess", "i-α ppli DX", "i-shot", "i-area", "Dual Network", "QUICKCAST", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", and the FOMA and i-mode logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- "キャッチホン (Call Waiting)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the USA and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the USA and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- This product contains NetFront v3.0 for FOMA to provide Internet functionality.
NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright© 1996-2004, ACCESS CO., LTD.
NetFront and **NetFront** are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
This software contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology of Macromedia, Inc. Copyright© 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the USA and other countries.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries. All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
- ©2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- miniSD™ and  are trademarks of the SD Card Association.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
- G-GUIDE Mobile and G-GUIDE Mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan. G-GUIDE, G-Code and G-GUIDE logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- “電車で GO ! ” is a trademark of TAITO CORPORATION.
©TAITO CORPORATION 1996, 2005 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
Commercialization is licensed by JR East Japan, JR West Japan, JR KYUSHU, and Hokuetsu express.
- “FLIPULL” is a trademark of TAITO CORPORATION.
©TAITO CORPORATION 1989, 2004 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

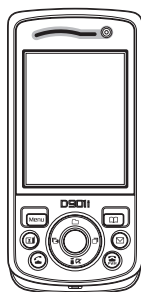
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA
 For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the USA.
- Coding by the video function of this product in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems standards has been permitted under the license for MPEG-4 Systems. Note that, however, additional licenses and payment for the royalty are required for the following cases:
 - When carrying out coding of data which is saved or copied in physical media, requiring payment for each title.
 - When carrying out coding of data which is transmitted to, saved and used by end users, requiring payment for each title.
 Additional licenses are available from MPEG LA, LLC in the USA. For details, contact MPEG LA, LLC in the USA.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

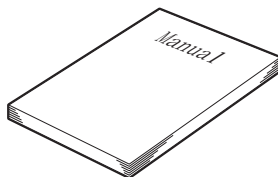
Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

FOMA D901i
(including the written
warranty and the rear
cover D03)

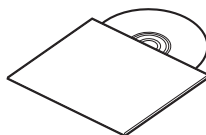


Instruction manual
(this book)



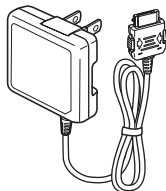
Quick Reference Manual is
appended on P588.

CD-ROM for FOMA
D901i

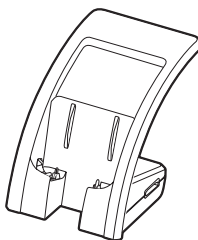


Optional accessories

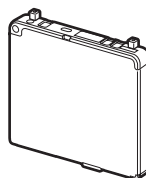
FOMA AC adapter 01
— optional —
(including the written
warranty and the instruction
manual)



Desktop holder D03
— optional —
(including the instruction
manual)



Battery pack D03
(including the
instruction manual)

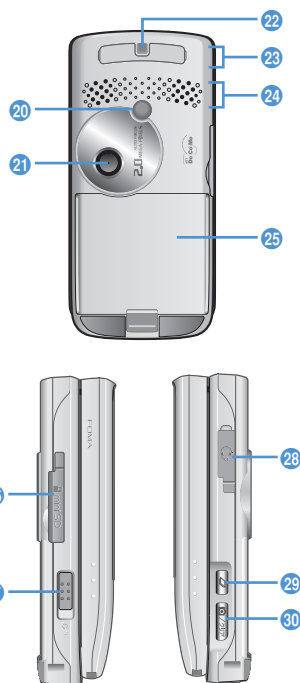
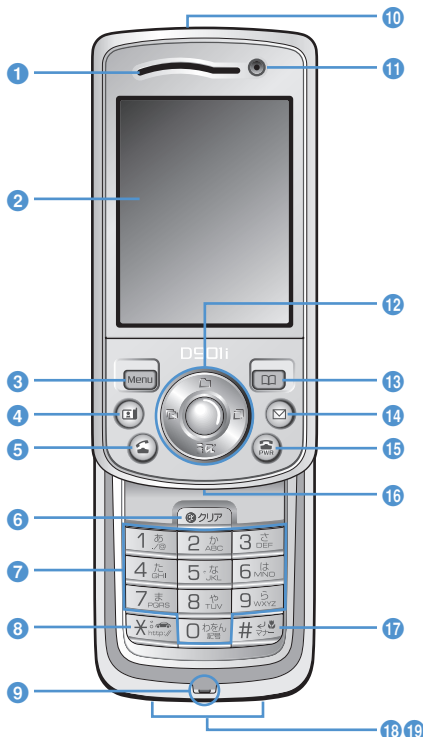


• Other optional accessories ➡ P550

Before Using D901i

Names and functions of parts	24
Reading display	26
Selecting functions from menu	29
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal	36
Using UIM (FOMA card)	37
Attaching/removing battery pack	40
Charging battery	41
Checking remaining battery level..... [Battery Level Check]	44
Turning power ON/OFF..... [Power ON/OFF]	45
Switching to English..... [Select Language]	46
Setting date and time..... [Date and Time Setting]	46
Notifying your phone number to other party..... [Caller ID Notification]	47
Checking your own phone number	[Own Number] 48

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm): 106 x 50 x 26
(when closed)

Weight (g): Approx. 136
(with battery pack)

1 Earpiece

Caller's voice comes out of here.

2 Display P26

3 MENU/upper left soft/Silent Mode key

Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Silent Mode, etc.

4 Start video-phone/scroll/lower left soft key

Use this key to make/answer video-phone calls, make video-phone calls using the speakerphone function, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

5 Start voice call/speakerphone/character key

Use this key to make/answer voice calls, make voice calls using the speakerphone function, switch between ordinary and speakerphone calls, switch between entry modes for entering characters, etc.

6 Clear key

Use this key to delete entry when entering characters, return to the previous screen, set/cancel Self Mode, etc. On the i-appli stand-by display, press this key to start i-appli software.

7 Dial keys

Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.

8 X/Driving Mode key

Use this key to enter "X", set/cancel Driving Mode, switch screen modes during camera use, etc.

9 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

10 Infrared data port P407

Used for data exchange with the infrared communication function.

11 In-camera P94, P174

Used to shoot still images or videos or send your image during a video-phone call.

12 Easy Selector Plus**Enter key**

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i-appli software set for One-touch Button, etc.

Data Box/Movie Camera/ ↑ key

Use this key to display Data Box menu, activate Movie Camera, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

i-mode/i-appli/ ↓ key

Use this key to display i-mode menu or i-appli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.

Received Calls/ ← (previous) Key

Use this key to display Received Calls, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.

Redial/ → (next) key

Use this key to display Redial, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, etc.

13 Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key

Use this key to display the phonebook or schedule, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.

14 Mail/scroll/lower right soft key

Use this key to display Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

15 Power/End/Hold key

Use this key to turn on/off power, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode, etc.

16 Multi-indicator

Flashes in blue when a call or mail is received, FOMA terminal is opened/closed, Camera is activated, etc. Whether or not to flash and the flashing pattern can be set (P147). Also lights in red during charging.

Lights or flashes in blue for new information when Indicator light is set to "ON" in Illumination Setting.

17 #/Silent Mode/line-feed key

Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc. Switches between Standard mode and Macro mode during camera use.

18 Charging terminals

Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder.

19 External connection terminal P42, P479

Used to connect various optional accessories.

20 Compact light P96, P174

Used during camera use or a video-phone call. Lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos (however, when the Compact light is turned ON for shooting, the red light may be difficult to see).

21 Out-camera P94, P174

Used to shoot still images or videos or send a landscape image during a video-phone call.

22 Strap opening

Attach a strap.

23 Antenna (built-in)

Use care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.

24 Speaker

Ring tone and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the voice of the other party comes out.

25 Rear cover**26 miniSD memory card slot P390**

Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.

27 Keylock switch P163

Use this key to set/cancel Key Lock.

28 Earphone/microphone jack

Used to connect an earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).

29 TASK key P420, P423

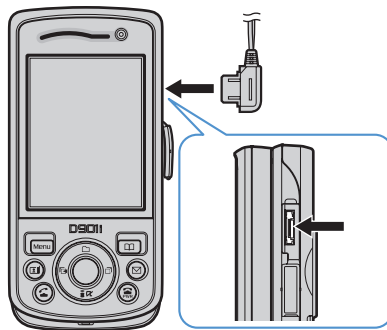
Switches the screen when using Multiaccess or Multitask. Executes another function while talking on the phone or performing an operation.

30 Answer Machine/shutter/clear key

Use this key to display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, record quick messages, activate Camera and shoot images, stop ring tone/alarm, return to the previous screen, delete entered characters, etc.

Note: has two positions: half press and full press for shooting images with Auto Focus, so the feel of pressing this key is different from other keys.

Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch



Note: You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using earphone jack converter adapter P001 allows you to use existing earphone/microphone set.

INFORMATION

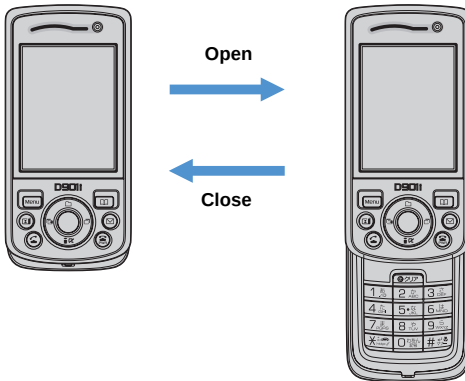
● The font used on keys depends on the color of FOMA terminal.

(Example) , ,

In this manual, the illustrations of the keys on P24 is used for explanations purpose.

Opening/closing FOMA terminal

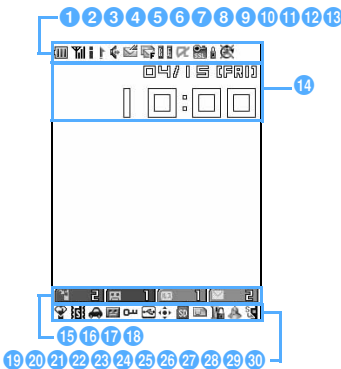
To open FOMA terminal, simply slide the front face (with the display) upward. To close it, slide the face in the opposite direction.



- Operations such as accessing the screen to reply to mail or to edit schedules or notes are made easily by opening FOMA terminal.
☛P271, P433, P452
- You can answer an incoming call by opening FOMA terminal and end or put on hold the call by closing it. You can also set not to end the call by closing FOMA terminal during a call.
☛P64

Reading display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:



Note: The background images on the stand-by display shown in this manual are for example purposes only. You can change the stand-by display to your favorite image. ☛P135

- 1 : Battery level ☛P44
漢 / 半时 / 半英 / 半数 / 全时 / 全英 / 全数 / 全时
- 2 : Received signal level ☛P45
海外 : Out of service area ☛P45
self : Self Mode is set ☛P159
 : During data transfer/Data link software in progress ☛P476, P550

Infrared communication in progress

☛P408

Copying to/moving to/deleting from/
backing up/restoring/formatting/updating
miniSD memory card ☛P391, P394,
P397

In miniSD mode ☛P479

- 3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ☛P204
- : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ☛P230, P267
- 4 : Infrared communication in progress/
Infrared remote control function in operation ☛P408, P413
- 5 : Speakerphone function in operation
☛P51
- : USB hands-free communication in progress ☛P60
- 6 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage
space is full in the Center *1 ☛P268,
P231
- : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage
space is full in the Center ☛P268, P231
- : Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message
R/F in the Center ☛P268, P231
- : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F
in the Center ☛P268, P231

- 7  : Unread i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) storage space is full and Short Message (SMS) storage space is full on UIM  : Unread i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) storage space is full  : Short Message (SMS) full on UIM  : Unread i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS) exist  : Unread i-mode Mail exists  : Unread Short Message (SMS) exists
- 8  : Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full
- 9  : Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full
- 10  : In i-appli execution  : i-appli stand-by display ON  : Blinking while starting software from the i-appli stand-by display  : In i-appli DX execution  : i-appli DX stand-by display ON  : Blinking while starting software from the i-appli DX stand-by display
- 11  : Displaying SSL page and in SSL communication with software downloaded from SSL page
- 12  : Secret Mode is set
- 13  : i-appli Auto Start failed

- 14  : Date and time
- 15  : Number of missed calls
- 16  : Number of recorded messages
- 17  : Number of new voice mail messages
- 18  : Number of unread mail
- 19  : Silent Mode is set
- 20  : Customize Silent Mode is set
- 21  : Ring alert volume is Silent
- 22  : Vibrator for voice call is set
- 23  : Ring alert volume is Silent and vibrator for voice call is set
- 24  : Driving Mode is set
- 25  : Answer Machine is set
- 26  : Recorded messages full
- 27  : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released)
- 28  : Using video-phone from external device via USB
- 29  : USB cable connected
- 30  : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode
- 31  : miniSD memory card inserted
- 32  : Reading UIM
- 33  : PIM Lock ON
- 34  : Keypad Dial Lock ON
- 35  : Alarm is set
- 36  : Schedule alarm is set
- 37  : Alarm and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 38  : Software Update reserved

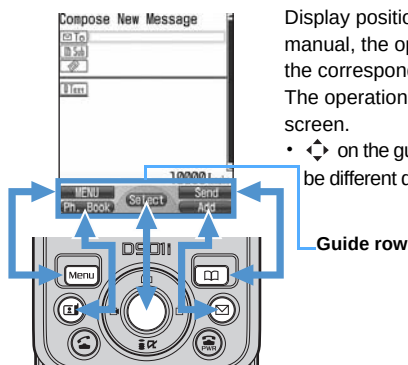
*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and other unreceived mail/messages exist.

Reading guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , ,  and  are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen



Display positions and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (, , , ).

The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

-  on the guide row corresponds to  of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the used function or site).

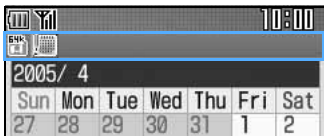
Reading task bar

The icon for the function (task) in use or in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons).

During Multiaccess and Multitask, two or more icons are displayed to show which functions are being used or run because multiple functions are running simultaneously.

When mail/message is received, the reception result is displayed as ticker on the task bar.

Example Task bar when schedule calendar is displayed during a video-phone call



Task bar

Icons displayed on the task bar

- : Receiving/talking voice call
- : Receiving/talking video-phone (64 K)
- : Receiving/talking video-phone (32 K)
- : During 64K data communication
- : Composing/displaying mail
- : Receiving i-mode Mail
- : Receiving Short Message (SMS)
- : Chat mail activated
- : Displaying Message R/F
- : Checking for i-mode Mail/Short Message (SMS)
- : i-mode activated
- : Bookmark/Enter URL/URL History/Last Visited URL/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut displayed
- : i-appli activated/Software list displayed
- : Origination/communicating via USB
- : Sending/receiving packet via USB
- : My Picture (Image) activated
- : i-motion activated
- : Melody activated
- : Chara-den activated
- : Sound Recorder activated
- : Camera activated
- : Movie Camera activated
- : Bar Code Reader activated

- : Phonebook displayed
- : Answer Machine and Voice Memo activated
- : Notepad displayed
- : Scheduler displayed
- : Schedule alarm activated
- : Calculator displayed
- : Received Calls displayed
- : Redial displayed
- : Accessing external data
- : Saving to INBOX/setting operations for infrared communication
- : (dark blue/gray): Accessing/waiting for access to miniSD memory card
- : (dark blue/gray): In miniSD mode via USB/not via USB
- : Alarm set/activated
- : Own Number displayed
- : (dark blue/gray): Setting/holding each function
- : Software Update activated
- : Software Update notified
- : Update Definition/Version Display activated
- : Setting each network service
- : Communicating by video-phone through external device

Reading list screen

Example Color scheme screen



When a list extends to multiple pages, the number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages are displayed.

↑ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the item at the cursor.

- Press to move the cursor.
- When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

↕ indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press to switch between pages.

Note: You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.

INFORMATION

● Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.

- FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
- When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- When a screen is changed to another screen after being displayed for a certain time with some operations performed, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

Selecting functions from menu

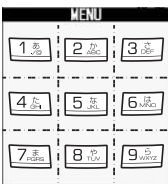
Selecting functions

There are two ways to select functions. The first method involves using the dial keys corresponding to menu items. In the other method, use the Easy Selector Plus to select from among menu items.

- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by or dimmed, and cannot be selected.

Selecting menu items with dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key (to). The item position for each key is shown as follows:

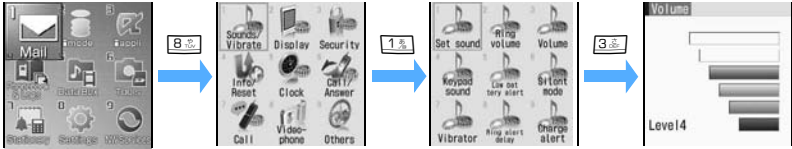


In this manual, the operation procedure is mainly explained in this method.

Example Executing "Volume"

1 Press **Menu** **8** **1** **3** on the stand-by display.

Adjust the volume. ●P67



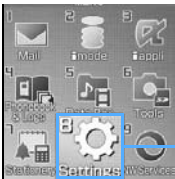
Selecting menu items with the Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing "Volume"

1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display.

• When custom menu is displayed, press **Menu** to display normal menu. ●P441

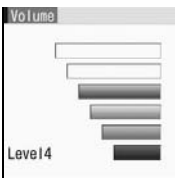
2 Press **Easy Selector Plus** and select "Settings".



The color of the icon at the cursor changes.

3 Press **Easy Selector Plus** to select "Sounds/Vibrate".

4 Press **Easy Selector Plus** to select "Volume".



Adjust the volume.

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Press **Easy Selector Plus** to place the cursor at the desired menu item. After a brief interval, description of the item's function is displayed.



- The function description disappears automatically after a brief interval.
 - You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description of menu items. ●P31
- Description of "Mail" menu is displayed.**

Returning to stand-by display or previous screen

 : Returns to the stand-by display.

 : Returns to the previous screen.

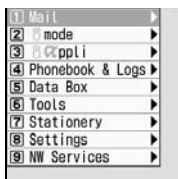
 : Returns to the previous screen.*

* Depending on the screen (such as the shooting screen), pressing  may not return to the previous screen.

Setting menu display format [Menu Setting]

Default Normal: Tile display Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON
Type of icons: Type1 Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal
Active shortcut: Custom

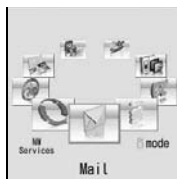
The menu display format can be selected from 3 types. Whether to display the function description when a menu item is selected can be set as well.



List view



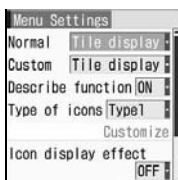
Tile display



3D display

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



Normal : Sets the menu display format for normal menu.

Custom : Sets the menu display format for custom menu.

Describe function : Sets whether to display the function description when menu items are selected.

Type of icons : Sets the design of icons displayed for Tile display normal menu.

Icon display effect : Sets whether to magnify an icon when it is selected.

Default MENU : Sets whether to use normal menu or custom menu for displaying menus.

Active shortcut : Sets the shortcut operations to be used for custom menu.

- "Normal": the same item numbers as normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- "Custom": the item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

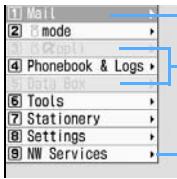
3 Press .

The settings are registered.

Selecting menu items (List view)

In List view, a list of menu item numbers and names are displayed.

Press  to place the cursor at an item and press .



► The color of the icon at the cursor changes.

► Dimmed text indicates that item cannot be selected.

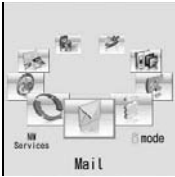
► indicates that lower-level menu exists.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.
- You can also select an item by pressing  to place the cursor at the item and pressing .
- Press ,  or  while a menu is displayed to return to the previous screen.

Selecting menu items (3D display)

In 3D display, menu item icons are arranged in a ring.

Press  to rotate the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press .



- Press  to rotate the ring clockwise.
- Press  to rotate the ring counterclockwise.
- Press  to rotate the ring to bring the icon at the rear to the front ( rotates it counterclockwise and  rotates it clockwise).
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in Tile display or List view menu.
- Press  or  while a menu is displayed to return to the previous screen.

Type of icon design

The icon design for normal menu in Tile display can be selected from 3 types.



Type1



Type2



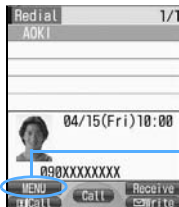
Type3

- The selected icon design applies to the first-level menu that appears first when you press .
- “Custom1” and “Custom2” are used to create an original menu by changing menu icons. 

In some functions, "MENU" is displayed at the upper left of the guide row. You can select submenu items and perform various operations.

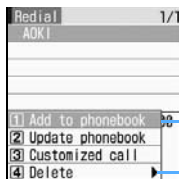
Example Selecting Redial submenu

1 Press on the stand-by display.



"MENU" is displayed at the upper left of the guide row.

2 Press .



The color of the item at the cursor changes.

► indicates that lower-level menu exists.

3 Press and select a submenu item.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.
- You can also select an item by pressing  to place the cursor at the item and pressing .
- Press  while the submenu is displayed to close it.

INFORMATION

- The submenu item numbers may differ depending on the screen.

Selecting “Yes” or “No” on a confirmation screen

When deleting or setting information, a confirmation screen (pop-up screen) may appear to confirm whether to perform an operation.

Example Deleting phonebook data

1 Press  and select “Yes” or “No”.



- When “Yes” is selected, the desired operation is performed. Select “No” to cancel the operation.
- For some operations, items other than “Yes” and “No” may appear.

Selecting item from pulldown menu

An item can be selected from a pulldown menu.

Example Setting ring tone for incoming call

1 Press  to place the cursor at an item to set.



2 Press  to display a pulldown menu and press  to place the cursor at an item.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.



Pulldown menu

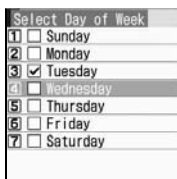
3 Press .

Selecting item from check box

An item can be selected by marking a check box.

Example Setting repeat for schedules

1 Press to place the cursor at a check box and press .



The check box changes from ☐ to ☒ and is selected.

- Select the selected item (☒) to cancel the selection (☐)
- Press **[Menu]** to select/cancel all items. Depending on the function, selecting/canceling all items may not be available.
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.

Displaying information quickly [Focus Mode]

When any of the icons below is displayed on the stand-by display, you can select it and quickly display the information it stands for.



: Missed call (unanswered call) exists.



: New voice mail message exists.



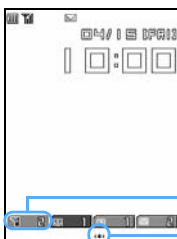
: Unplayed recorded message exists.



: Unread received mail exists.

- The number of stored items is displayed to the right of each icon.
- When the custom stand-by display is set, information is displayed on the stand-by display. You can check the details quickly by selecting the displayed information. **▶**P138, P139

1 Press on the stand-by display and press to place the cursor at an icon.



The color of the icon at the cursor changes.

Indicates the effective Easy Selector Plus keys.

2 Press .

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.



The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time of received calls. If the caller ID was sent, the other party's phone number is also displayed and can be called directly. **▶**P65



The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages. **▶**P79



The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages. **▶**P464



The Inbox folder list is displayed. You can display unread mail from this folder list. **▶**P278

INFORMATION

- When you select an icon and hold down  for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when information is viewed and the number of items changes.
- Depending on the setting of lock functions such as PIM Lock, the screen for some icons may not be displayed.
- If you have set a calendar for the stand-by display or set a calendar in an area for the custom stand-by display, press  on the stand-by display and select the calendar to display the scheduler calendar.  P430
To select an icon, press , press  and select the icon by moving the cursor with .

Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal

Type		No. of saved/ registered items	No. of protected items
Mail	Received mail*1, *2	Up to 1,000	Up to 500
	Sent mail*1, *2	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Unsent mail*1, *2	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Template*1	Up to 100	—
Short Message (SMS) in UIM*3		Up to 20	—
Message R*4		Up to 100	Up to 50
Message F*4		Up to 50	Up to 25
Bookmark		Up to 100	—
Screen memo*1		Up to 100	Up to 50
i-appli software*5		Up to 100	Up to 100
Image*1		Up to 1,000	—
Melody*1		Up to 500	—
Video/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1		Up to 100	—
Chara-den*1		Up to 50	—

*1 Depending on the size of data saved and registered, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS).

*3 The total number of sent and received Short Message (SMS).

*4 The number of Message R/F that can be saved depends on their size.

*5 Up to 5 items for Message i-appli (as part of the 100 items, maximum number of software that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the software size, the actual number of items you can save may be fewer.

INFORMATION

- Data saved/registered in FOMA terminal remains about 1 month with the battery pack removed or battery empty, but may be lost after this amount of time. Because data may be lost due to failure, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data saved/registered in FOMA terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- It is recommended that you save the images, melodies or video/i-motion, etc. saved in FOMA terminal, to the miniSD memory card. Exchangeable data  P391
- If you have a PC, you can use FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.  P550
- Depending on the function, the displayed file size of data may differ slightly.

Using UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.

Insert the UIM into a FOMA-compatible terminal to use the card.

- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

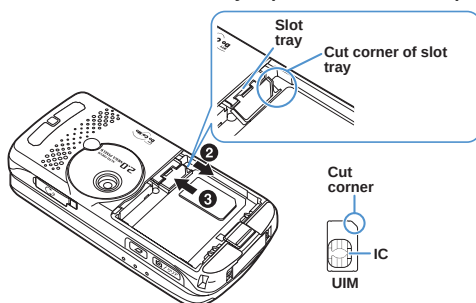
Inserting/removing UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off.
- Insert or remove the UIM with FOMA terminal closed using both hands.

Inserting card

Tray is pulled out until it stops.

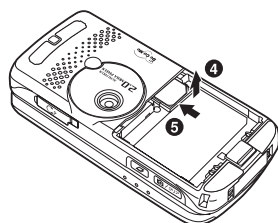


❶ Remove the rear cover and then the battery pack. ➡P40

❷ Pull out the UIM slot tray.

Place your finger on the cut corner of the slot tray and slide it out until it stops.

❸ Insert the UIM into the slot with the IC side of the card facing down.



❹ Lift the bottom of the slot tray until the UIM fits into place.

Align the cut corner of the slot tray to the cut corner of the UIM.

❺ Push the slot tray in until it fits into place.

❻ Reattach the battery pack and then the rear cover. ➡P40

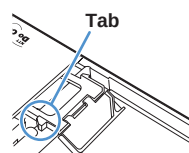
Removing card

❶ Pull out the UIM slot tray.

- The operations to follow are the same as ❶ to ❷ in "Inserting card".

❷ Remove the UIM by sliding it out.

When UIM slot tray is removed



Align the tab of the slot tray to the UIM slot and insert the tray straight in.

- Remove the UIM before replacing the slot tray.

INFORMATION

- Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage it.
- Carefully handle the removed UIM so it does not become lost.
- When attaching the battery pack, make sure that the UIM slot tray is in place. If not, do not attach the battery pack. Forcibly attaching the battery pack may damage the UIM or the UIM slot tray.
- When pushing the UIM slot tray in, make sure that the UIM is properly placed in the tray. Forcibly pushing the slot tray into FOMA terminal may cause an operation error.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

Both codes are set to "0000" at time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ◀P152, P155

PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

- The PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) is the 8-digit number used to unblock the PIN1 and PIN2. It is given to you at time of purchase.
- If you enter the PUK incorrectly 10 times in a row, FOMA terminal is automatically locked. Be sure to keep a separate note of the number. Please be notified, if you forget your PUK or cannot release the lock of FOMA terminal, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, UIM and identification (driver's license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Unblocking PIN ◀P156

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When data or files downloaded from sites or data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be displayed or played.
- Restricted data types are as follows:

• Image (including Animation and Flash graphic)	• Screen memo
• i-motion and melody	• Message R/F
• Chara-den	• File attached to i-mode Mail
• i-αppli (including i-αppli stand-by display)	• Image inserted in Deco-mail text
- For i-αppli with the UIM operation restriction function, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:

• Start	• Software Description	• Software Setting
• Auto Start	• Changing Auto Start setting	• i-αppli stand-by display setting
• Upgrade	• i-αppli Shortcut registration	

INFORMATION

- When data with the UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the stand-by display, call images or ring tone, the image and sound settings returns to default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the images and sound that are actually displayed/generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was received/downloaded restores the original settings.
- The UIM operation restriction function is not set to data obtained through infrared communication, the miniSD memory card or data link software or for images taken with the built-in camera.
- Data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card or cannot be exchanged through infrared communication.

Functional differences between UIM types

There are two types of UIMs: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone numbers that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P108
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P238
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P39
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries and DoCoMo for Repairs is available.	Unavailable	P471

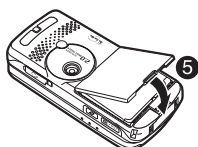
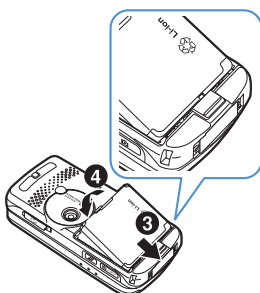
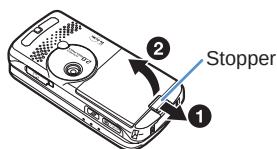
WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into an overseas mobile phone (GSM handset), you can make/receive a call in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Contact DoCoMo for General Inquiries on the back of this manual for details.

Attaching/removing battery pack

- Turn the power off and close FOMA terminal before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

Attaching battery pack



① Slide the stopper in the direction of the arrow.

② When the rear cover is lifted, remove it.

③ With the printed surface of the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal in the angle as shown.

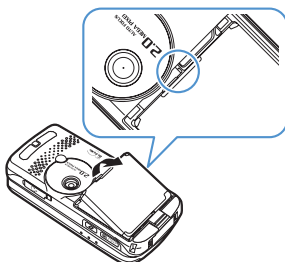
Do not force the battery pack terminals into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage these terminals or the body connector.

④ Push the battery pack in.

⑤ Align the top of the rear cover with the top of battery pack compartment and push the cover in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing battery pack



① Remove the rear cover.

- The operations to follow are the same as **①** to **②** in "Attaching battery pack".

② Remove the battery pack.

Lift the edge of the battery pack (encircled part in the illustration) with your finger and remove it.

Battery recycling

FOMA terminal uses a lithium polymer battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service center, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

● Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:

- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs



Li-ion
(Li-polymer)

INFORMATION

- The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of the active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for several seconds when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging battery

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery.

 : Ample charge.

 : Low charge.

 : Almost discharged. Charge the battery.

Note: The icon design can be changed in Battery Icon.  P146

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous stand-by time
Approx. 140 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 170 minutes During a video-phone call: Approx. 100 minutes	While standing still: Approx. 600 hours While moving: Approx. 450 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/stand-by time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/stand-by time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-appli software or the i-appli stand-by display.
- Continuous stand-by time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you use data communication, Multiaccess or Camera, the call (communication)/stand-by time will also be reduced.

Notes on battery pack

- Use the battery pack D03.
- The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack's life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

- When charging starts, the multi-indicator lights in red.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Multi-indicator	Meaning
 (Charging: Blinks) (Charged: Lights)	Charging: Lights in red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

Note: The icon design can be changed in Battery Icon. P146

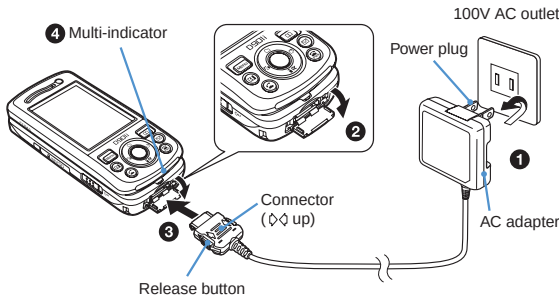
- If the multi-indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact DoCoMo for Repairs on the back of this manual.
- You can set the charge alert not to sound. P132
- When charging is completed, the multi-indicator goes off.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights. (If the battery level icon flashes, charging is not completed.)
- You can set the charge alert not to sound. P132
- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
 - Low battery level
 - Message appears indicating that the battery runs out
 - FOMA terminal is operational for a short time
- If the battery is sufficiently charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
- If you charge the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, the ambient temperature may rise above the acceptable range.
- Insert or remove the connector from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it.

Charging from wall outlet

Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) and the desktop holder D03 (optional) to charge the battery. You can charge the battery with FOMA terminal either closed or open.

- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

 To charge battery with AC adapter

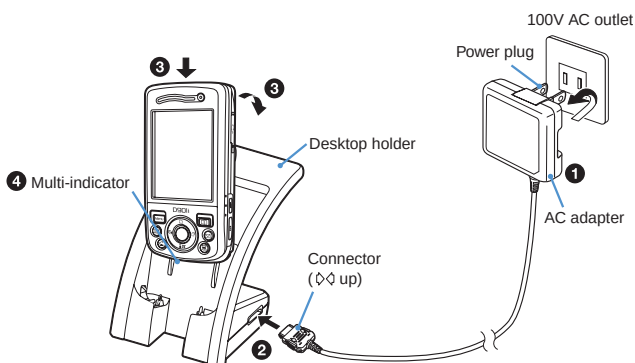


- 1 Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
- 2 Open the cap on the external connection terminal.
- 3 Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
- 4 Check that charging starts.

When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then close the terminal cap.

- Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight from FOMA terminal.

■ To charge battery in desktop holder



- 1 Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
- 2 Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.
- 3 Insert FOMA terminal vertically into the desktop holder and then tilt back.
- 4 Check that charging starts.

Check that the multi-indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting to front.

- Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight from FOMA terminal.
- When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.

INFORMATION

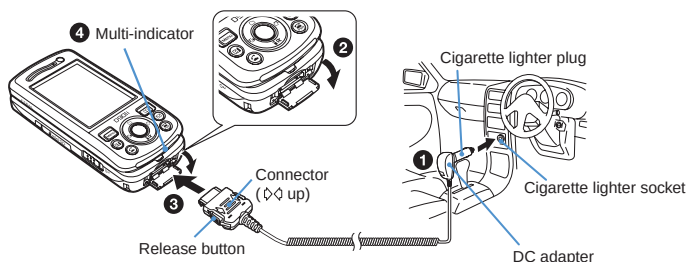
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and desktop holder.

Charging in car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12V and 24V).

- 1 Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.
- 2 Turn off FOMA terminal and open the cap on the external connection terminal.
- 3 Insert the DC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
- 4 Check that charging starts.

When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then close the terminal cap.



INFORMATION

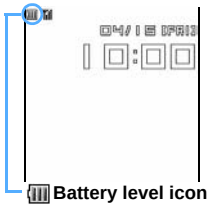
- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.
- The car battery may be discharged if you charge FOMA terminal with the engine off. Use the DC adapter when the car engine is running.
- When not in use, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (DC adapter: 2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Battery Level Check

Checking remaining battery level

The display indicates the approximate remaining battery level.

- Battery level is displayed in 3 levels.
- The remaining battery level display should be used as a rough indication.



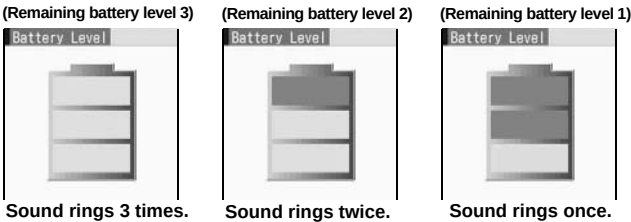
	Remaining battery level 3 (ample charge)	Remaining battery level 2 (low charge)	Remaining battery level 1 (recharging recommended)
Default			
Other icons			
➡ P146			

Checking remaining battery level by sound and display

- The sound does not ring in the following situations:
 - Keypad Sound is set to "OFF"
 - Silent Mode is set
 - Ring alert volume is set to "Silent"

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The remaining battery level is displayed. After a brief interval, the screen returns to the menu list.



When battery is almost exhausted

When the battery almost runs out, a message appears on the display or an alert sound (low battery alert) rings indicating low battery. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. If you want to stop it immediately, press .

Example In stand-by

A message indicating low battery appears on the display. The message disappears by pressing . After a brief interval, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on top of the display blink and after approximately one minute the power turns off automatically.

Example During a call

The low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears on the display. The message disappears by pressing , or . When approximately 20 seconds elapses after the low battery alert, the call is cut off and the stand-by display reappears. Then, after approximately one minute the power turns off automatically.

Setting low battery alert not to sound [Low Battery Alert]

Default ON

- The low battery alert does not sound in the following cases, regardless of this function settings:
 - Silent Mode is set
 - Driving Mode is set

- 1** Press on the stand-by display.
- 2** Press .
- To set the low battery alert, press .

INFORMATION

- Even if Low Battery Alert is set to "OFF", when the battery almost runs out during a call the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery is displayed.

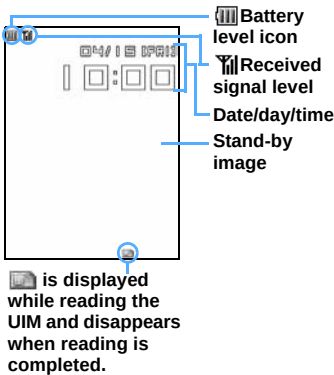
Power ON/OFF

Turning power ON/OFF

Turning power ON

- 1** Hold down for over 2 seconds.

The wake-up screen is displayed and the stand-by display appears.



Received signal level status	
→ →	
Strong → Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message appears informing you that the date and time are not set. Press and perform from Step 2 in "Setting date and time". ➡P46
- If no UIM is inserted, a message informing you that attachment of UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power OFF, insert the UIM and turn the power back ON.
- You can change the stand-by image, display format of date and time and battery level icon. ➡P135, P146, P149 The background image on the display shown on the left is for example purposes only (and differs from the default).

Turning power OFF

1 Hold down for over 2 seconds.

- When Key Lock is set with FOMA terminal closed, you cannot turn the power OFF. Cancel Key Lock or open FOMA terminal and then turn the power OFF.

INFORMATION

- When  is displayed in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach, move to another locations where the icon is not displayed. However, calls may be cut off even when  is displayed or you are not moving.
- If you do not press any keys for 90 seconds when the lighting time is set to other than "Always" in Display Light, the display light is turned off automatically (except while shooting with the camera, etc.). The display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.

Select Language

Switching to English

Default use UIM settings

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

The screen is set to English mode.

- In English mode, the character input mode changes in the following order: “ (Alphabet)” → “ (Numeric)” → “ (Hiragana/kanji)” → “ (Katakana)”

■ Switching to Japanese mode

- ① Press .

Date and Time Setting

Setting date and time

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select Date field and enter the date.



Enter the last two digits of the year. When there is only one digit for the year, month or day, precede it with 0.

- The date can be set from January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050.
- You can increase or decrease the entered value by pressing .
- You can press  to place the cursor at the digit to change and enter a new value for that digit.

3 Select Time field and enter the time.

Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

- The time can be set from 0:00 to 23:59.
- You can increase or decrease the entered value by pressing .
- You can press  to place the cursor at the digit to change and enter a new value for that digit.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- The set time remains even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In this case, set the date and time again.
- You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:
 - Scheduler  P430
 - Auto Power OFF  P427
 - i-α ppli Auto Start  P335
 - Downloading i-motion with playback restrictions set  P368
 - Data (schedule) transfer  P408, P410
 - Update Definition  P571
 - Auto Power ON  P427
 - Alarm Clock  P428
 - i-α ppli DX requiring time setting  P320
 - Software Update  P564
 - Certificate Download  P238
- If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and “----/--/--” or “-----” is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.
 - Redial/Received Calls  P53, P65
 - Answer Machine, Voice Memo  P77, P448
 - Date and time of image/video shot with the camera  P177
 - Date and time of data read by Bar Code Reader  P196
 - Date and time of downloaded software  P326
 - Date and time of sent mail, unsent mail  P282
 - Date and time of downloaded still image, melody, i-motion, mail template  P402, P259
- You can set the date and time by pressing   during a voice call.

Caller ID Notification

Notifying your phone number to other party

Set FOMA terminal to send your number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- Caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone has the ability to display caller ID such as digital mobile phones.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Notification. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set in a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Move to another location with good radio reception.
- For details, see “FOMA Network Services User's Guide”.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Checking current setting

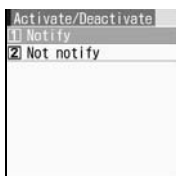
- ① Press     on the stand-by display and select “Yes”.

The current setting is displayed.

- ② Press .

2 Enter the network security code.

3 Press .



Caller ID Notification is set.

■ Not sending your caller ID

① Press .

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- If you hear a guidance to request your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- Network security code ➡ P152

Own Number

Checking your own phone number

Check your phone number (My phone number), name, mail address, etc.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- Only your phone number is displayed by default.
- To check your i-mode Mail address, press   on the stand-by display to display iMenu, then select “ENGLISH” → “Options” → “Mail Settings” → “Confirm Mail Address”.
You can also check your i-mode Mail address using a preinstalled bookmark. Press   on the stand-by display and select “Folder1” → “アドレス確認 (Confirm Mail Address)”.

INFORMATION

- Press   to check your own phone number (My phone number) during a call.
- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not automatically change the address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change your i-mode Mail address, refer to “FOMA i-mode User's Manual”.
- Saving information other than phone number ➡ P446
- You can exchange the Own Number information between other FOMA terminals with infrared communication function. ➡ P408, P410

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls	50
Calling back previously called numbers	[Redial] 53
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call	[186/184] 55
Making a call by setting the condition	[Customized Call] 56
Using international calls	[WORLD CALL] 57
Making a call by specifying a sub address	[Sub Address] 59
Setting the alarm for reconnecting the interrupted call	[Reconnect Alarm] 59
Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality	[Noise Reduction] 60
Talking without using a hand in a car	[In-car Handsfree] 60

Receiving Calls

Receiving calls	61
Enabling use of dial keys to answer call	[Any Key Answer] 63
Setting to start a call by opening FOMA terminal	[Open Answer] 64
Ending/holding call by closing FOMA terminal	[Close Setting] 64
Using Received Calls	[Received Calls] 65
Adjusting volume of the caller's voice	[Volume] 67
Adjusting ring volume	[Ring Volume] 68
Setting actions at call arrival	[Incoming & Outgoing] 69
Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during call or packet communication	[Priority Comm Mode] 70

When you can/could not answer the call

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	[Response and Hold] 71
Setting Status Message	[Status Message] 72
Setting On-hold Tone	[On-hold Tone] 73
Setting not to receive calls during driving	[Driving Mode] 74
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	[Answer Machine] 76

Making calls

The procedures for making voice call and common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

- You cannot make calls by pressing the dial keys when Keypad dial lock is ON. ➡P161
- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hand during a talk.

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display.



Calling general subscriber phone	Area code - prefix - number • Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phone	090 - XXXX - XXXX 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phone	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- You can enter up to 80 digits for the phone number. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct phone number, press or .
- To go back to the stand-by display, hold down or (half press) for over a second.

2 Press .



You will hear the dial tone. You can start talking as soon as the call is answered.

- If the phone on the other party is busy, you will hear the busy signal. Press to end the call and make a call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial. ➡P53
- If other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is not available.

3 Press , when a call is finished.

- You can also disconnect calls by closing FOMA terminal. To end the call by closing, change the setting in "Close Setting". ➡P64

INFORMATION

- You can make calls by performing Step 2 followed by 1. Voice call will be made automatically about five seconds after you have pressed and entered the phone number.
- You may not be able to make a call while executing another function. ➡P547
- When a call is made to the other party with video set for Image of the phonebook data, the first frame of the video is played on Calling screen. ➡P105
- Two communication functions can be used simultaneously. ➡P420, P545
- If a guidance to request your caller ID is played when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID is set.
- When you make a call entering the phone number without appending "186" or "184" and dialed without setting "Caller ID" request in Customized Call, the operation depends on the setting for Caller ID Notification. ➡P47
- When there is an incoming packet during voice Call, the incoming call screen appears depending on the Priority Comm Mode. ➡P70
- The earphone/microphone set (optional) with switch can be used to make calls. ➡P454

Putting calls on hold [On-hold]

Putting the caller on hold while talking lets you talk without the caller hearing your voice.

- Callers are charged for time spent on hold.

1 Press during a call.

The call is placed on hold and a guidance is played. For video-phone calls, the video-phone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.



On-hold during a voice call



On-hold during a video-phone call

The video-phone call On-hold image

- Press  or  while voice calls are on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press  while video-phone calls are on hold to cancel the hold and send the image similar to that has been sent before on hold. Press  to cancel the hold and send the camera image. Press  to cancel the hold and send a substitutive image to the other party. 

INFORMATION

- You can put the call on hold by closing FOMA terminal. To make the call hold by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in "Close Setting". 
- When a call is on hold by closing FOMA terminal, on hold can be released by opening FOMA terminal.
- The melody can be played while on hold. 
- Video-phone on-hold image can be changed. 
- The melody applicable to 3D sound set as on-hold tone may be heard deteriorated to other party.

Using speakerphone function

You can make a phone call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker.

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by and hold down or for over a second.

- While making calls, you can switch between ordinary call and call using the speakerphone function by pressing . While talking, you can switch by pressing  or .
-  is displayed during use of the speaker phone function.
- The same applies when operating from phonebook list, redial list, received call list, recorded message list and voice memo list.

INFORMATION

- When switching to the speakerphone function, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call may be hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or other party, make the call normally.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within approximately 30 cm.
- Speakerphone function can also be used even when Silent Mode is set.

Operation during voice calls

- The following operations can be performed from the submenu while voice calls are taking place:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1Received calls	Displays Received Calls.	P65
2Redial	Displays redial.	P53
3Set time	Sets the date and time.	P46
4Reconnect alarm*	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality that has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P59
5Quality alarm*	Sets an alarm to ring when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P133
6Terminal close	Sets whether to hang up by closing FOMA terminal.	P64
7Dial up	Subscribers to Call Waiting can make a call to another party during a call.	P466
8Volume	Adjust the ring volume.	P67

* Setting can be changed when the alarm sounds. The change is effective when the alarm once stopped.

- The operation can be performed by following keys during a call.
 - Press to start the phonebook.
 - The other party's voice can be recorded with Talking Voice Memo by holding down for over a second. ➡P448
 - The volume can be adjusted by pressing .
 - Press for Received Calls or for Redial to display.

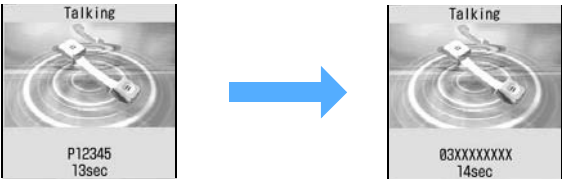
Entering pause, timed pause or “+”

Pauses, timed pauses or “+” can be entered when making a call.

- Pauses and timed pauses apply only to voice calls.

Example When you call to “03XXXXXXXXXP12345” (“P”=Entering pause)

When you press after the call is connected, all phone numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering pause “P”

Pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point a pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and a tone signals (DTMF) is sent.

1 Hold down for over a second.

- You cannot make calls with a pause at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering timed pause “T”

Timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line number with extensions. The extension number is dialed after placing a pause of a set number of seconds to enter “T” between the outside line and extension number.

1 Hold down for over a second.

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make calls with a timed pause at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering “+”

You can make international calls easily by entering “+” at the top of phone number.

1 Hold down for over a second.

- If Auto assist Setting is “Auto”, “009130010” for international calls is appended to make a call.

INFORMATION

- Sent tone (DTMF) signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- When it is necessary to send signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after switching to the speakerphone.
- A subscriber to Call Waiting cannot make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold, by entering a pause (“P”) or timed pause (“T”).

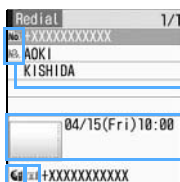
Redial

Calling back previously called numbers

This function is to record the number you dialed as call history (Redial). When the phone of other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- The redial list can contain up to 30 entries. When the number of the calls exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.
- When the date and time have not been set to FOMA terminal, the date and time is not recorded for redial data.
- When the same number is redialed, only the most recent call is recorded for each of “No specified”, “Notify”, “Not notify” of Caller ID setting.
- Calls in Secret Mode are also logged in the redial list including the phone numbers of the other party.

1 Press on the stand-by display and place the cursor at the person to redial from redial list.



When the other party's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the party's name is displayed. ◀P103

No. : Voice/video-phone customized call with Caller ID

No. : Voice/video-phone customized call without Caller ID

The date and time and phone number of outgoing calls to the selected party are displayed. When the other party's image is saved in the phonebook, the image is displayed.

 : Making a video-phone call

 : Making an international call

■ Registering an entry from the redial list to the phonebook

- ① Place the cursor at the redial number to register and press .
 - When adding to the data of phonebook already registered, press and press or to select the phonebook data of the registration destination. ➤P116
- ② Register the names or addresses by pressing or . ➤P104

■ Composing Short Message (SMS) from redial list

- ① Place the cursor at the redial number to set for an address, and hold down for over a second.

The Short Message (SMS) composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.

- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.

■ Switching to the received calls list

- ① Press .
 - The redial/received calls list screen are switched each time is pressed.

2 Press .

The voice call is made.

- Press to make a video-phone call.
- Pressing makes a call in the same way as the selected redial call type (voice call/video-phone call).

INFORMATION

- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the redial list up to that point are deleted. Calls made after setting Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock are recorded in the redial list and can be called from it.
- To change show/hide caller ID when making a call ➤P56
- To append a number set in Prefix to the start of the phone number to call ➤P56, P58

Deleting redial numbers

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the redial number to delete and press .

- Press to delete all redial numbers.

3 Select "Yes".

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

When you make phone calls, you set whether to display your number (Caller ID) on the other party's terminal.

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include this information.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the phone of the other party has the ability to display the caller ID such as digital mobile phones.
- You can use the following ways to show/hide caller ID to the other party.

Setting at one time	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID at one time for all the calls you make.	P47
Setting into phonebook entries	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID for each phonebook entry.	P121
Setting when dialing	Sets to either show/hide Caller ID for each call you actually make.	P55, P56

Dialing by adding “186 (✕31#)”/“184 (#31#)” to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to a phone number when you make a call.

■ Sending your caller ID

“ + phone number + ” or “  + phone number + ”

- To make a video-phone call, press “ (or  ) + phone number + .

■ Not sending your caller ID

“ + phone number + ” or “  + phone number + .

- To make a video-phone call, press “ (or  ) + the other party's phone number + .

INFORMATION

- If a guidance to request your caller ID is played when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- When setting/operating the “show/hide caller ID” methods simultaneously, the caller ID is notified in the following order (① to ③).
- ① If you select the caller ID notification method from Customized Call in the submenu when making a call
- ② In case of the phone number appending “186 (✕ 31#)”/“184 (#31#)”
- ③ When setting Caller ID Notification ON/OFF

Also, when setting/operating the above “show/hide caller ID” methods simultaneously, actual number notification (with or without Notification) and the notification displayed on the screen may differ.

- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on the connecting phone companies even if “186 (✕ 31#)” is added.
- When making a call adding “186 (✕ 31#)”/“184 (#31)”, “186 ✕ (31#)”/“184 (#31#)” is recorded on the redial.

Making a call by setting the condition

Dialing method, show/hide caller ID or your phone number can be selected and whether to append a prefix can be set for each voice/video-phone call.

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display and press **Menu** **3**.

- It is same as for when operating from the list of redial phone number, received calls, recorded messages or voice memo.
- Customized Call can also be made by pressing **Menu** **5** on the phonebook list.

2 Select each item to set a condition for dialing.

Call Type : Select voice call, 64K or 32K video-phone call.

Caller ID : Set show/hide caller ID. When "No specified" is set, the setting for Caller ID Notification is used. ➡P47

Multi No. : ➡P473

Prefix : Select the number appending before phone number (Prefix).

- The default setting is "009130010" for international calls. Prefix setting ➡P58

3 Press **Menu** and select "Yes".

A voice call/video-phone call is made by the settings.

- When you select 64K or 32K video-phone call at "Call Type", you can also select "Chara-den call" to enable to choose a chara-den being displayed while talking on the video-phone.

INFORMATION

- Even if the number "186 (✕ 31#)" / "184 (#31#)" are added to the phone number in the phonebook, the number notification of this function have the priority.
- When operating from the details (Top/Phone) screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the details screen of the UIM phonebook or the details (Phone) screen of Own Number, press **Menu** and select "Customized call".
- If a guidance to request your caller ID is played when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "Notify" is selected in "Caller ID".

Using international calls

DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL"

- This international call service is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

► country code ► area code ► phone number ► ☎

- * The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- * When the area code begins with "0", dial without "0". (When calling to general subscriber phones and other phones in Italy, you need to dial "0").

- You can call approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.

Note: You were subscribed to "WORLD CALL" as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).

- Change international call dial procedure

MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. Along with the introducing of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without Prefix "010") no longer be used.

- Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.

Note: To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact the carrier for details.

- "International video-phone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals*¹ can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the video-phone mode*². For details, visit DoCoMo website.

*¹ As of December, 2004, communication can be made with Hutchison 3G HK terminals (Hong Kong), Sing Tel terminals (Singapore), Starhub terminals (Singapore), Hutchison 3G Australia (Australia) and Hutchison 3G UK (United Kingdom).

*² The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international video-phone line.

Using "WORLD CALL" by simplified dialing [Auto assist Setting]

Default Auto

If "Auto" is set for Auto assist Setting, entering "+" followed by phone number from a country code makes an international call easily appending "009130010" for international call automatically.

- If "+" is prefixed to dial followed by a country code of Japan "81", "009130010" for international call is not appended even when "Auto" is set for Auto assist Setting.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Canceling Auto assist Setting

① Press .

- When an international call is made using Auto assist Setting
 - ① Set “Auto” for Auto assist Setting.
 - ② Enter a phone number by entering “+” before a country code.
 - “+” can be entered by holding down  for over a second.
 - ③ Press .

Setting numbers other than “WORLD CALL” [Prefix]

Default 009130010

By recording a number (Prefix) to add before a phone number in advance, you can easily add a prefix even after entering the phone number to make an international calls.

- The default setting is “009130010” for international calls. “009130010” can be changed to another prefix.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

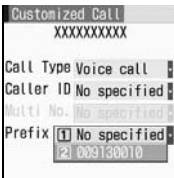
2 Select the Prefix field and enter a number.

- Up to 3 numbers in total, a maximum of 10 digits for each number, can be entered.
- Do not include pause or timed pause in the phone number. If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

3 Press .

- Selecting a prefix when making an international call

- ① Enter a phone number including the country code on the stand-by display.
- ② Press   and select the Prefix field.
- ③ Select a prefix number to use.



- ④ Press  and select “Yes”.

Making a call by specifying a sub address

Default ON

You can set a sub address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- It is also used to select contents in a video delivery service, "M-stage V live".

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Not setting a sub address

① Press .

Making a call by specifying a sub address

After the phone number, press to enter "X" (sub address delimiter), enter sub address, and press for a voice call or for a video-phone call. Note that the communication device or telephone set to be called must have a sub address assigned.

INFORMATION

- If a phone number begins with "X" or an added prefix contains "X", the digits after "X" is not recognized as a sub address even when this setting is "ON", and called as the number containing "X".
- If "X" is pressed after entering pause or timed pause, it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter, and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "X".

Reconnect Alarm

Setting the alarm for reconnecting the interrupted call

Default High alarm

This function sets an alarm that is heard when signal conditions improve and a voice call or video-phone call disrupted by poor signal quality in a tunnel or behind a building is reconnected.

- The voice of the other party is not heard when the call is disrupted.
- The time required to make a reconnection depends on line use and signal conditions. (up to 10 sec)
- Note that you are charged for the time used to make a reconnection (up to 10 sec).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use and signal conditions.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality

Default ON

FOMA terminal is provided with a function for suppressing ambient noise during a call (Noise Reduction). When Noise Reduction is set, the other party can hear your voice clearly during a call. It also makes it easier for you to hear the voice of the other party.

- It is recommended that this function be turned "ON" when using normally.

1 Press     **on the stand-by display.**

2 Press .

■ Canceling Noise Reduction

① Press .

In-car Handsfree

Talking without using a hand in a car

Connecting FOMA terminal with a handsfree device (car navigation system, etc.), which is available in market, through FOMA USB connection cable (optional) in advance, allows making and answering phone calls from the device without using a hand during driving.

For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for the respective handsfree devices.

Note: This function is an optional function that will be available when the compatible device is released.

INFORMATION

- Operations such as display and ring alert for incoming calls are according to FOMA terminal settings. However, if the setting is made to activate ring alert of a handsfree device while the device is connected, the ring alert of a handsfree device sounds for incoming calls even if Silent Mode is set or "OFF" is set for Sound Setting on FOMA terminal.
- Incoming operations while Driving Mode is set are according to FOMA terminal settings. ●P74
- If a video-phone call is made with a handsfree device using the phonebook or Redial, it depends on the connection speed setting of the handsfree device. If no data rate setting is made, the video-phone call is made at fixed 64K.
- When a video-phone call is made/received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party. ●P92
- If the setting is made to activate ring alert of FOMA terminal while a handsfree device is connected, the operation performed when FOMA terminal is closed is according to Close Setting. If the setting is made to activate ring alert of a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.
- When Answer Machine is set, it is operated according to Answer Machine setting even if a handsfree device is connected. ●P77
- Ring volume or volume cannot be adjusted from handsfree devices.

Note: The compatible device has not been released as of December, 2004.

Receiving calls

The procedures for receiving voice calls and common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

- For a voice call, calls can also be answered by pressing to , , and other than . (Any Key Answer) ●P63

1 A call is received.

The ring tone sounds, the display backlight lights up and the multi-indicator blinks.

- Press to put the call on Response and Hold. ●P71

2 Press .



Please talk. The call duration is displayed.

- Press to put the call On-hold. ●P51
- You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing or . ●P51
- You can also answer the calls by opening FOMA terminal. ●P64

3 Press , when a call is finished .

- You can also disconnect calls by closing FOMA terminal. To end the call by closing, change the setting in "Close Setting". ●P64

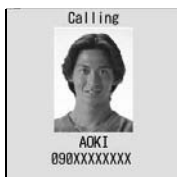
Display information

The caller's phone number, name or still image/video may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller and FOMA terminal setting. Setting can be made to hide name or phone number and to change the name size. ●P144

■ When the other party has sent their caller ID



When the phone number of the other party is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number and the image set in Call Image is displayed. When "Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)" is set for Phone/Video-phone in Sound Setting, the Movie ringtone image is played. ●P128 However, if the Movie ringtone contains voice only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices), the incoming image set by default is displayed, but image can be changed on Call Image.



If the phone number of the other party has been already registered in your phonebook, the name or the still image/movie set in the phonebook is displayed. ●P103

If "Movie ringtone" is set for the following each ring tone setting, the pre-set Movie ringtone image is played in the following order: 1. Phonebook (phonebook No.) → 2. Phonebook (group) → 3. Phone/Video-phone of Sound Setting. If you do not set Movie ringtone or phonebook image, the image set for Call Image is displayed.

■ If the other party's caller ID is not notified



Displays reason why no caller ID is sent.

Reason of no caller ID	Description
User unset	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
Not supported	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on connecting phone companies.)

When a voice call comes in, Arrival act or Show image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized.

When a video-phone call comes in, an incoming image operates according to Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing.

Operations while receiving calls

- While the ring tone is sounding to indicate an incoming call, you can perform following operations from submenus.
- With the setting of "Answer" in the "Arrival Call Act", the same operation can also work when there is another incoming call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
1 Voice mail*1	The incoming call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.
2 Call rejection	The call is disconnected. (The caller does not pay for the call.)
3 Call forwarding*2	Makes incoming calls transferred to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid only when you subscribe to Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.

*2 Valid when you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

- You can respond a call with Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second (Quick Record Message). ➡P76
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator. ➡P68

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service	The incoming call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P463
Call Waiting Service	Puts current call on hold and answers second call.	P465
Call Forwarding Service	Forwards the incoming call to other phone number.	P466

- If you subscribe to any of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, each operation above can be selected only with the settings of "Yes" in Arrival Act Setting and "Answer" in Arrival Call Act. ➡P472

INFORMATION

- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ●P169, P170
- By setting Call Rejection for some parties registered in the phonebook, calls from such parties can be rejected. ●P166
- Telephones that do not support dialed long-distance calls such as in-building phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.
- When there is an incoming packet communication during voice call, the incoming screen appears according to the Priority Comm Mode setting. ●P70
- Two communication functions can be used simultaneously. ●P420, P545
- When a forwarded call from the other FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed at the lower left part of the incoming screen. The name is not displayed even if the phone number is saved in the phonebook. The phone number from the forwarding source may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- If video/i-motion is set for Ring alert (for phone) of phonebook data or for Phone/Video-phone of Sound Setting, the video/i-motion (image and sound) set as the ring tone is played regardless of Image setting (Movie ringtone). However, if the movie/i-motion set as the ring tone contains voice only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices), the image that was set for Call Image is shown on the display while receiving a call.
- Even if the i-motion is set to play for call arrival on the phonebook or Call Image, i-motion is not played and the first image is displayed when an incoming call arrives during the call.
- If a voice call arrives during software update, any video/i-motion set as the ring tone is not played.
- An i-motion set as the ring tone in Sound Setting may change to "パターン 1" if an incoming call arrives while the i-motion being deleted or saved regardless of the settings. If a melody or outgoing/incoming image is set, when a call arrives while a melody or image is moved, deleted and saved, the melody may be "パターン 1" or the image may be "Standard image".
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- The earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) can be used to make calls. ●P454

Any Key Answer

Enabling use of dial keys to answer call

Default ON

This function allows you to answer a call by pressing the keys from  to ,  and  except for .

- The Any Key Answer function applies only to a voice call. However, this function is invalid when received the call while on the phone.

1 Press     **on the stand-by display.**

2 Press .

■ Canceling Any Key Answer

① Press .

Open Answer

Setting to start a call by opening FOMA terminal

Default OFF

Set FOMA terminal to receive the voice call by opening FOMA terminal.

- This function applies only to voice calls.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Canceling Open Answer

① Press .

INFORMATION

- This function does not operate when opening FOMA terminal while the submenu is displayed or the screen except for the incoming screen is displayed during the Multitask.

Close Setting

Ending/holding call by closing FOMA terminal

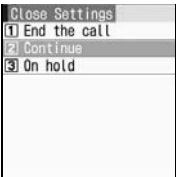
Default Continue

You can set to end, continue or hold a voice/video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal.

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .



INFORMATION

- When "Continue" is set, closing FOMA terminal does not make the call to terminate while making a call/video-phone call. In case of during the video-phone call, you can continue to call with the same image.
- When set as "End the call" is set, closing FOMA terminal while on hold terminates the call.
- When the screen except for the talking screen (submenu screen or Multitask screen) is displayed, the call continues regardless of the Close Settings ("End the call," "Continue the call," and "On hold").
- When FOMA terminal is closed during a call by connecting an earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or hands free devices (available in market), the call continues regardless of the Close Setting when set to sound from the device which is connected.

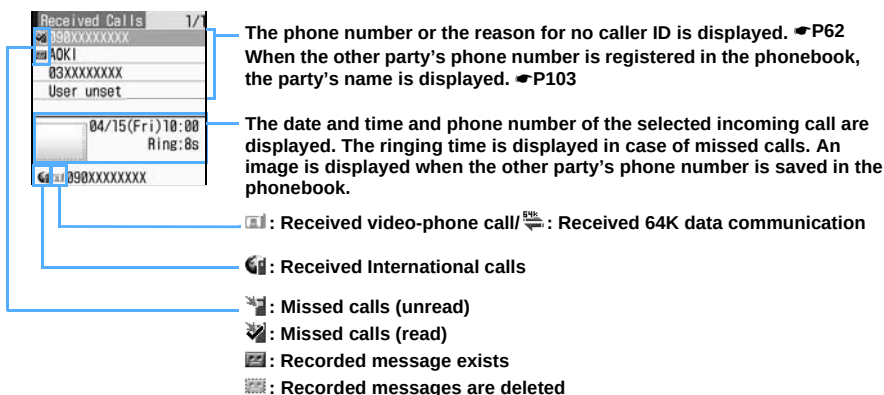
Using Received Calls

Received Calls record all the incoming calls both answered and missed calls in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded for Received Calls. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.
- When the date and time is not set on FOMA terminal, the date and time is not recorded in Received Calls.

Displaying Received Calls

- 1 Press  on the stand-by display and place the cursor at a received call from a list.



■ Registering an entry from the received calls list to the phonebook

- ① Place the cursor at a received call to register and press  .
 - To add data to an existing phonebook entry, press  .
- ② Register the names or address by pressing  or .  P104
 - When adding to registered data of phonebook, press  or  and select the phonebook data of registration destination.  P116

■ Composing Short Message (SMS) from the received call list

- ① Place the cursor at a received call to set as an address and hold down  for over a second.

The Short Message (SMS) composition screen with the received call phone number specified as the address appears.

- When the cursor is placed on a received call with no caller ID, Short Message (SMS) composition screen without the address appears by holding down  for over a second.
- If the phone number of received calls is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the phone number of Received Calls specified as the address.

When the cursor is placed on a received call with no caller ID, i-mode Mail composition screen without the address appears by pressing .

■ Switching to the redial list

- ① Press .
 - Pressing  switches the Received Calls/redial list display.

Making calls from Received Calls

① Place the cursor at the entry in received call list and press or .

- Pressing  make a call in the same way as in the Call type of the selected received call (voice call/video-phone call).
- To change show/hide caller ID when making a call  P56
- To append a number set in Prefix to the phone number to call  P56, P58

Unanswered calls (missed calls)

When you cannot answer calls,  1 is indicated on the stand-by display with a number of missed calls.

- When the Indicator light in Illumination Setting is set to "ON", the multi-indicator blinks until the received calls are displayed.
- You can select the icon on the stand-by display to check the date and time of an incoming call.  P35
- When a missed calls from an unknown phone number exists, the ringing time enables you to check whether a malicious (one-ring phone scam) call is received for the sole purpose of recording the phone number in Received Calls.

INFORMATION

- If Missed call is set to "Not display" with Ring Alert Delay set to "ON", missed calls within the set delay time are not displayed.  P169
Press    on the received call list to display the corresponding missed calls. To return to the normal received call list, press   . Press    on the received call list to display all the received calls.
- When only missed calls shorter than the set delay time are recorded as received calls, pressing  on the stand-by display shows a confirmation screen notifying you of received calls not displayed. When "Yes" is selected, missed calls shorter than the set delay time are displayed.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers than the caller's dial-in number.
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call list up to that point are deleted. Calls made after setting Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock are recorded in the received call list and can be called from it even PIM Lock is "ON".
- When Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set, any call from the other party that is not registered in the phonebook is rejected and recorded in the received call list.

Deleting received calls [Delete Received Calls]

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the received call number to delete and press

  .

- Press    to delete all Received Calls. All the received call records are deleted including missed calls shorter than the set delay time.  P169

3 Select "Yes".

Adjusting volume of the caller's voice

Default Level 4

- You set the volume of the caller's voice from Level 1 (lowest volume) to Level 6 (highest volume).
- Volume Setting is also synchronized with the volume of Keypad Sound, the playback volume of Answer Machine and Voice Memos.
- The volume level set while talking remains after your call is finished.
- Volume keeps in effect even if you turn OFF the power.

Adjusting during a call

1 Press during a call to adjust the volume.

The volume is set automatically when you press  or after you stopped key operations and wait for a while.

- To increase the volume, press  or . To decrease the volume, press  or .
- Press   to adjust a video-phone call's sound volume.

Adjust during the stand-by

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to adjust the volume.

3 Press .

Adjusting ring volume

Default Level4

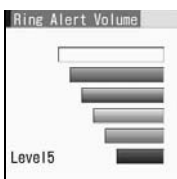
Adjust the ring volume of the phone, the mail and message R/Fs.

- The ring volume can be adjusted at 7 levels, Silent and Levels 1 to 6. You can also set Ascending (step tones): (the volume of ring tone changes into “Silent” → “Level1” → ... → “Level6” every 3 seconds) in stand-by.
- When the volume of ring tone is changed during a call, the screen returns to the setting of Ring Volume when the call is finished.
- The ring volume adjusted while in stand-by is kept in effect even when the power is turned OFF.

Adjusting while receiving a call

Example Adjusting the ring tone volume

1 Press to adjust the volume while receiving a call.



The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

INFORMATION

- Pressing  when a call comes in, the ring tone becomes silent and stops the vibrator operation.
- When Ascending is set for ring tone, the change begins with Level 6 when adjustment is done while a call is arriving.

Adjusting during the stand-by

Example Adjusting the ring tone volume

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Adjusting the message reception ring tone

① Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Press to adjust the volume.

- When the volume is “Level6”, pressing  or  sets “Ascending”. When the volume is “Level1”, pressing  or  sets the phone “Silent”.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

-  is indicated on the stand-by display when the ring tone is set to Silent. If the vibrator for voice call is set at the same time,  is indicated.
- Even when ring tone is set to Silent, incoming calls and mail reception can be indicated by vibrator operation, or blinking of the multi-indicator, in addition to message display on the screen. ●P131, P147
- Ring volume is also synchronized with the volume of schedule alarm sound.

Incoming & Outgoing

Setting actions at call arrival

Default Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1 Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image
Vibrator: OFF Lighting : Pattern 4

- The settings in this function are reflected to the ring alert for phone in Sound Setting, lighting pattern for incoming call in Illumination Setting, vibrator for phone in Vibrator Setting, and portrait display and image display in Call Image.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Ring alert : Sets a ring tone for incoming calls.

- When "OFF" is set, no ring tone emits.
- When you select "Melody", select a melody in Ring alert field.
- When you select "Movie ringtone", select a video/i-motion in Ring alert field.

Show portrait : Sets whether to display the image for incoming calls from the number registered in the phonebook.

- It is not reflected to the setting for Call image in Group Setting of the phonebook.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for incoming calls.

- When "Select image" is selected, select "Select image" for List images to set an image.
- When " motion" is selected, select "Select image" for List images to select a video/i-motion.

Vibrator : Sets operation of the vibrator for incoming voice call.

Lighting : Sets the blinking pattern of multi-indicator.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- If a video/i-motion with a sound and image is set for "Movie ringtone" in Ring alert, Movie ringtone is played with Show image switched to "Sync ring alert". At this time, the outgoing image is set to "Standard image".
- Show image is switched to "Standard image" when the video/i-motion contains voice only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices) is set for "Movie ringtone" in Ring alert and a Flash graphics or video/i-motion is set for Show image, but image can be changed by selecting "Select image" in Show image field.
- When video/i-motion with sound and image is set for Ring alert and "Sync ring alert" is set for Call Image, resetting Ring alert to "OFF" will replay the Movie ringtone but silence the ring tone volume.
- If no image is registered in a phonebook entry, the image set in Show image field is displayed regardless of the setting of Show portrait. However, the image set in Group Setting, if any is displayed.

Priority Comm Mode

Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during call or packet communication

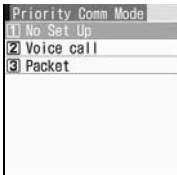
Default No Set Up

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- A screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **や** **TUN** **6** **IS** **INFO** **9** **CS** **VOICE** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** **CS** **OFF** to **3** **CS** **OFF**.



- To display the last incoming screen received without giving display priority, press **1** **CS** **OFF**.
- Press **2** **CS** **OFF** to display the voice call screen or **3** **CS** **OFF** to display the packet communication screen by priority.

Screen displayed

The following screen is displayed depending on the settings.

- During voice call

Setting	Incoming packet communication other than i-mode
No Set Up	Screen displayed during a voice call
Voice call	Screen displayed during a voice call
Packet	Screen displayed during incoming packet communication

Note1: The screen displayed during incoming calls depends on Arrival Call Act. ●P472

Note2: Receiving a packet communication other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) and Message R/Fs.

- During packet communication

Setting	Incoming call
No Set Up	Screen displayed during a voice call
Voice call	Screen displayed during a voice call
Packet	Screen displayed in i-mode

Note: Packet communications in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communications. ●P545

Response and Hold

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

- The caller will be charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press while receiving an incoming call.

FOMA terminal is put on Response and Hold. The other party hears a response hold guidance. When a video-phone call is received, the response hold image for video-phone is sent to you and the other party.



Incoming voice call is on hold



Incoming video-phone call is on hold

2 Press , when you are ready to answer the call.

- In case of a voice call, you can answer the incoming call also by opening FOMA terminal. ●P64
- Press  for a video-phone call. Press  instead of  to send a substitute image to the other party. ●P92
- If  is pressed or the other party hangs up while on Response and Hold, the call is disconnected.

INFORMATION

- When you use the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and a voice call is received, you can switch to the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service by selecting "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" from the submenu.
- Response and hold image for video-phone can be changed. ●P93

Setting Status Message

Default On-hold tone: Standard

You can record a response hold guidance in your own voice.

- One guidance up to 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or a video-phone call is on Response and Hold, the status message set by this function is played.

Example Setting a recorded data for guidance

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 8/100]** **[6 6/100]** **[7 7/100]** on the stand-by display.

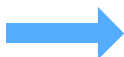
2 Select On-hold tone field and press **[2 2/100]**.

- Press **[1 1/100]** and go to Step 4 to reset to the default message.

3 Select “Record” in Edit message field and speak the response hold guidance after the beep.



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.



Recording will start after the message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the start of recording.
- Press **[Stop]** to stop in the middle of the guidance recording.
- “Record” cannot be selected when a recorded data has already been registered. Select “Delete”, select “Yes” and record after deleting the recorded data.
- Select “Play” to check the recorded status message.

4 Press **[OK]**.

INFORMATION

- If “Standard” is set for On-hold tone, the guidance “I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)” is played for the other party while on Response and Hold.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the default status guidance is reset.

Setting On-hold Tone

Default On-hold tone (Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice)

- You can set a melody not only the default melody registered in FOMA terminal but the melody saved from i-mode sites or mail.
- The melody set by this function is played while voice or video-phone calls are on-hold.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select On-hold tone field and press .

- Press  and go to Step 4 to reset to the default melody.

3 Set the on-hold melody.

① **Select On-hold melody field.**

The folder list of "Melody" is displayed.

② **Select a folder to select a melody from a list.**

The melody is set and the On-hold tone screen returns.

- A melody is played by selecting the melody and pressing . While a melody is playing, pressing  adjusts the volume and  plays the previous or next melody. Press  to set the melody.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- The sound volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.
- If you set PIM Lock after you change the on-hold tone, the preinstalled tone is played except the case when you set a melody in the "Preinstalled" folder as the on-hold melody.

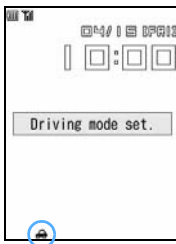
Setting not to receive calls during driving

Driving mode is an automatic answering service considering safety driving. With Driving Mode ON, callers hear a guidance informing that you are driving and cannot answer the call and the call is disconnected.

- If you receive calls, mails or Message R/Fs or schedule/alarm are started during Driving Mode, neither the ring tone, schedule alarm nor alarm sounds and neither the vibrator nor the multi-indicator operates. Also, even if you receive mail or Message R/Fs during Drive Mode, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed.
- When FOMA terminal is turned OFF or outside the service area, the caller hears an out-of-range guidance and the Driving Mode guidance is not played.
- The following sounds are played even in Driving Mode.
 - Keypad sound
 - Open slide/close slide sound when opening/closing FOMA terminal.
 - The shooting confirmation sound for shooting with the camera.(shutter sound)
- Driving Mode can be set or canceled even when 車外 is indicated.
- You do not need to apply to use Driving Mode. No monthly fee is required.
- For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Driving Mode

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.



-  is indicated in the stand-by display while Driving Mode is ON.

■ Canceling Driving Mode

① Hold down for over a second in Driving Mode.

Driving Mode is canceled and  disappears from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- If an incoming call is received while Driving Mode is being set on stand-by, the following takes place:
 - The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call is given a guidance and the call is disconnected. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows the icon () and the number of missed calls, which is recorded in Received Calls.
 - A message that the call cannot be answered because you are driving is displayed on the terminal of the other party who has made a video-phone call and the call is disconnected. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows the icon () and the number of missed calls, which is recorded in Received Calls.
- Calls can be made even when Driving Mode is set.
- When Silent Mode is also set, Driving Mode takes precedence.
- Calls that arrive when Driving Mode is set relate to the network services as shown below:
Network Service 

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service	• The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a Driving Mode announcement and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. - The icon () which shows the number of missed calls appears on the stand-by display and the call will be recorded in the Received Calls. However, if the ringing time of Voice Mail Service is set to "0 sec", the other party's terminal does not receive a Driving Mode announcement but an announcement that the call is connected to the voice mail service center. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the Received Calls. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays a message that the call cannot be answered because you are driving and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.
Call Forwarding Service	• The terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a Driving Mode announcement and the call is connected to the specified destination. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The icon () which shows the number of missed calls appears on the stand-by display and the call will be recorded in the Received Calls. However, if the ringing time of Call Forwarding Service is set to "0 sec", the other party's terminal does not receive a Driving Mode announcement but the call is forwarded to the specified destination. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the Received Calls. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party does not receive a Driving Mode announcement and then the call is forwarded to the specified destination. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows the icon () (which shows number of missed calls), and the call is recorded in Received Calls. If the ringing time of Call Forwarding Service is set to "0 sec", the call is not recorded in Received Calls.
Call Waiting Service	• During voice calls, the terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives a Driving Mode announcement. During voice/video-phone calls, a message informing that the connection was failed is displayed on the terminal of the other party who has made a video-phone call. During video-phone calls, the terminal of the other party who has made a voice call receives busy tone. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The icon () which shows the number of missed calls appears on the stand-by display and the call will be recorded in the Received Calls.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	• If the other party who has made a voice call is registered as the nuisance caller, his/her terminal receives a call reject announcement. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in the Received Calls. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays a message informing that the connection was failed, and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.
Caller ID Request Service	• If the other party who has made a call does not notify his/her phone number, his/her terminal will hear an announcement telling him to request caller ID display. Your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call and the call is not recorded in Received Calls. • For a video-phone call, the terminal of the other party displays a message that the call cannot be connected, and the call is not connected to your FOMA terminal.

- In Driving Mode, a call from a number set for Sender in Remote Lock is counted as an incoming call to activate Remote Lock.
- This function cannot be set during data communication.
- Any call that arrives during i-mode with Driving Mode activated is rejected and recorded in Received Calls. Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service performs its own incoming operation.

Answer Machine

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

By setting Answer Machine, a greeting will be played and the caller can leave a recorded message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and video-phone calls in total, a maximum of approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- The date and time and the phone number of recorded message are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set to FOMA terminal, or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- Answer Machine can respond a video-phone call, but it records only voice messages as when answering a voice call and the image is not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting. ●P78
- The greeting in your own voice can be created. ●P78
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Data may be lost due to failure, repair or modifications of FOMA terminal. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Setting Answer Machine

1 Press on the stand-by display.

-  is indicated in the stand-by display while setting Answer Machine.

Canceling Answer Machine

- 1 Press    on the stand-by display during Answer Machine is set.
 -  disappears on the stand-by display.

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate the function only once by holding down  for over a second while the phone is ringing. This operation does not set the Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

- When the total recorded numbers of the recorded message become 4,  is indicated on the stand-by display. The icon does not disappear even if the Answer Machine is canceled.
- If there are already 4 record messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down  for over a second, while the phone is ringing, a warning tone (bleep) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. If Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions are set to start, each services start their operation. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again. ●P80

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

When there is an incoming call while Answer Machine is set, it operates in the steps given below.

1 A call is received.

After the ring tone sounds according to the Greeting Response Time setting, "Greeting" screen is displayed and the Answer Machine automatically answers the call.

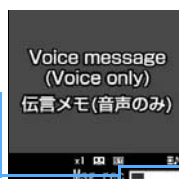
- When the greeting is set to "Preinstalled", the caller hears the message, "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep(in Japanese)". When "Personalized" is set for the greeting, the message recorded with your voice is played.

2 The other party's message is recorded.



Recording the message of the voice call

An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.



Recording the message of video-phone call

- A beep announces the other party the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.

- If there is any recorded message not checked, the icon (📞 1) which indicates the number of recorded messages is indicated on the stand-by display. If 📞 1 is selected, the recorded message list is displayed.

INFORMATION

- You can answer a call while the phone is ringing, playing, response guidance or recording a message. Pressing Ⓜ answers the call as a normal voice or video-phone call (substitute image is sent to the other party) and pressing 📞 sends your portrait and answers the call as a video-phone. In case of a voice call, you can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ➡P64
If the message is on recording at this time, the contents before receiving the call will not be recorded.
- When 圏外 is indicated, the Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (paid service) when you would like to record a message in the out-of-service area. ➡P463
- Answer Machine cannot be started and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions are set to start, each service start their operation. ➡P80
- Driving Mode has priority over Answer Machine and does not operate in Driving Mode.
- The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Calls replied by Answer Machine are recorded in Received Calls.
- Incoming calls received while recording a message are rejected and recording continues. If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, such incoming calls are recorded in Received Calls.
- When video-phone is answered with Answer Machine, the image for recording video-phone message is sent to the other party.
The image during the video-phone message recording can be changed. ➡P93

Setting the response time to the greeting starts [Greeting Response Time]

Default 008 Sec

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the response time.

- Enter a greeting response time between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing .

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer (when an earphone/microphone set with a switch (optional) is connected), Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and this function are all set, the function given the priority varies from the ringing times set for each services and functions. To give priority to Answer Machine, the ringing time set for this function should be shorter than those set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service functions. Note that Answer Machine may not be given the priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, respond a call with Quick Record Message. ●P76
- The same time period cannot be set for both Auto answering time for Auto Answer and Greeting Response Time for Answer Machine. ●P455

Setting the greeting message [Greeting Setting]

Default Set Greeting: Preinstalled

You can record your own voice as greeting.

- One message up to 10 seconds long can be recorded.

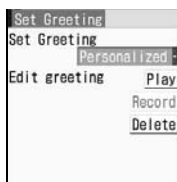
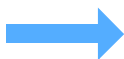
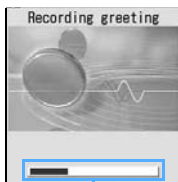
Example Setting a recorded data for greeting message

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select Set Greeting field and press .

- Press  and go to Step 4 to reset to the default message.

3 Select “Record” in Edit greeting field and speak a greeting message after a dial tone.



An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

Recording will start after the message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the recording starts.
- Press to stop in the middle of the greeting recording.
- “Record” cannot be selected when a recorded data has already been registered. Select “Delete”, select “Yes” to delete the recorded data.
- Select “Play” to check the recorded greeting.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

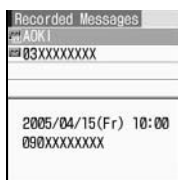
- When a recorded greeting is deleted, the default greeting is reset.

Playing the recorded messages

You can play and delete recorded messages from the list.

- Recorded messages, if any, can easily be played from the stand-by display. P35

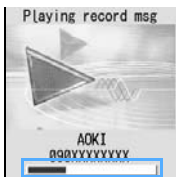
1 Press on the stand-by display.



On the recorded message list screen, the date and time of a recorded message and other party's phone number appear.

- The reason for no caller ID is displayed when the caller's phone number is not notified. When the phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name of the caller is displayed.
- Icon definitions:
 - : Recorded message of a voice call not played
 - : Recorded message of a video-phone call not played
 - : Played recorded message of a voice call
 - : Played recorded message of a video-phone call

2 Select a recorded message to play.



An approximate guide of the playing time is displayed.

The recorded message is played back.

• During playback, the following operations are enabled:

-  : Adjust volume
-  : Stop playing

■ Deleting a recorded message

- ① Place the cursor at the recorded message to delete and press **Menu** **2** **2** **1**.
- Press **Menu** **2** **2** to delete all recorded messages.
- ② Select "Yes".

■ Registering an entry from the recorded message list to the phonebook

- ① Place the cursor at a recorded message to register and press **Menu** **4**.
- When adding to the registered phonebook data, press **Menu** **5**.
- ② Register the names or addresses by pressing **1** or **2**. **☛P104**
- To add to the registered phonebook data, press **1** or **2** to select the phonebook data of registration destination. **☛P116**

3 Determine whether to delete the played recorded message.

- Select "Yes" to delete a recorded message.

INFORMATION

- When Indicator light is "ON" in Illumination Setting, the multi-indicator blinks until unplayed message is played.
- Focus to the recorded message list and press  to make a voice call, press  to make a video-phone call. Customized Call can be used from the submenu to make voice or video-phone calls by specifying show/hide caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate.
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Video-phone	82
Making video-phone calls	83
Receiving video-phone calls	86
Using Chara-den	88
Setting images to be sent to the other party	89
Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call	96
Changing the video-phone settings	[Video-phone Setting] 98
Setting operations for the outgoing/incoming video-phone calls	[Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing] 99
Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device	[External Device] 100

Video-phone

The video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's video-phone. By using the video-phone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images from the camera. It is also possible to display still images, substitute images, Chara-den, etc. instead of your own image.

DoCoMo video-phone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*¹ that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*²". Note that the connection with the video-phones of different specifications can not be established.

*1 3G-324M

An international standard for the 3rd-generation mobile video-phone.

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following two connection speeds are provided for the video-phone:
 - 64K: Connects at connection speed of 64kbps.
 - 32K: Connects at connection speed of 32kbps.

Screen display during a video-phone call



①	Main screen	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
②	Connection speed	64K : 64K 32K : 32K
③	Video-phone status	No icon: Normal communication 📞: With the speakerphone function operating
④	Sub screen	Your own image is displayed by default.
⑤	Zoom	×1 : Standard to ×16 : 16 x (out-camera) ×1 : Standard to ×2 : 2 x (in-camera)
⑥	Macro mode	No icon: Normal mode 📷: Macro mode (Close-up mode) (out-camera)
⑦	Status	📷: Sending your own image 📷: Sending the substitute image 📷: Using Chara-den 📷: Sending frame 📷: Sending the still image 📷: On-hold 📞: On Response and Hold 📷: Recording a message 📷: Recording a voice memo
	Action mode	📷: Full motion 📷: Semi motion
⑧	Camera effects	📷: Normal 📷: Backlight 📷: Sepia 📷: Monotone 📷: Sea/Snow 📷: Sunset
⑨	Compact light	No icon: Turn light OFF 📷: Turn light ON
⑩	Sending image quality	No icon: Standard 📷: Prefer img qual 📷: Prefer motion spd
⑪	Channel establishment	📷: Sound channel established 📷: Video channel established 📷: Sound/video channel established
⑫	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making video-phone calls

- If you make a video-phone call while viewing the face of other party, use a speakerphone function or connect to an earphone/microphone with a switch (option). ◀P51, P454
- International video-phone calls are available by using DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". ◀P57
- If the message of "Failed to connect" is displayed when making a video-phone call, set Caller ID Notification and dial again.

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display.

- Entering method is the same as for the voice calls. ◀P50
- You can make a video-phone call by specifying the data rate (64K or 32K) from Customized call if you enter the phone number and press  . ◀P56

2 Press .



Your image is displayed while on the video-phone call.

- If the phone on the other party is busy, you will hear the busy signal. The message of "Busy" or "Failed to connect." is displayed on the screen. Press  to cancel the call and dial again after for a while. You can call back quickly by using Redial. ◀P53
- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, "Default image" set for the substitute image is sent to the other party's terminal. ◀P92
- The charging begins when "Connected video-phone" is displayed on the screen.

3 Talk with the other party.



The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Putting calls on hold (◀P51) sends a video-phone on-hold image. The video-phone on-hold image can be changed. ◀P92
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch calls for using the speakerphone function by pressing  or . ◀P51
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time  is pressed. ◀P89

4 When you finish a call, press .

- You can also end the video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal. To end the video-phone call by closing the terminal, change the settings in "Close Setting". ◀P64

Operations during video-phone calls

- The following operations can be performed from the submenu during video-phone calls:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 Switch cameras	Switches between the in-camera/out-camera.	P94
2 Compact light ON/OFF	Switches between the Compact light ON or OFF.	P96
3 Camera settings	Applying effects on images which is displayed, setting brightness and color density for the camera images to be sent during video-phone calls and switching to Macro Mode.	P90, P95
4 Receive quality	Set the quality of received images. This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.	P97
5 V-phone settings	Changing settings for the screen to be displayed during video-phone calls.	P97
6 Chara-den settings	Changing the Chara-den character, switching between full and semi motion and selecting actions. In addition, a still image set in Substitute Image of Image Setting: V-Phone can be displayed.	P376
7 Play file	Change frame and still image to send to the other party.	P90, P91
8 Send DTMF	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during video-phone calls.	P95
9 Volume	Adjusts Earpiece Volume.	P67

- You can record the other party's voice with In-call Voice Memo while making a call by holding down  for over a second. ➡P448

INFORMATION

- You can make a video-phone call by performing Steps 2 and Step 1 in the reverse order. When  is pressed and the phone number is pressed, the video-phone call can be made automatically after 5 seconds.
- You may not be able to make a call while executing another function. ➡P547
- Please note that the communication charges are based on the rate for digital communication rather than the voice calls even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.
- While using video-phone, dialing operation to a voice call can not be performed. Also, "Unable to call." is displayed.
- If a video-phone call attempt fails, the following message (text information) will be displayed on the screen. The display returns to the stand-by display automatically. Note that displayed messages may not reflect the status on the other party correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or conditions of the network service contract of the other party.

Message	Description
Check the number and retry	You dialed the phone number not used.
Busy	The other party is busy or during packet communication.
Disconnected due to outside of service/power off	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's phone terminal is turned OFF.
Driving mode	The phone of the other party is in Driving Mode.
Select on for Call ID Notification	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to the V live or visual site).
Failed to connect	Set Caller ID Notification "Notify" and dial again. The message may be also displayed for cases other than the above.

- When a video-phone call is forwarded, the message "Your call is being forwarded." is displayed.
- Video-phone via 32K line is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which video-phone calls via 64K line may not be available depending on the network condition. When a video-phone call is made via 64K line, the call type is automatically switched to via 32K for redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K. When "ON" is set for Voice call auto switch, redialing via 32K line is also given priority.

Note: If a call is made via 32K line, the charge is the same as the digital communication charge via 64K.

- If a video-phone call is made and is not established, redialing is automatically performed as described below.

Call type	Voice call auto switch setting	Switching operation
64K	ON	64K → 32K → Sound
	OFF	64K → 32K → Disconnection
32K	ON	32K → Sound
	OFF	32K → Disconnection

- If you pre-register the communication speed (64K or 32K) in the phonebook, you can change the communication speed depending on the other party you are making a call. ●P122
- If you specify the data rate from Customized call in the submenu after entering phone number to make a call, the specification for Customized Call is effective. If nothing has been specified for the data rate, 64K connection is attempted.
- When "ON" is set for Voice call auto switch, the call type is automatically switched to voice call for redialing if the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or uses the mova service through the Dual Network Service, hence, making the more certain connection to the other party.
Note: If you redial as a voice call, the charge is placed as a voice call.
- If the video-phone call is made to 110, 119 or 118 when Voice call auto switch is set to "ON", the video-phone call automatically switches to a voice call.
- New voice or video-phone calls cannot be made during video-phone calls. i-mode connection, i-mode Mail, Message R/F or Short Message (SMS) exchange is not available.
- A video-phone call is not available to the phones not supporting the video-phone function, or to the phones without power or located outside the service area. If you set the Voice call auto switch function to "ON" and attempt to make a video-phone call with an unsupported device, the other party will abort the communications before connected. For this case, voice call redialing will automatically begin. The redialing function cannot work as written above if you attempt the video-phone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64kbps or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN video-phones incompatible with 3G-324M (●P82) (as of December, 2004), or dialing the wrong phone number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.
- You can switch Show caller ID/Hide caller ID when making a video-phone call. ●P56
- If a pause or timed pause is entered (●P52), dialing before the pause and the timed pause is made and all the phone numbers dialed after the pause or timed pause are ignored.
- While you are dialing or redialing video-phone call, incoming calls will abort the dialing and ring tone may sound.
- Incoming calls during a video-phone call. ●P545
- Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (only voice) or  (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.
- If the radio wave conditions are poor during a video-phone call, the image may be displayed as mosaic.

Receiving video-phone calls

- You cannot accept a call by pressing the keys except for  and .
- When a video-phone call is received, Any Key Answer is unavailable.

1 Receive a call.



The ring alert sounds, the display backlight lights up and the multi-indicator blinks.

- The other party's phone number, name or still image/video may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller or FOMA terminal settings. Display information. P61
- Press  to hold your answer and the video-phone response hold image is displayed on the screen of the other party's terminal. P71

2 Press .



Your image is displayed while on the video-phone call.

■ Answering a video-phone call with the substitute image

① Press .

The substitute image instead of your image is sent to the other party when the video-phone call is connected.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the standard image set for the substitute image is sent to the other party. P92

3 Talk with the other party.



The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Putting calls on hold (P51) sends a video-phone on-hold image. The video-phone on-hold image can be changed. P92
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch calls for using the speakerphone function by pressing  or . P51
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time  is pressed. P89

4 When you finish a call, press .

- You can also end the video-phone calls by closing FOMA terminal. To end the video-phone call by closing the terminal, change the settings in "Close Setting". P64

Operations while receiving calls

- You can perform the following operations from the submenu when you received the video-phone calls or while the ring alert is sounding.

Submenu item	Description
① Call forwarding*	Makes incoming calls transferred to the forwarding phone number.
② Call rejection	A call is disconnected. Caller does not pay for calling.

* Valid when you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service and the phone numbers for forwarding have been set.

- You can respond a call with the Record message by holding down  for over a second (Quick Record Message).  P76
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator.  P68

INFORMATION

- When a video-phone call arrives while an earphone/microphone set with switch (option) is connected, holding down the headset switch for over a second allows you to answer the call with a substitute image.  P455
- While an earphone/microphone set with switch (option) is connected, the terminal operates according to Auto Answer Setting so that you can response by sending a substitute image to the caller automatically.
- Voice Mail Service does not cover video-phone calls.
- When a video-phone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to the video-phone possible terminal which is compatible with the 3G-324M ( P82) even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when making the forward settings.
- If a video-phone call from a phone number registered in Nuisance Call Blocking Service arrives, the call is rejected without sending the announcement of call rejection.  P468
- Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (only voice) or  (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.
- Any video-phone call that arrives during software update is rejected and recorded as a received call.
- You can operate for the incoming video-phone call from the external device connected to FOMA terminal.  P100
- When you end a video-phone call, an image during phone disconnection may not appear depending on your terminal condition.
- Call Waiting Service is unavailable during a video-phone call.  P465

Using Chara-den

During a video-phone call, a character can be sent instead of your image. The character can be activated by pressing dial keys during a video-phone call. Some character move their mouth in time with the sounds picked up by the microphone.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select the folder.

The Chara-den list is displayed.

2 Select a Chara-den and press .

3 Enter a phone number and press .



Chara-den
©BVIG

A video-phone call is made with Chara-den set as a substitute image.

- The parties to make video-phone calls can be selected from the phonebook by pressing .
- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action in accordance with the number of the keys. The following operations can be also performed.



: Canceling action



: Displaying Action List (Selecting action activates characters.)



for over a second: Switching Actions (Full motion/semi motion)

- Action List of Chara-den set by default 

Setting as video-phone substitute images

A Chara-den can be set as a substitute image for the video-phone call beforehand.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select the folder.

The Chara-den list is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at Chara-den and press .

The selected Chara-den is set as a substitute image for the video-phone call.

INFORMATION

- Holding down  for over a second while Chara-den is displayed also sets Chara-den as the video-phone substitute image. 
- You can also change Chara-den to set as a substitute image in the substitute image selection for the video-phone. 

Setting images to be sent to the other party

- The following items can be set.

Item	Page	Item	Page
Switching outgoing images between "Your self image" and "Substitute image"	P89	Sending still images	P91
		Changing the image to be displayed during a video-phone call	P92
Setting the quality of outgoing images	P89	Switching display magnifications	P94
Laying frames over outgoing images	P90	Switching the in-camera/out-camera	P94
Applying special effects to outgoing images	P90	Switching the camera to Macro Mode (Close-up Mode)	P95
Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images*	P91	Transmitting tone signals	P95

* The settings are retained after the call.

Switching outgoing images between your self image and the substitute image

Default Me

1 Press during a call.



The substitute image
©BVIG

- Displaying outgoing images  P82
- Each time you press , the image switches between your self image () and the substitute image ( or ). P86
- When Chara-den is set as a substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the standard image set for the substitute image is sent to the other party. P92
- Operations when sending Chara-den as a substitute image P88

Setting the quality of outgoing images

Default Standard

- Setting "Prefer motion spd" makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting "Prefer img qual" makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

1 Press during a call.

The quality of outgoing images change.

- Each time you press , the quality of outgoing image switches as follows. Pressing , switches to the reverse order.
Standard (no icon) → Prefer img qual () → Prefer motion spd () → Standard (no icon) → ...

Laying frames over outgoing images [Select Frame]

Lay the image for the frame saved in FOMA terminal over your image to send to the other party.

- The frame can be added only when sending your self image.
- Only the frames of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller can be selected. However, among the downloaded frames, you can select only the frames with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF).

1 Press **[Menu]** **[7 OFF]** **[1 ON]** during a call.

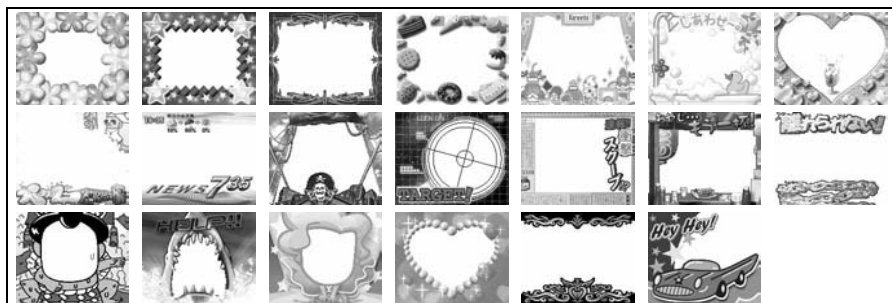
2 Select a frame.



Your image is sent to the other party in the same manner.

- While the in-camera is used, a mirror image is displayed on the screen and a normal image is sent to the other party. While the out-camera is used, the image same as on the screen is sent to the other party.
- Pressing **[]** while sending your self image cancels the frame sending.

Frames set by default



- You can download the above default frames from the i-mode site, "My D-style", if you have deleted them. **☛P328**

Applying special effects to outgoing images [Camera Effects]

Default Normal

You can apply the following effects to the outgoing images:

Item	Icon	Description
1 Normal		The image with the standard quality is sent.
2 Backlight		Used when shooting subjects against the light.
3 Sepia		Used for Sepia tone.
4 Monotone		Used for Monotone.
5 Sea/Snow		Shooting beautiful light reflection in sceneries such as the sea and snowy surface.
6 Sunset		Used when shooting subjects against sunset glow.

- This setting can be changed only when sending your self image.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[3 OFF]** **[1 ON]** during a call.

2 Press to .



- Press  to cancel the effect.

The icon for the effect currently applied is indicated.

Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images

Default Brightness: Level 3 Density: Level 3

- You can adjust the brightness and color density at 5 levels.
- This setting can be changed only while your image is being sent.

1 Press during a call.

2 Press to select Brightness slider and press .



Your image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the brightness. You can check the changing of the brightness as you shift the slider's position.

3 Press to select Density slider and press .

Your image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the density. You can check the changing of the density as you shift the slider's position.

4 Press .

- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting the brightness/color density, the setting is not changed and goes back to the Talking screen.

Sending still images [Select Image]

Select an image to be sent to the other party from the saved still images. You can show the selected still image to the other party during a video-phone call.

- This setting is not available while the frame is being sent (P90).
- Only the still images that are 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from FOMA terminal can be set. Outputting the still images from FOMA terminal (File Restriction) P403

1 Press during a call.

The image folders list is displayed.

2 Select a folder and select the still image from a list.



The still image is sent to the other party in the same manner.

- You can display a still image by placing the cursor at it and pressing .
- The setting is released and the previous image is displayed if you press  while sending still images.

Changing the image to be displayed during a video-phone call [Image Settings]

Change the images displayed during video-phone calls such as the substitute image, video-phone call answer machine image, video-phone call response image and video-phone call on-hold image.

Changed images are displayed during video-phone calls, while recording the messages, during Response and Hold or during On-hold and they are also sent to the other party.

• You cannot set the following still images:

- Still images with a size of more than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
- Animation, create animation and continuous shots
- Still images in formats other than JPEG and GIF format
- Still images that must not be output from FOMA terminal

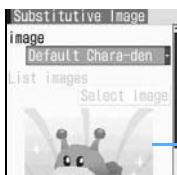
Outputting the still images from FOMA terminal (File Restriction) ◀P403

Changing the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  and select the image field.



Chara-den
©BVIG

■ Setting the standard Chara-den

① Press .

"Default Chara-den (bunbun (Dimo))" is set.

■ Setting the standard still image

① Press .

"Default image (Camera off)" is set.

■ Setting other Chara-den

① Press .

② Select "Select image".

The Chara-den folder list is displayed.

③ Select a folder to select a still image from the Chara-den list.

Chara-den is set and the "Substitutive Image" screen reappears.

- Place the cursor at Chara-den to set and press  to display Chara-den.

■ Setting other still images

① Press **[4 F.]**.

② Select "Select image".

"Image" folders list is displayed.

③ Select a folder and select a still image from the list.

Still image is set and the "Substitutive Image" screen reappears.

- Place the cursor at the still image to set and press **[OK]** to display the still image.

3 Press **[OK]**.

INFORMATION

- If Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to "Default Chara-den" substitute image and if a still image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to "Default image".
- After you change the substitute image by selecting "Selected image" in Image field, if you activate PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (when "Authorized access" is set for My picture), "Default image" is displayed and sent.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold images

Default Answer machine image: Standard image Response hold image: Standard image
On-hold image: Standard image

Example Changing the image for recording video-phone call message

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 呼び出し]** **[8 留守電]** **[3 留守電]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[2 留守電]** to **[4 F.]**.

3 Select Image field and press **[2 留守電]**.



- Press **[1 %]** and go to Step 5 to reset to the default image.

4 Select "Select image" to select images.

- The operation procedure is the same as when setting "Selected image" in Image field in the substitute image setting. ➡P92

5 Press **[OK]**.

INFORMATION

- After you change the answer machine/response hold/on-hold image by selecting "Select image" in Image field, if you activate PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (when "Authorized access" is set for My picture), "Standard image" is displayed and sent.

Switching display magnifications [Zoom]

Default Standard

Switch display magnifications for your image to be sent to the other party.

- Available only while your image is being sent.

1 Press during a call.

The zoom magnification is changed.

- Each time you press , the magnification of outgoing image switches as follows. Pressing , switches to the reverse order.

Out-camera: Standard () → 2 x () → 4 x () → 6 x () → 8 x ()
→ 10 x () → 12 x () → 16 x ()

In-camera : Standard () → 2 x ()

INFORMATION

- Zooming will be canceled if switches between the in-camera and out-camera.

Switching the in-camera/out-camera

Default In-camera

Switch the camera used during a video-phone call.

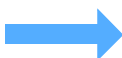
- Available only while your image is being sent.

1 Press during a call.

The image is displayed through the switched camera.



When the in-camera is selected



When the out-camera is selected

- Each time you press  , the camera switched between the in-camera and out-camera.

INFORMATION

- If you switch cameras, the setting of Camera Effects setting is kept.

Switching the camera to Macro Mode (Close-up Mode)

Default Normal mode

Switching over to Macro Mode will allow you to adjust the focus when sending images of objects about 7 to 11 cm away.

- You can switch the camera to Macro Mode only when the out-camera is being used.

1 Press during a call.

- **Resetting to the standard mode.**

① Press   .

INFORMATION

- If you switch the camera to the in-camera in Macro Mode, the camera returns to the standard mode.

Transmitting tone signals [Send DTMF]

The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted during a call.

- The signals may not be received depending on the device of receiver side.
- DTMF input is available only while your image  or substitute image  being sent or using Character  during a video-phone call.

1 Press during a video-phone call and press the dial keys.

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF), press .
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted only by pushing dial keys even if you do not push   while your image is being sent.

INFORMATION

- If the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the frame selection and image selection are canceled.

Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call

- The following items can be set.

Item	Page	Item	Page
Switching between main screen and sub screen*	P96	Setting the quality of the incoming images	P97
Changing the main screen size*	P96	Setting the screen to be displayed during a call*	P97
Turning the Compact light ON	P96		

* The settings are retained after the call.

Switching between main screen and sub screen

Default Main Screen Image: Other Sub Screen Image: Me

The screen is switched between the main screen and the sub screen.

1 Press during a call.

- Press  to change the main/sub screens.
Main : Other party's image Main: Your self image
Sub: Your self image ↔ Sub: Other party's image

Changing the main screen size

Default Large

1 Hold down for over a second during a call.

The main screen display size is changed.

- Every time  is holded down for over a second, the screen size changes in the following order, Large → Standard → Small → Large →

Turning the Compact light ON

- You can switch the Compact light between ON and OFF only when the out-camera is being used.

1 Press during a call.

The Compact light is lit. If the light has been lit, it goes out.

- Each time you press  , the Compact light switches between ON () and OFF (No icon).

INFORMATION

- The Compact light may go out temporarily depending on the setting operation while talking.

You can change the quality of the image sent from the other party. Setting "Prefer motion spd" makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image and setting "Prefer img qual" makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

- This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[4]** **[img]** during a call.

2 Press **[1]** **[img]** to **[3]** **[img]**.

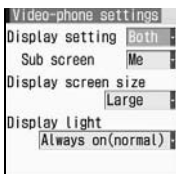


Setting the screen to be displayed during a call [Video-phone Setting during a call]

Default Display setting: Both Sub Screen: Me Display screen size: Large Display light: Always on (normal)

1 Press **[Menu]** **[5]** **[img]** during a call.

2 Select each item to set.



- For settings (Display setting, Sub screen, Display screen size, Display light), refer to Step 2 in "Changing the video-phone settings". ➡P98

3 Press **[img]**.

Changing the video-phone settings

Default Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size : Large
Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)

Set the operation to be performed when video-phone calls have failed to get through and the image to be displayed during video-phone calls.

- “Voice call auto switch” is provided in Video-phone Setting to make the access to the other party for sure. Voice call auto switch is the function to switch the call type to voice by redialing automatically when the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or cannot receive a video-phone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Voice call auto switch

: Sets this function if you want to automatically redial a voice call for unsuccessful video-phone attempt.

Display setting : Specifies whether to display one of the images (your self image or other party's image) or both of images to be displayed while on the video-phone call.

- If you set other than “Both”, “Sub screen” cannot be set.

Sub screen : Specifies whether to display your self image or other party's image in the sub screen while on the video-phone call.

Display screen size

: Sets the main screen view size.

Send camera image

: Specifies whether to send your image to the other party.

Sending image quality

: Sets the image quality on the other party's screen.

Display light : Select lighting of the display during video-phone calls.

- If you set “Terminal settings”, it operates as in the Display Light settings.

☛P144

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- Even if the Voice call auto switch function is set to “ON”, redialing may not be attempted depending on the other party and/or network conditions.
- Even if the Voice call auto switch function is set to “ON”, redialing for a video-phone call is not made during a voice call or 64K data communication.
- If you redial voice calls with the Voice call auto switch function is set to “ON”, the voice call rate will be applied instead of digital communication rate.
- If the video-phone communication is started, redialing as a voice call is not made.

Setting operations for the outgoing/incoming video-phone calls

Default Ring alert: Melody 電話・メロディ A Show image: Standard image
Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Pattern 4

- The settings in this function are reflected to the ring alert for video-phone in Sound Setting, the vibrator for video-phone in Vibrator Setting and the lighting pattern for video-phone in Illumination Setting.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Ring alert : Set operation of the ring alert for incoming video-phone calls.

- When "OFF" is set, the ring alert does not sound.
- When "Melody" is selected, select a melody from the ring alert field to select a melody.
- When you select "Movie ringtone", select the ring alert field to select a video/i-motion.

Show image : Set images displayed for incoming video-phone calls.

- When "Select image" is selected, set "Select image" for List images to set an image.
- When "i-motion" is selected, select "Select image" to select a video/i-motion.

Vibrator : Set operation of the vibrator for incoming video-phone calls.

Lighting : Set the lighting pattern of the multi-indicator.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- If a video/i-motion with a sound and image is set as "Movie ringtone" in Ring alert, a Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) is played show image switched to "Sync ring alert". In this case, the outgoing image is set to "Standard image".
- If a video/i-motion with only voice (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for "Movie ringtone" in Ring alert and if the Flash graphics or the video/i-motion is set for Show image, Show image switches to "Standard image". Select "Select image" from the field of Show image to change the image.

Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device

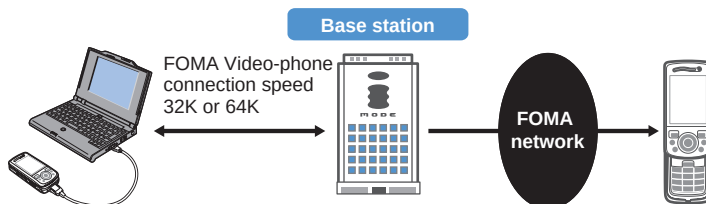
Default Terminal

FOMA terminal can be connected to the external devices such as PC by FOMA USB cable (option) and can accept the video-phone calls with the external device.

If you want to use this function, install a video-phone application software in dedicated external device or in a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone (option) or USB-compatible Web camera.

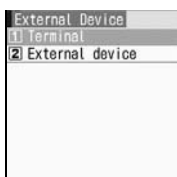
- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to the external device.
- See the operation manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of video-phone applications.

Note: This function is an optional function that will be available when a supporting application and equipment are released. However, the supporting application and equipment have not been released as of December, 2004.



1 Press **Menu** **8** **8** **4** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** or **2**.



INFORMATION

- Video-phone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, any incoming video-phone call during a voice call from an external device is registered as a missed call in Received Calls. The same rule applies when received a voice call, a video-phone call or the 64K data communication during the video-phone call from the external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	102
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	
..... [Phonebook New Entry]	104
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	
..... [Register Entries into UIM Phonebook]	108
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions	[Group Setting] 109
Making calls from the phonebook	[Phonebook Search] 110
Editing phonebook entries	[Edit Phonebook] 116
Copying the phonebook	119
Deleting phonebook entries	[Delete Phonebook] 120
Setting functions for phonebook entries	121
Protecting the secret phonebook entries	[Secret Attribute] 123
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	[Check Records] 125
Using simple dial to make calls	[Quick Dial] 125

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D901i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Difference between the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook	Page
The number of entries	Up to 700 ^{*1}	Up to 50	—
Entry items			
Name/Reading	Up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters for name can be set. Up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters for name can be set. Up to 12 two-byte or 25 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	P104, P108
Image	1Entry	×	P105
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and No group.	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and No group.	P105, P108
Phone number/Icon	Up to five phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total of Phonebook, can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.	P105, P108
Mail address/Icon	Up to five mail addresses can be set per mail address icon and 2,105 addresses can be set in total in the phonebook. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.	P105, P108
Setting for incoming phone calls ^{*2 *3 *4}	○	×	P106
Settings when received the messages ^{*2 *3}	○	×	P106
Other settings ^{*5}	○	×	P106
Phonebook No.	○	×	P107
Phonebook Search			
Group Search	○	○	P111
Name Search	○	○	P112
Search by call rank	○	×	P113
Ph book No. Search	○	×	P114
Number Search	○	○	P114
Column Search	○	○	P115
Secrecy Search	○	×	P124
Various setting			
Caller ID Setting	○	×	P121
Secret code	○	×	P122
Secrecy	○	×	P123
Reject/Accept Call	○	×	P166
Video-phone Rate Setting	○	×	P122
Other			
Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/ Switching phonebook Nos.	○	×	P117, P118
Quick Dial	○	×	P125
Quick Mail	○	×	P266
Site display	○	×	P111
Send Ir data	○	○	P408

- *1 The number of items that can be registered in the phonebook may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.
- *2 Settings for Ring alert, Incoming vibrator and Lighting pattern.
- *3 Incoming settings by Groups are also possible only in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- *4 The substitute image for the video-phone can be also set.
- *5 URL, Note, Postal code, Address, Company name, Job title and Birthday settings.

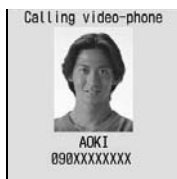
Name displays

If a call is made/received to a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen displayed during making/receiving a call or talking.

In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redials, Received Calls, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu or others.



When a voice call arrives



When a video-phone arrives

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- When an i-mode Mail is received from i-mode terminal and the mail address including "@docomo.ne.jp" exactly matches a mail address in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence, otherwise the settings of phonebook do not take precedence. When saving a mail address in the phonebook, you can save the mail address with the @ and the following domain name (@docomo.ne.jp) omitted, but if you do not save the whole address including "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of phonebook do not take precedence. Note that when the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" and if you save the mail address excluding "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address field, the settings of phonebook take precedence.
- When Short Message (SMS) is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.

INFORMATION

- When Secret Attribute is set in the FOMA terminal phonebook, names are only displayed in Secret Mode. The same applies when data with Secret Attribute set are displayed in the redials, Received Calls, recorded messages and Voice memo while talking.
- Calls or mail received from a party for whom a secrecy ON in Secret Mode use Ring tone, Incoming vibrator and Incoming lighting set in the phonebook data. When not in Secret Mode, the terminal operates as in the settings made in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Illumination Setting.
- If PIM Lock or Privacy Mode ("Authorized access" is set for Phonebook & Logs) is ON, the other party's name is not displayed on Logs or when a call is made or received and only phone number and mail address is displayed. Canceling these restrictions displays the other party's name.
- If mail is received from an other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed in ticker in the task bar.
- Setting can be made to hide names or phone numbers when the phone receives a call, and to change the name sizes. ●P144

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

You can register often-used phone numbers or mail addresses with their names.

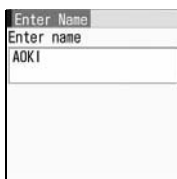
- The phonebook can accommodate a maximum of 700 names. For each name, up to five phone numbers and five mail addresses can be registered. The total overall capacity, however, is 2,105 phone numbers and 2,105 mail addresses.
- See “Entering characters” for how to enter characters. ●P512

INFORMATION

- You can register phonebook entries even when 圏外 (out of service area) is indicated in the display.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
You can use a miniSD memory card to register phonebook entries. ●P391
If you have a PC, you can use data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC. ●P550
- The phonebook data that is saved in FOMA terminal can be backed up to a miniSD memory card. ●P391
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair or changing the FOMA terminal model. Phonebook information remains in memory for about 1 month after the battery pack is removed or runs out, but will be lost after this amount of time.
DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Phonebook data registered in Secret Mode are set as secret attribute.
- When Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- “First phone number”, “Kana/kanji name”, “Group setting”, “First mail address”, “Bookmark” and “Secret setting” is copied to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc. Please be informed that the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of registered data.

Registering the phonebook to FOMA terminal

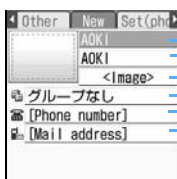
- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter the name.



- Kanji, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered.
However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- Up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters can be entered.
- You must enter a name. If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered into the phonebook.

- 3 Press .

Check the name and reading on New screen.



- Name and reading
- Still image or video that is displayed when a call is received/sent or the phonebook data is checked
- Group name
- Phone number
- Mail address

■ Correcting the name

- ① Select Name field, correct a name and press .

■ Correcting the reading

- ① Select Reading field, correct a reading.
 - Up to 32 one-byte characters can be entered.
 - If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Press to select and enter necessary items.

- If settings of each item in the phonebook have already been made, the setting is displayed.

Image

: Sets a still image or video that is displayed when a call is received/sent or the phonebook data is checked.

- To restore the default setting, press .
- The set image is displayed only when the registered party notifies the phone number.

■ Setting a still image

- ① Press  to select a still image from a list
 - If a still image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select "Yes" and set the still image, the still image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) is saved.
 - When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, currently playing image is played and for cutoff animation and continuous shots, the first image is displayed.

■ Shooting still images with camera

- ① Press  to shoot and save still images. **☛P179**
 - The size of a still image to be shot is set to 96 x 72 automatically.

■ Setting video

- ① Press  to select a video from i-motion folder list
 - You can set videos with only images when the size is set to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144).

■ Recording video with video camera

- ① Press  to shoot and save videos. **☛P184**
 - The size of a video to be recorded is set to QCIF (176 x 144) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Group

: Select a group from "グループ 1 (group 1)" to "グループ 30 (group 30)" and "グループなし (No group)". "グループなし (No group)" is set by default.
Group setting **☛P109**



Phone number:

Enter phone numbers including the area codes and select an icon. Up to 26 digits can be entered.

- Up to five phone numbers per person can be registered. If the first phone number is registered, items to add are displayed.
- Pause (P), Timed pause (T), " + ", " # " and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be entered. **☛P52**

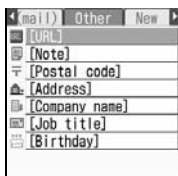


Mail address

: Enter mail addresses and select an icon. Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- You can save up to 5 addresses per person. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.

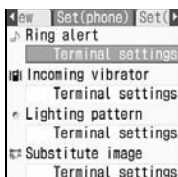
5 Press to display Other screen and enter necessary items.



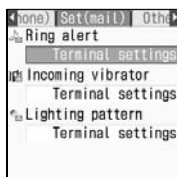
-  **URL** : Enter URL. Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Note** : Enter a note. Up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Postal code** : Enter a postal code. Up to 7 digits can be entered.
-  **Address** : Enter an address. Up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Company name** : Enter a company name. Up to 50 two-byte or 100 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Job title** : Enter job title. Up to 50 two-byte or 100 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Birthday** : Set Set Birthday field "ON" and enter the birthday in Birthday field.

6 Press and switch Set screen (phone/mail) and set necessary items.

- In case “グループなし (No group)” is set by default, all the items are set to “Terminal settings”. If you select Group, the video-phone substitute image is set to “Terminal settings” and the other items are set to “Group settings”.



Set (phone) screen



Set (mail) screen

-  **Ring alert** : Select “Movie ringtone” or “Melody” to select a video or melody.
 - Only videos/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detailed information specified to “available” can be set as ring alert. 
-  **Incoming vibrator**
 - : Select “Yes” to set the vibration for receiving a call or mail.
 - To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select “Terminal Settings”.
-  **Lighting pattern**
 - : Select “Yes” to set the lighting pattern for the multi-indicator.
-  **Substitute image (display only Set (phone) screen)**
 - : Select “Yes” to set a Chara-den displayed during a call.
 - Chara-den 

7 Press .

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

■ Entering the phonebook No. to register

① Enter a number between 0 and 699.

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select "New entry" not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No..

8 Press to save a phonebook entry.

INFORMATION

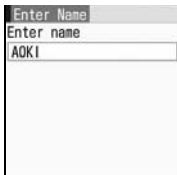
- Setting can be made to hide image for outgoing/incoming calls even when the image is set in Image selection. ➡P142
- Even if the names and the phone numbers are registered, setting can be made to hide names or phone numbers when received a call and to change the name size. ➡P144
- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of Short Message (SMS) even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose phone number is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186, no i-mode mail can be sent to the address.
- When sending/receiving mail, if a mail address of outgoing or incoming mail including "@docomo.ne.jp" does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook exactly, the ring alert set for the phonebook or group is not used. For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp") of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp". For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When a call is made to a party with a video set for Select image, the first image of the video is shown on the display while the call is being dialed. When a call arrives from such a party, the video is played on the display and the ring alert set in the phonebook data sounds while the call is being received.
- If the video/i-motion is set for the ring alert of the phonebook data or the sound for Phone/Video-phone, the video/i-motion set for the ring alert (video and sound) is played regardless of the settings in the image set in Call Image for Phone/Video-phone selection. However, if the video/i-motion set as the ring alert only contains sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers), the image set in Call Image is shown on the display while a call is being received.
- When a substitute image for a video-phone call is set for data of the FOMA terminal phonebook with Secret Attribute set while Privacy Mode ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs) or Secret Mode is ON, the substitute image for receiving a call is according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- When the other party has registered a secret code ➡P122

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

- See entering characters for how to enter characters. ●P512

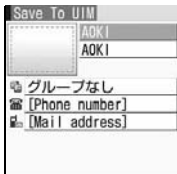
1 Press **on the stand-by display.**

2 Enter the name.



- Kanji, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters. Note that up to 10 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used.
- You must enter a name. If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered into the phonebook

3 Press .



You can confirm the name and reading on Save to UIM screen.

■ Correcting the name

- ① **Select Name field, correct a name and press** .

■ Correcting the reading

- ① **Select Reading field, correct a reading.**

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter reading.
- Up to 12 two-byte or 25 one-byte characters can be entered. Note that up to 12 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.
- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Press **to select items.**

- If settings of each item in the phonebook have already been made, the setting is displayed.



Group

: Select a group from “グループ 1 (group 1)” to “グループ 10 (group 10)” and “グループなし (No group)”. “グループなし (No group)” is set by default. Group settings ●P109



Phone number

: Enter phone numbers including the area codes. You can enter up to 26 digits (Up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Only 1 phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
- Pause (P), “+”, “#” and sub-address delimiter (※) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered. Also, if you enter “+” except for at the first digit of the phone number, digits after “+” cannot be registered. ●P52



Mail address

: Enter mail address. Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only 1 mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

5 Press **to register a phonebook entry.**

INFORMATION

- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp") of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp". For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".
- Even if the names and phone numbers are registered, the setting can be made to hide names or phone numbers when received a call and to change the name size. ●P144
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Group Setting

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

You can change Group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set ring tone by Group.

- In the FOMA terminal settings by group of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be modified.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- Press      to change the UIM phonebook group names.

2 Place the cursor at the group to set and press .



3 Set the group name.



- In case of the UIM phonebook, go to Step 6.
- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that up to 10 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used.

4 Make settings for incoming/outgoing calls and press .

Ring alert, Call Image, Incoming vibrator and Lighting pattern can be set. ●P106, P142

- You cannot set for both "Movie ringtone" in Ring alert and "Select  motion" or "Record video" in Call Image at the same time.

5 Make settings for mail arrival and press .

Ring alert, Incoming vibrator and Lighting pattern for the incoming messages can be set. ●P106

6 Press .

The group name and setting are changed.

Making calls from the phonebook

You can simplify the procedure for making calls by calling the phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook for the party to call.

Procedure for searching phonebook data

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure:

Show all names	Displays in the order of the Japanese syllabary.	P110
Group Search	Searches by group.	P112
Name Search	Searches by name.	P112
Search by call rank*	Searches phonebook data that was used many times to make calls or to receive/send mails.	P113
Ph book No. search*	Searches by phonebook No.	P114
Number search	Searches by a part of phone number.	P114
Column search	Searches by characters assigned to dial keys.	P115
Secrecy search*	Searches the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set.	P124

* Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- In the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, pressing  switches the FOMA terminal phonebook search result screen and the UIM phonebook search result screen.
- You can confirm the registered phonebook data by displaying it. ➡P115
- To search for phonebook entries including the entries set as secret attribute, set as Secret Mode then search the data. ➡P166
- The UIM phonebook search result screen indicates  in front of each entry name.
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), the terminal security code entry is required.

Displaying phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Phonebook data is displayed in the order of the Japanese syllabary (Row a → Row ka → Row sa →... → alphabets and numbers).

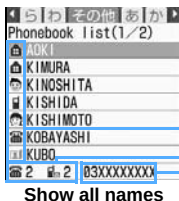
1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to select the line to display.

- If a keypad is pressed instead of Step 2, the first phonebook data in the row to which the keypad is assigned is displayed.

Making calls using the phonebook

1 Press on the stand-by display.



The first time you use the search function, the Name search result screen with the showed all items (phonebook entries with readings starting with あ (a) line characters (a, i, u, e, o)) is displayed. After that, the search screen of the search by the procedure of the last use of phonebook is displayed.

Icon set for first

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in selected entry

First phone number registered in selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted)

2 Place the cursor to other party you make a call to and press .

- When making a video-phone call, place the cursor to the other party you make a video-phone call and press .
- When several phone numbers are saved, select a phone number on the call to screen.

■ Composing i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor to the other party you send a message and press .

- When several mail addresses are saved, select a mail address on Select Address screen.
- i-mode Mail composing/sending procedure P249
- When only the phone number is registered in the selected phonebook data for the other party, pressing  displays the Short Message (SMS) creation screen.
- Pressing  on the Own Number's details screen can create i-mode Mail.

■ Composing a Short Message (SMS)

① Place the cursor to other party you make a call and press for over a second.

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number on Select Address screen.
- Composing and sending Short Message (SMS) P310
- If the phone numbers are registered in the selected phonebook data for the other party, holding down  for over a second from the phonebook list or details screen can create Short Message(s) (SMS). You can operate the same way also from the Own Number's details screen.

■ Displaying sites

① Select the target entry and press to display Other screen.

② Place the cursor to the URL and press .

- You can operate the same way also from the Own Number's details screen.

INFORMATION

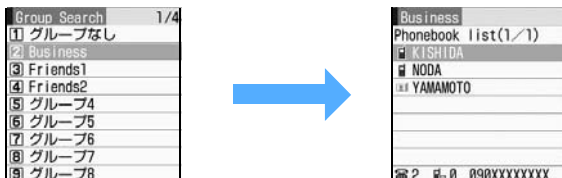
- You can make a call by selecting showing/hiding caller ID and adding the prefix. P56
- You can select a search method by pressing   from the phonebook list.

Searching by Group [Group Search]

Phonebook entries registered without groups are registered under “グループなし (No group)”.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[4 下]** **[1 上]** **[2 下]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select a group to search.



- The entries in the specified group are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blanks
 5. Symbols

INFORMATION

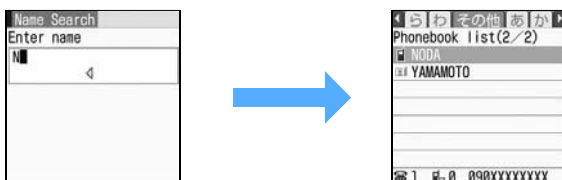
- Select a search method by selecting a group and pressing **[Menu]** **[6 下]** from the phonebook list to switch to the other search method.

Searching by Name [Name Search]

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first characters of the entered name.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[4 下]** **[1 上]** **[3 下]** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a name.



- You can search the name by entering the first part of the name.

INFORMATION

- Select a search method by pressing **[F5]** without any key operation and pressing **[Menu]** **[6 下]** from the phonebook list to switch to the other search method.

In the FOMA terminal phonebook, the total number of calls, date and time of last call, total number of mails, and date and time of last mail are recorded for the individual phonebook data. Based on the information, the phonebook data can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) and by the number of i-mode Mail messages exchanged (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and messages are counted up to 9999. If additional calls or messages sent or received do not update the count when 9999 calls/messages are already counted.

Displaying call frequency ranks

1 Press **[Menu]** **[4]** **[1]** **[4]** **[1]** on the stand-by display.

Ranking: Call	Phonebook list(1/2)
AOKI	10
KISHIMOTO	8
KINOSHITA	6
KISHIDA	3
YAMAMOTO	3
KOBAYASHI	2
KUBO	2

- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Total number of calls

Displaying mail frequency ranks

1 Press **[Menu]** **[4]** **[1]** **[4]** **[2]** on the stand-by display.

Ranking: Mail	Phonebook list(1/2)
KISHIMOTO	10
KUBO	8
YAMAMOTO	6
KISHIDA	6
KINOSHITA	6
AOKI	3
KIMURA	3

- The total number of mails is the number of messages sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Total number of mails

INFORMATION

- When the total number of calls or mails of multiple entries is the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blanks
 5. Symbols
- Set Secret Mode ON to display the frequency ranks of all entries including entries with Secret Attribute set **[P166]**
- Select a search method by searching Call frequency rank or Mail frequency rank and pressing **[Menu]** **[5]** from the phonebook list to switch to the other search method.

Resetting the number of calls/mails

Follow the steps below to reset the stored total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of messages, and date and time of the last message that are recorded for the individual phonebook data from the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook to the status by default.

1 Press **[Reset]** on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the entry to reset and press .

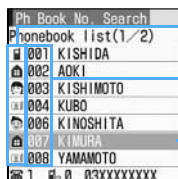
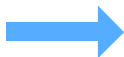
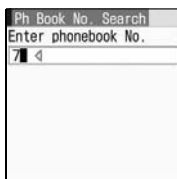
3 Select “YES”.

Searching by the phonebook No. [Ph Book No. Search]

You can enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No..

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the phonebook No..



The icon set for the first phone number

Phonebook No.

The entry with the specified phonebook No. is selected.

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

INFORMATION

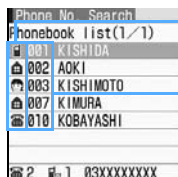
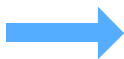
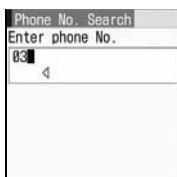
- Select a search method by pressing without any key operation and pressing from the phonebook list to switch to the other search method.

Searching by the phone number [Phone No. Search]

You can enter a part of a phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the part of the phone number.



The icon set for the first phone number

Phonebook No.
(only the FOMA terminal phonebook)

INFORMATION

- When multiple phonebook entries are available with Phone No. search, the phonebook entries in FOMA terminal are displayed in the order of the phonebook No.. Phonebook entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:
 1. Alphabetical order
 2. Numbers
 3. Entries starting with blanks
 4. Symbols
- Select a search method by pressing without any key operation and pressing from the phonebook list to switch to the other search method.

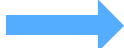
Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key **0-9** to **9-0**.

- Search for the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook).

Example Searching for “佐藤” (Sato)

1 Press **3** **0** **0** on the stand-by display.



The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the “さ (sa)” line are displayed.

- In the search result screen, pressing **0-9** to **9-0**, **#**, *****, **END**, **CALL** switches lines.

Checking the phonebook entries

1 Press **0** **0** on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Select the phonebook data to display details.

- You can display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry by pressing **UP** / **DOWN**.
- When Reject/Accept Call, Caller ID or secret code is set for the phonebook data, **CALL** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No.. **P121**, **P122**, **P166**



Phonebook No.

Name and reading

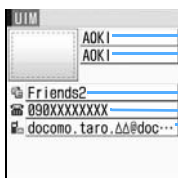
Group name

First phone number (icon, type, phone number) and number of registered phone numbers

First mail address (icon, type, mail address) and number of mail addresses recorded

Images (If a video is set for Select image, the video is played)

Details screen of
FOMA Terminal
Phonebook



Name and reading

Group name

Phone number

Mail address

Details screen of
UIM Phonebook

■ Displaying all registered information for the details screen

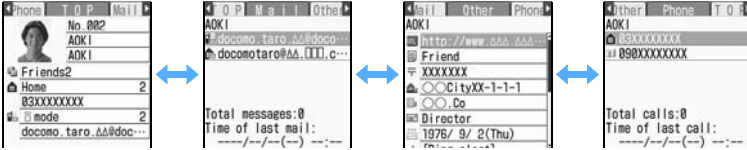
① Press **0** **0**.

- Pressing **0** **0** while all the registered information for an item is displayed returns to the Top screen.

■ Displaying detailed registered information (only the FOMA terminal phonebook)

① Press .

- Each time you press , the screen switches as follows: "Details(Mail)", "Details(Other)" and "Details(Phone)" from "Details(TOP)". Press  to switch the screen in reverse order.



- Mail screen displays the total number of mails sent/received and the date and time of the last mail.
- Phone screen displays the total number of calls made/received and the date and time of the last call.

INFORMATION

- The total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail apply to both incoming and outgoing calls/mail. Note that uncompleted calls/i-mode/emails due to no reply of the other party's call or the radio wave conditions are not counted.

Edit Phonebook

Editing phonebook entries

You can edit or copy the phonebook data registered in the phonebook and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook data. The phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook data is switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the entry to correct and press .

3 Edit phonebook entries.

- For more information on each item, please refer to Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook (P104) or Registering entries into the UIM phonebook (P108).

4 Press .

- If the phonebook of the FOMA terminal phonebook entries are edited, Enter Ph Book No. screen is displayed. Select Overwrite or New entry according to the message displayed after entering the phonebook No.

When Overwrite is selected, even if the number is changed in the phonebook No. input, the previous phonebook entries are discarded. When New entry is selected, the phonebook No. input is displayed again. Enter the number (0 to 699) if needed.

- When phonebook entries in the UIM phonebook are edited, the message selecting registering method appears. Select Overwrite or New entry.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten when registering if “*” is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select “YES” to register New entry.
- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are not edited unless Secret Mode is set.
- If you correct the phonebook data in Secret Mode, Secret Attribute is set to the phonebook data.
 - ➡P123, P166
- When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the first registered phone number or mail address is deleted, the second or after that are moved up and registered.

Copying registered information

You can copy items in phonebook entries from the phonebook search result screen. Copied items can be pasted into the input areas such as in the screen for composing mail or the screen for registering a phonebook entry.

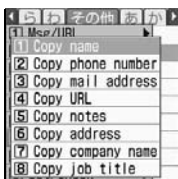
- Copied items remain stored in FOMA terminal until the power is turned OFF. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is ON.
- Only one item can be stored. Copying new items overwrites the retained item.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to be copied and press .

3 Press to .



The data of appropriate items is recorded temporarily.

4 Display the character input screen to paste and paste the characters. ➡P519

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the UIM phonebook list/details screen or Own Number details screen, press  and select “Copy”.
- Copy phone number/mail address copies the mail address registered as the first item. To copy the second or later phone number or mail address, select the phone number or mail address to be copied on the FOMA terminal phonebook or Own Number details screen.

Changing the orders of phone numbers and mail addresses

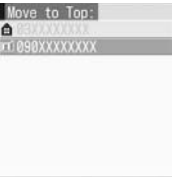
When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the orders of the phone numbers and mail addresses are changed from the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Example Changing the order of phone numbers

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the entry to be switched and press .



• Press     to switch the order of mail addresses.

3 Select a phone number to be registered as the first phone number.

The positions of the selected phone number and first phone number are switched.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press  and select “Set/Check” → “Switch order” → “Phone numbers” or “Mail addresses”.

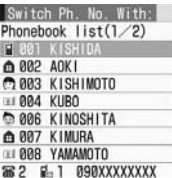
Replacing the phonebook No.

Switch phonebook Nos. of two entries registered in the phonebook from the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to replace and press .



3 Select the entries to switch the phonebook Nos.

The phonebook Nos. are switched.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press  and select “Set/Check” → “Switch order” → “Phonebook Nos.”.

Copying the phonebook

You copy phonebook entries from FOMA terminal to the UIM and from the UIM to FOMA terminal. In addition, one entry of the FOMA terminal phonebook can be copied or all entries of the FOMA terminal phonebook can be backed up to the miniSD memory card. ●P391, P394

- If the entries of the group of the same group name to copy already registered in the target phonebook data to be copied, the data is copied to that group.
- You can only copy the following items.

The items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	A name can be copied up to 10 two-byte or 21 one-byte characters. However, up to 10 characters can be registered when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used.
Reading	Copy reading(up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters). The UIM replaces one-byte katakana characters with two-byte katakana characters.
Phone number	Copies entry's first registered phone number (up to 26 digits. You can enter up to 20 digits depending on the types of the UIM (FOMA card). ●P39) If the timer (T) is registered, only timer (T) is deleted. In the UIM, all icons are replaced with  .
Mail address	Copy entry's first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM, all icons are replaced with  .

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum limit that can be saved in the UIM, the exceeding part is omitted.

The items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	Copied to Name.
Reading	Copied to Reading. Two-byte katakana are replaced with one-byte katakana on FOMA terminal.
Phone number	Copied to Phone number. The icon is set with  .
Mail address	Copied to Mail address. For the icon,  is set.

Example Copying the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

Copying from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

- ① Press     on the stand-by display and search the UIM phonebook ●P110

The search screen or search result screen of the UIM phonebook is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

- If the UIM phonebook was used the last time, pressing  on the stand-by display shows the search screen or search result screen of the UIM phonebook.

2 Press .

3 Select an entry to be copied.



- You can select/deselect all the phonebook data by pressing **[Menu]** (the guide row appears differently from the selection status).

4 Press **[F4]**.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press **[Menu]** and select "IrDA/miniSD/UIM" → "Copy to UIM" or when operating from the details screen of the UIM phonebook, press **[Menu]** and select "Ir DA/Phone mem" → "Copy to phone".

Delete Phonebook

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete one phonebook entry registered in the phonebook.

1 Press **[F4]** on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to be deleted and press **[Menu]** **[F4]**.

3 Select "YES".

One phonebook entry is deleted.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, press **[Menu]** and select "Delete".

Setting functions for phonebook entries

The setting to show/hide caller ID or the video-phone connection speed can be set for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- The function described here cannot be set for the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for the phone number [Caller ID Setting]

Default No setting

Set to show/hide caller ID for each phone number for making a call from the FOMA terminal phonebook search result screen.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

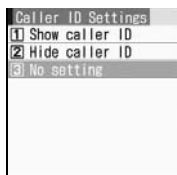
The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to be set and press .

3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Select phone numbers.

5 Press or .



Caller ID Setting is set.

■ Canceling Caller ID Setting.

- 1 Press .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Caller ID settings".
- When "No setting" is set, the terminal operates as in the setting for Caller ID Notification. ●P47
-  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. in the phonebook data details (TOP) screen that Caller ID Setting is set. ●P115
- When you set to show/hide caller ID for each call you are making, that setting takes precedence over Caller ID Setting for each phone number. ●P55

Set the video-phone connection speed for each phone number to make a video-phone call from the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook.

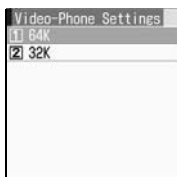
1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to be set and press .

3 Select phone numbers.

4 Press or .



The data rate is set.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "V-phone settings".
- When you specify the connection speed of the video-phone in every call you make, that setting takes precedence over each setting by the phone number. ●P56

Setting Secret Code to mail address [Set Secret Code]

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp) and you set that secret code for that mail address in your phonebook, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook for that phone number.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to be set and press .

3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Select mail address.

5 Enter the secret code of 4 digits.

- To cancel Secret Code Setting, hold down (half)  or  for over a second to delete the secret code.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press  and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secret code".
-  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. in the phonebook Details (TOP) screen that the secret code is set. 
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", replying to mail from the party becomes impossible. Change it to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" and register the secret code.
- You cannot set a secret code for Own Number.

Secret Attribute

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

The phonebook data that you do not want other people to see is registered as the data having a secret attribute that is used only when you input the terminal security code. To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting in Secret Mode.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- Secret Attribute cannot be set ON/OFF when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Set Secret Mode.

2 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when search screen is displayed.

3 Place the cursor at the target to set and press .



Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the selected entry.

Canceling Secret Attribute

- Place the cursor at the phonebook data that Secret Attribute is set and press    .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press **[Menu]** and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secrecy ON". To release Secret Attribute, press **[Menu]** and select "Set/Check" → "Settings" → "Secrecy OFF".
 - If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is ON, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.
 - When Secret Mode is not set, the names of the phonebook data and registered image/video that Secret Attribute has been set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial, received calls list and received messages list and others. In addition, the ring tone or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.
- Name displays ➡P103

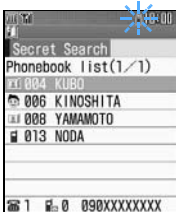
Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set [Secrecy Search]

Follow the steps below to search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode. ➡P166

2 Press **[Menu]** **[4 下]** **[1 上]** **[7 非表示]** on the stand-by display.



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method. ➡P110

INFORMATION

- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed with Secret Mode set, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.
- When the phonebook list is displayed after Secret Search was performed last time, the same secret search result screen as last time is displayed when Secret Mode is set. The phonebook No. search screen is displayed when Secret Mode is canceled.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Follow the steps below to display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Press .

3 Press when checking finishes.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press  and select "Set/Check" → "No. of items".
- When checking from the UIM phonebook, press  from the phonebook list screen or details screen and select "No. of items".
- "No. of items" includes the number of phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

Quick Dial

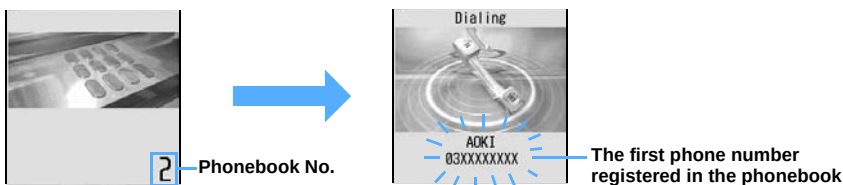
Using simple dial to make calls

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) on the standby display and press .



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. You cannot use Quick Dial if you enter an initial zero (such as  ) in the screen above.
- You can make a video-phone call by entering a phonebook No. and pressing .

INFORMATION

- If no phone number is registered in the phonebook data of entered phonebook No. or no phonebook data is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, when you press  or , the confirmation screen which tells that there is no applicable data is displayed.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing FOMA terminal ring tone	[Sound Setting] 128
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	[Vibrator Setting] 131
Selecting a sound for pressing a keypad	[Keypad Sound] 132
Setting the sound for charging	[Charge Alert] 132
Alarm announcing that call is about to be cut off	[Quality Alarm] 133
Making FOMA terminal silent	[Silent Mode] 133
Customizing Silent Mode	[Customize Silent Mode] 134

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the stand-by display	[Stand-by Display] 135
Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls/mails	[Mail/Call Image] 142
Setting display and key light	[Display Light] 144
Changing display colors	[Color Scheme] 145
Changing the menu design	145
Changing battery level icon	[Battery Icon] 146
Setting the lighting pattern for the multi-indicator	[Illumination Setting] 147
Changing the font size	[Font] 148
Setting clock display	[Clock Display Format] 149

Changing FOMA terminal ring tone

Default Phone: Melody/パターン 1(Pattern 1) Mail: Melody/パターン 1(Pattern 1) Chat mail: Sync msg alert
 Message Request: Melody/パターン 1(Pattern 1) Message Free: Melody/パターン1(Pattern 1)
 On-hold tone: On-hold tone(Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice) Video-phone: Melody/電話・メロディA
 (Phone・Melody A)
 Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープン音 1(open slide sound 1)
 Close slide: Melody/スライド・クローズ音 1(close slide sound 1)

Sets melodies as ring tones or to announce the reception of call, mail, chat mail or message R/F. In addition, set the sound on hold or the sound when opening/closing FOMA terminal. When a video/i-motion is set as a ring tone, a video and/or sound is played for incoming phone call or mail (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

- The settings in this function are reflected to the settings for ring tones in Incoming & Outgoing (phone), Incoming & Outgoing (video-phone), Incoming Msg., Incoming Chat Mail, Incoming Msg. Alert settings, and for on-hold tone in On-hold Tone setting.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 やろ]** **[1 あ]** **[1 あ]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



■ Setting for a ring tone of phone call, video-phone call, mail, chat mail, or Message R/F

① Press **[1 あ]** to **[3 え]**.

- Press **[1 あ]** to **[4 え]** to set ring tone for chat mail.
- When "Melody" is selected, select the ring tone field and select a melody.
Reading the melody list ●P384
- When "Movie ringtone" is selected, select the ring tone field and select the video/i-motion.
Video/i-motion file size able to be set is up to 500 Kbytes.
Reading the video/i-motion list ●P366
- If ring tone for chat mail is set to "Sync msg alert", the setting in the ring tone selection in Incoming Msg. Setting is used.

■ Setting On-hold Tone

① Press **[1 あ]** or **[2 か]**.

- When "Selection tone" is selected, select the ring tone field and select a melody.
Reading the melody list ●P384
- When "On-hold tone" is selected, the message is played while a call is on hold.

■ Setting open slide/close slide sound effects

① Press **[1 あ]** or **[2 か]**.

- When "Melody" is selected, select the ring tone field and select a melody.
Reading the melody list ●P384

3 Press **[OK]**.

The ring tone is set.

3D Sound

The 3D sound function allows to create sounds that is 3-dimensional or special sounds, using the stereo speakers (or the stereo earphones). Using the 3D sound function, very realistic i-appli games and ring alerts and i-motion can be enjoyed.

3D sound will become the most realistic when you face to the speaker of FOMA terminal approximately 20 to 30 cm away (The distance may be different between individuals). Note that 3D sound will become less realistic when FOMA terminal is positioned off the center rightward or leftward or at a distance more or less than 20 to 30 cm from the face. By setting Stereo/3D sound Melody settings to "ON", 3D sound can be replayed with the stereophonic effect from the stereo speakers. It is set to "ON" by default. ◀P386

- The stereophonic effect may be felt differently between individuals. If you felt it uncomfortable, set Stereo/3D sound to "OFF".

INFORMATION

- The sound recorded with Sound Recorder can be set for "Movie ringtone". However, in this case, only the sound is played. The set call image is displayed on the screen.
- During the following operations, there will be no open slide/close slide sound even when opening/closing FOMA terminal.
 - While dialing
 - On Response and Hold
 - While the melody is sounding
 - While talking
 - During playing record message/voice memo
 - During Silent Mode
 - While recording with Sound Recorder
 - While receiving
 - While the alarm is sounding
 - While the video/i-motion is playing
 - While the Answer machine message is playing
 - While shooting video
 - While recording Chara-den
 - While i-appli is activated
- When the video/i-motion with sounds and images is set for the ring alert, the call image is set for "Sync ring alert" and then reset the ring alert to "OFF", Movie ringtone will be replayed but the ring alert volume becomes silent.
- If the video/i-motion with only sound, i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers or Melody is set for the ring alert when the call image is set for "Sync ring alert", the normal image is displayed on the call image.
- If the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert when the video/i-motion with only image or Flash graphics is set for the call image, the normal image is displayed on the call image.
- The video/i-motion that the ring alert for detail information (◀P402) is set to "OFF" cannot be set to "Movie ringtone". In addition to that, the video/i-motion with only image cannot be set to "Movie ringtone".
- When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for ring alert and the animation (other than the normal image) is set for the incoming image, the animation does not move and the first frame of the animation is displayed on the incoming image.
- When the video/i-motion with image and sound is set for ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image in case that there is an incoming call during talking, the first frame of the i-motion is displayed on the incoming image.
- The volume of open slide/close slide sound cannot be changed.
- The melody applicable to 3D sound can be set for open slide/close slide sound effects, but 3D sound becomes unavailable.

Ring tone priority

Ring tones set in multiple functions sound as follows:

- ① Settings the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sounds Setting/Incoming & Outgoing (phone) setting/Incoming & Outgoing (video-phone) setting
- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the tone for incoming voice call becomes the settings on Anonymous Caller settings and the tone for incoming video-phone call, it becomes the settings for Video-phone in Sound Setting and Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing.
 - When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller settings is used in accordance with the above prioritization, if the set sounds or images is deleted, the sounds played or images displayed on Set screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality.
 - When the video/i-motion with sounds and images are set to "Movie ringtone", the ring tone is according to Sounds Setting even if the images are set in the phonebook. However, the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set, the set image is displayed.

Melody list

The following melodies are provided in the "Preinstalled" folder by default.

- ☐'s melodies are compatible with 3D surround-sound.
- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Song Title (In [], is the composer)	Song Title (In [], is the composer)
パターン 1 ～ 5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	保留音・ボイス (On hold tone・Voice)
電話・メロディ A (Phone・Melody A)	ヴァーチャルトレイン (Virtual Train)
電話・メロディ B (Phone・Melody B)	惑星から「火星」(The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]
電話・黒電話 (Phone・Phone retro)	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]
電話・SuperBell"Z (Phone・SuperBell"Z)	森のくまさん [アメリカ民謡] (The Bear [American folk song])
電話・女性ボイス (Phone・Female voice)	凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
メール・メロディ A (Mail・Melody A)	Rhapsody in Blue [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
メール・メロディ B (Mail・Melody B)	四季～冬～ (The Four Seasons "Winter") [VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO]
メール・SuperBell"Z (Mail・SuperBell"Z)	ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
メール・女性ボイス (Mail・Female voice)	SUMMERTIME [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
メール・英語ボイス (Mail・English voice)	ジムノペディ第 1 番 (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFRED LESLIE]
アラーム・アナログ時計 (Clock・analog clock)	ループ&ループ (Loop&Loop) [Masafumi Goto]
アラーム・SuperBell"Z (Alarm・SuperBell"Z)	Heaven Is A Place On Earth
アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm・Female voice)	[NOWELS RICHARD W JR] [SHIPLEY ELLEN]
スライド・オープン音 1 ～ 3 (Slide opening sounds 1 to 3)	
スライド・クローズ音 1 ～ 3 (Slide closing sounds 1 to 3)	

License number: T-0490234

* Composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC home



Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Default all settings are OFF

The reception of voice or video-phone calls, messages chat mail or Message R/F is indicated by vibration.

- If FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. when Vibrator is set, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.
- The settings in this function are reflected to settings for vibrator in Incoming & Outgoing (phone), Incoming & Outgoing (video-phone), Incoming Msg., Incoming Chat Mail and Incoming Msg. Alert settings.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to set.

- If Incoming settings for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to "Sync msg alert", the message that "Chat mail receipt" cannot be set is displayed.

3 Press to .

Pattern A : Vibrates as follows: 0.5 second vibration → 0.5 second pause → 0.5 second vibration → 1.5 seconds pause (repeated).

Pattern B : Vibrates as follows: 1 second vibration → 2 second pause (repeated)

Pattern C : Vibrates as follows: 0.25 second vibration → 0.25 second pause (repeated)

Sync melody : Vibrates along with the melody that is selected in Sound Setting.
 • Vibration may not synchronize depending on melodies even if "Sync melody" is set. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.

OFF : No vibration

- Pressing vibrates at the pattern in the cursor position for approximately 60 seconds. Note that vibration is not activated when "Sync melody" or "OFF" is selected.

4 Press .

Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal vibrates on the incoming call/message and alarm notification. When Vibrator is set, is indicated on the stand-by display.

- When the ring alert volume is set to "Silent", is displayed.

INFORMATION

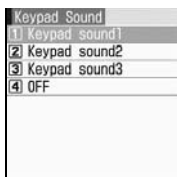
- Even if the vibrator is set, it may not be activated when Flash graphics sounds.
- When schedule alarm/advance alarm start time starts, Vibrator vibrates as set in the "Phone" setting.
- When the vibrator for incoming calls or mails of the phonebook have been set, the settings of phonebook have priority, and then each group setting is given priority.
- Vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.

Selecting a sound for pressing a keypad

Default Keypad sound1

1 Press **Menu** **8** **1** **4** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **4**.



- Press to sound the keypad sound of the cursor position. Note that the keypad sound does not sound when "OFF" is selected.

INFORMATION

- Also the following sounds are not heard when this function is "OFF".
 - Confirmation Sounds when the battery level is indicated
 - End alert for infrared communication and data transfer
- Keypad sound volumes interface with the volume of the caller's voice setting.
- The keypad sound does not sound even if this function is set to other than "OFF".
 - When Silent Mode is set to ON (except for when Keypad Sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than "OFF" in Customize Silent Mode).
 - When an i-appli is running (Press to hear the keypad sound.)
 - When the keylock switch is slid
 - When is pressed to display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, record quick messages or activate the camera and shoot images (other than when this function is operated in the same way as when pressing).
- The keypad sound is not emitted in the following cases if this function is set to "OFF".
 - When pressed the dial keys while on the call (You will hear the touch-tone (DTMF) from the earpiece.)

Charge Alert

Setting the sound for charging

Default ON

Ring alert is set for the start and end of charging.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **1** **9** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** or **2**.

INFORMATION

- During Silent Mode or Driving Mode, the battery charged sound does not sound even if you have set this function to "ON".

Alarm announcing that call is about to be cut off

Default High alarm

When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds before the call is cut off.

- If the signal conditions deteriorate rapidly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
- This function applies only to voice calls.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **7** **4** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** or **2**.

■ When deactivating Quality Alarm

① Press **3**.

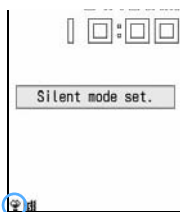
Silent Mode

Making FOMA terminal silent

Default not set

Sounds from FOMA terminal can be disabled in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

1 Hold down **Menu** or **#** for over a second on the stand-by display.



Silent Mode that is specified in the Silent Mode selection is activated and (in Silent Mode) or (in Customize Silent Mode) is displayed on the stand-by display.

- When Key Lock is ON, Silent Mode cannot be set or released by holding down **Menu** for over a second with FOMA terminal closed.

■ When canceling Silent Mode

① Hold down **Menu** or **#** for over a second on the stand-by display during Silent Mode.

Silent Mode is released and or disappears from the stand-by display.

Setting General

The arrival of a call is notified with vibrator by muting all sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, keypad sound and alarm sound. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- The operations of the multi-indicator and the vibrator when Alarm Clock is ON is as set in Alarm Clock.
P428
- When setting the schedules, the multi-indicator operates by a vibrator in Silent Mode according to the schedule settings in Illumination Setting.
- Melodies are not played even if received messages or Message R/F are displayed with "Auto play" set for Message Attachment.
- When starting play-back of video/i-motion or melody, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you want to play it back.

- The shutter sound during shooting with camera is heard also in Silent Mode.

Customize Silent Mode

Customizing Silent Mode

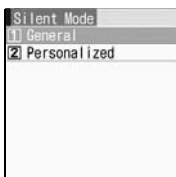
Default General

Which Silent Mode is set when Silent Mode is activated is selected. Settings for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode).

- Settings for Personalized is changed during Silent Mode set.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .



General : Notifies the arrival of a call by muting the sounds that is heard from FOMA terminal and by vibrating FOMA terminal. ●P133

Personalized : Sets Vibrator, volume of a ring tone or keypad freely.

- When press , General Silent Mode is set and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set.

Vibrator : Sets the operation of Vibrator for incoming call or mail.

- When "ON" is set, incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting.
- When "OFF" is set, Vibrator does not operate.

Keypad sound : Sets Keypad Sound.

Ring alert volume : Sets volume of a ring tone or i-appli for incoming call.

Msg. alert volume : Sets volume of a ring tone for incoming mail.

Low Battery Alert : Specifies whether to activate the alarm when the battery becomes low.

Alarm/Schedule sound

- Sets whether an alarm or schedule alarm sounds at the time set in Alarm Clock or Schedule.
- When "ON" is set, Alarm Clock applies to the operation of the alarm. The setting of "Ring alert volume" in Customize Silent Mode applies to Schedule alarm volume.

Sensitize microphone

- Adjusts the microphone sensitivity.

4 Press .

Personalized is set.

Changing the stand-by display

The image displayed on the stand-by display be changed with another image, i-motion, Chara-den or calendar. The i-appli stand-by display, clock or various information display (custom stand-by display) can be set.

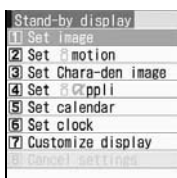
- Depending on an image, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli setting for the stand-by display may be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used in downloading the program.
- During "All lock" is ON, PIM Lock is ON (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set to the stand-by display), the set for the stand-by display screen is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed. The set stand-by image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the image in the "Preinstalled" folder is set, the set stand-by display is not changed even when PIM Lock is ON.
- Setting clock display ➡ P149

Setting image/video/i-motion/Chara-den as a stand-by display

The image/i-motion/Chara-den saved from a i-mode site or mail or still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the stand-by display. Animations, Create animation and continuous shots can be also set.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .



3 Select a folder to select a image/video/i-motion/Chara-den to be set as the stand-by display.

■ Setting action of Chara-den set as the stand-by display

- ① Place the cursor at the Chara-den in the Chara-den list screen and press .
- ② Select an action type from Stand-by field and select action.
 - Set for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
 - When "Direct input" is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action. ➡ P378
 - When "OFF" is set, the action of Chara-den is played according to the action setting of the higher priority item. If the actions of all items are set to "OFF", the action preset for Chara-den is played repeatedly.
- ③ Select an interval (1 to 5 seconds) to repeat the action from Interval field.
 - When "OFF" is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only the first time.
- ④ Press .

4 Select "YES".

Image/video/i-motion/Chara-den is set as the stand-by display.

- When you set i-motion as the stand-by display, the first image is displayed.
- If the selected image or video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, a confirmation screen asking whether to display at the same magnification or zoom is displayed. Select "YES (Same size)" to maintain the image size or select "YES (Large size)" to enlarge the size of the screen image on the stand-by display.
- If the i-α ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-α ppli stand-by display. If "YES" is selected, the selected image or video/i-motion and Chara-den is set as the stand-by display after the i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

- When the action is set for multiple items for Chara-den, the action of Chara-den is played according to the following prioritization.

① Missed calls or unread messages

② Normal

- When ① and ② are set at the same time and there are both missed calls and unread messages, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns. When there are not both missed calls and unread messages, the normal action is played.

To play the i-motion or animation set as the stand-by display

- The following operations are available for i-motion.

 /open FOMA terminal: Play

 /close FOMA terminal/: Stop

: Adjust volume

- The following operations are available for animations, Create animation continuous shots or Flash graphics.

//open FOMA terminal/return to the stand-by display/turn the power on: Play

: Pause/replay

: Stop/play from the beginning

Close FOMA terminal: Stop

- The following operations are available for Chara-den.

/open FOMA terminal: Play (When the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval).

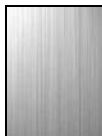
/close FOMA terminal/: Stop

Stand-by display screen size images/videos/Chara-den preinstalled by default

Image



(Default)



3 kinds of animations are displayed in random order.



INFORMATION

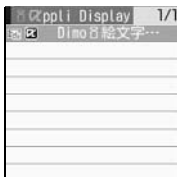
- Animation is played up to 16 times repeatedly.
- When Flash graphics or Chara-den are set as the stand-by display, playing is brought to a pause after a certain period of time. The melody for Flash graphics set on the stand-by display is not played.
- If zoom display is set for animation, the display may be distorted.
- You cannot set the contents which restrictions for the number of replay or playback period are set for.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions of subtitle links in video/i-motion set in the stand-by display cannot be available from the stand-by display.
- When i-motion or Chara-den is set for the stand-by display, "Small" is set for the clock size and "Top" is set for the clock layout.

Setting the i-αppli stand-by display

Used to set the software which supports the i-αppli stand-by display to the i-αppli stand-by display.

- If  is pressed during the i-αppli stand-by display, the software set as the i-αppli stand-by display is activated and the operation and the settings for the software become available.
- Multiple software cannot be set on the i-αppli stand-by display.
- The Dimo  絵文字♥メール (Pictogram Mail) provided at manufacture can be set as the i-αppli stand-by display:

1 Press on the stand-by display.



A list of software compatible with the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

2 Select software and select "YES".

The i-αppli stand-by display is set and  or  is indicated on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- When you set software that performs communication by connecting to the network, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc. Some software and settings communicate automatically.
- When the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled, the stand-by display is set back to the previous one.
- When Privacy Mode is activated ("Authorized access" is set for i-αppli) after the i-αppli stand-by display is set, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled and the stand-by image which has been set before is displayed. If Privacy Mode is turned OFF, the i-αppli stand-by display will reappear.
- In PIM Lock ON, the i-αppli stand-by display is not displayed but is displayed a stand-by display set previously. Note that the stand-by display set by default is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set.
- When i-αppli is set for the stand-by display, "Small" is set for the clock display and "Top" is set for the clock layout.

Setting the calendar on the stand-by display

- If the date and time have not been set, the calendar is not displayed on the stand-by display.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **1** **5** on the stand-by display.

2 Select “YES”.

- If the i-α ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-α ppli stand-by display. If “YES” is selected, the calendar is set as the stand-by display after the i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

- As for the clock display in case the calendar is set for the stand-by display, “Small” is set for the clock size and “Top” is set for the clock layout.
- A image and calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Create animation, continuous shot or Flash graphic is set, the calendar is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Customizing the stand-by display

The stand-by display is divided into several areas to display unread messages, the latest information as missed calls, notes, calendar and schedule for each area.

- For dividing areas, the following 7 patterns can be selected:



Pattern 1



Pattern 2



Pattern 3



Pattern 4



Pattern 5



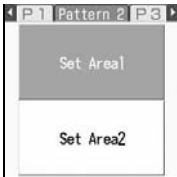
Pattern 6



Pattern 7

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **1** **7** on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to switch patterns and select an area.



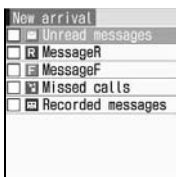
3 Press **1** **5** to **5** **5**.



Information to be displayed on the selected area is set.

- If multiple areas have been selected, select areas to be set and repeat Step 3
- The calendar cannot be set for a smaller area of half the size of the screen (Set Area1 of Pattern 3, etc.)

■ When New arrival is set



- ① Press .
- ② Select information to display.
- ③ Press .

■ When Notes is set

- ① Press .
- A list of recorded notes is displayed.
- ② Select a note to display.
 - Press to display, the content of the note. Press or to return to the note list.

4 Press and select "YES".

- If the i-appli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-appli stand-by display. If "YES" is selected, the custom stand-by display is set after the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

- When the set area that the content should be displayed overlaps with the clock display position on the stand-by display, "Small" is set for the clock size and "Top" is set for the clock layout.

Checking information on the custom stand-by display

1 Press on the stand-by display.



The top area is displayed with a red cursor frame.

2 Select an area.

INFORMATION

- If you set an animation, Create animation, continuous shots or Flash graphic to Image Setting, the information is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Displayed information

The custom stand-by display and various information appear as follows.

- The numbers of information entries and lines displayed depending on the area size.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.

New arrival



Selected items of Unread messages, Message R, Message F, Missed calls and Recorded messages are listed starting with the most recent item. If an area is selected, the list screen of the first item is displayed.

Unread messages : The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. When displayed at the beginning, select an area to display the Inbox folder list.

MessageR/ **MessageF** : The reception date and time and the first part of title are displayed. When selected the area displayed at the beginning, Message R/F list is displayed.

Missed calls : The date and time of incoming calls and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. If the area is selected that is displayed at the beginning, the received calls list is displayed.

Recorded messages : The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or name is displayed when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. When selected the area that is displayed at the beginning, the Record message list is displayed.

Notes



The contents recorded in the note is displayed in the beginning. Select an area to display the details of a note.

Schedule



Scheduled entries for the day that would be started later are displayed starting with the one of the earliest date and time. Select an area to display the details of the first schedule.

- Icon, date and time and the beginning of the schedule are displayed.
- The date-straddled long-term schedule including the current day is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed. If the start time has exceeded the current time, it is displayed as "start date from" instead of the icon, and is listed after today's items (in order of start time).
- If any Schedule set for all day is for the current day, "AllDay" is displayed instead of the start time.

Calendar



The current calendar is displayed. Select an area to display the schedule calendar.

INFORMATION

- If you register the current schedule and date-straddled long-term schedule in the same day, the long-term schedule will appear on the custom stand-by display. However, if the current schedule is set to All day or it does not reach the start time of the current schedule, both schedules are displayed on the custom stand-by display.
- When Secret Mode is not set, schedules with Secret Attribute set are not displayed on the custom stand-by display. If Secret Mode is not set, any incoming call or any message recording from a party with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook appears as a phone number without name indication on New arrival area with Missed calls or Recorded messages set.
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), all unread messages, missed calls, recorded messages or scheduled are not displayed on the area of New arrival or schedule.
- When Privacy Mode is ON ("Hide secret fldrs" is set for Mail), Unread messages other than the folders with Privacy set to "ON" in Folder settings are displayed.
- No empty area displays area and background.
- When PIM Lock is activated, the contents of the notes and the schedule cannot be displayed and instead, the message that they are PIM locked is displayed on the note and schedule. In addition, only missed calls after PIM Lock is set are displayed on the area of New arrival.

Canceling settings other than still image settings

i-motion, Chara-den, the i-appli stand-by display, calendar on the stand-by display and the custom stand-by display settings can be canceled to display a image on the stand-by display.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 ㅍ ㅊ ㅊ ㅊ]** **[2 ㅍ ㅊ ㅊ ㅊ]** **[1 ㅍ ㅊ ㅊ ㅊ]** **[8 ㅍ ㅊ ㅊ ㅊ]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select "Yes".

- If a image was previously set before that image is canceled. Otherwise, the default image is displayed as the standby display after you cancel the setting.

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls/mails

Set the images to be displayed for incoming and outgoing calls or mails and for checking i-mode Message.

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing calls [Call Image]

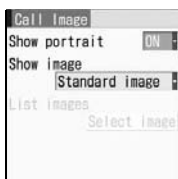
Default Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image

Set the images to be displayed for incoming and outgoing voice calls. In addition, you can set to display the other party's image registered in the phonebook data when making or receiving the call.

- This function settings are reflected to each setting for Show portrait and Show image in Call Image.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **2** **1** on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



Show portrait : Sets whether to display the image registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook for incoming/outgoing voice calls or video-phone calls.

- If i-motion is registered as the image, the first image of the i-motion is displayed for outgoing calls/mails. The i-motion is displayed as a Movie ringtone for incoming calls/mails.
- It is not reflected to the setting for the call image in Group Setting of the phonebook.

Show image : Sets the image to be displayed when making or receiving a call with a party not saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook or Show portrait is set to "OFF".

- When "Standard image" is selected, the default image is set.
- When you select "Select image" for Show image, select "Select image" for List images to select an image.
- When you select "i-motion", select "Select image" to select a video/i-motion.

3 Press **OK**.

INFORMATION

- Setting Create animation or continuous shots for "Select image" displays the first segment.
- If the call image is reset to the video/i-motion with only image or Flash graphics from the JPEG still image or GIF still image when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for the ring alert, the ring alert becomes the normal melody (pattern1).
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set to "Movie ringtone" in Sound Setting or Incoming & Outgoing, "Sync ring alert" is set for "Show image" and "Image list" cannot be selected. At this time, the outgoing image becomes the standard image and the incoming image becomes the image set for the video/i-motion.
- The video/i-motion that the incoming image for detail information (P402) is set to "OFF" cannot be set for the call image. In addition the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set to the call image.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for ring alert and the animation (other than the normal image) is set for the incoming image, the animation does not move and the first frame of the animation is displayed on the incoming image.
- When the video/i-motion with image and sound is set for ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image in case that there is an incoming call during talking, the first frame of the i-motion is displayed on the incoming image.
- If the call image is reset to the other items from "Sync ring alert", the ring alert becomes the normal melody (pattern1).

Call image priority

The call images set in multiple functions are displayed in the following order:

- ① FOMA terminal phonebook settings*
 - ② FOMA terminal phonebook settings by the groups
 - ③ Mail/Call Image/Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing settings
 - * When Show portrait is "ON" in Mail/Call Image, the setting is available.
- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for the voice call is according to Anonymous Caller and the incoming image for the video-phone call is according to Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing.
 - When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller is used in accordance with the above prioritization, if the set sounds or images is deleted, the sounds played or images displayed on Set screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality.

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing mails and inquiries [Outgoing & Incoming Msg. Image/Retrieving Image]

Default Show image: Standard image

- You cannot set the Flash graphics for the image displayed during Message Retrieval.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to .

- Press  to set an image to be displayed when the message is sent.
- Press  to set an image to be displayed when receiving the incoming message.
- Press  to set an image to be displayed during Message Retrieval.

3 Select the image and register.

- The procedures that follow are the same as at "Show image" in "Call image". P142

INFORMATION

- If the image for the mail send screen has been changed, the images set for sending i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS) is displayed.
- If the image for Incoming Mail and Message Retrieval has been changed, images set for receiving i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) and Message R/F and Check Messages are displayed.

Displaying the other party's name and the phone number when received the call [Receive Display]

Default Phone number: Display Name: Standard

Set if display the name and phone number when a call is received. In addition, the character sizes for the name can be also set.

- Name displays ●P103

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Phone number : Set if display the phone number when a call is received.

Name : Set if display the name or not and the size of characters to be displayed when a call is received.

3 Press .

Display Light

Setting display and key light

Default Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key
Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Lighting method : Sets whether to turn the lighting ON or OFF.

- Setting "Turn light ON" maintains lighting for the time set in Turn light on.
- Setting "Turn light OFF" does not turn the lighting ON. Turn light on, Range and Brightness cannot be set.

Turn light on : Sets the lighting time.

Range : Sets whether to light only the display or both the display and keys.

- When the range is set as "Display + key", the keys that will be lit are as follows: , , , to , , .

Brightness : Sets the brightness of the display when lights.

AC adapter connected

: Sets whether to light the display when connecting to the AC adapter (desktop holder) or to the DC adapter (option).

- Setting "Terminal settings" lights the display according to the above setting.
- Setting "Always on" lights the display at "High".

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- If you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for approximately 90 seconds while Turn light on in Display Light is set to other than “Always”, the display light is turned OFF automatically (except for shooting with camera). However, the display light is turned ON again if there is any key operation or incoming call.
- Even when Lighting method is set as “Turn light ON”, the display or keys do not light by pressing the keys with FOMA terminal closed while Key Lock is ON. However, the display light is turned ON if you press .

Color Scheme

Changing display colors

Default DiamondBlue

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to .

Color scheme	1/3
1 DiamondBlue	
2 PrimaryBlack	
3 WhiteSmoke	
4 PrussianBlue	
5 Africa	
6 GreenIndigo	
7 PercianRed	
8 JungleGreen	
9 ChromeGreen	

- Press  to switch pages.
- Press  to place the cursor at a type of the color, so the screen is displayed in the color.

INFORMATION

- Changing Color Scheme does not affect the color of the web site.

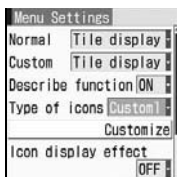
Changing the menu design

Two patterns of original menu can be created by changing the icons or background image of the menu screen.

- The largest size of an icon and background image that can be set on an original menu are up to 96 x 96 and 240 x 240, respectively. An image that exceeds the largest size is scaled down to be set.

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select “Custom1” or “Custom2” in Type of icons field to select “Customize”.



3 Select a function to change icons and select an image from the image folder list.

- Menu icons of other functions are also set in the same way.

■ When a menu icon is canceled

- ① Place the cursor at the icon to be canceled to press **[Menu]** **[1 F1]** and select “Yes”.
 - To cancel all, press **[Menu]** **[2 F2]** and select “Yes”.

4 Press **[Ⓜ]** to select a background image for the menu screen from the image folder list.

■ When a background is canceled

- ① Press **[Menu]** **[4 F4]** and select “Yes”.

5 Press **[Ⓚ]** for 2 times.

INFORMATION

- Create animations, Flash graphics or images in the item folder cannot be set. Also, if the image in GIF format is set, the first frame is displayed.
- “Custom1” and “Custom2” of Type of icons cannot be changed while PIM Lock is ON.

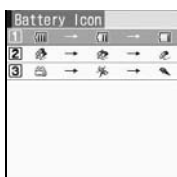
Battery Icon

Changing battery level icon

Default → →

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 700]** **[2 F2]** **[4 F4]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[1 F1]** to **[3 F3]**.



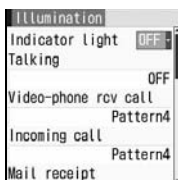
Setting the lighting pattern for the multi-indicator

Default Indicator light: OFF Talking: OFF Video-phone rcv call: Pattern4 Incoming call: Pattern4
 Mail receipt: Pattern8 Message R receipt: Pattern8 Message F receipt: Pattern8
 Chat mail receipt: Pattern8 Alarm clock: Pattern11 Schedule: Pattern11
 Play melody: Sync melody Open slide: Pattern14 Close slide: Pattern15

Set whether to light the multi-indicator or not when there are the latest information such as missed calls or unread messages. It also sets the lighting pattern for the multi-indicator while on the call or receiving the call/message, playing back the melody or opening/closing FOMA terminal.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 $\frac{P}{TALK}$]** **[2 $\frac{P}{MSG}$]** **[6 $\frac{L}{LIGHT}$]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select Indicator light field and press **[1 $\frac{P}{ON}$]** or **[2 $\frac{P}{OFF}$]**.



- If "ON" is set, the multi-indicator blinks two times every about 13 seconds when there is a missed call (Phone/Video-phone/Answer Machine) or once every about 10 seconds when there is unread information (Mail/Chat Mail/Short Message (SMS)/Message R/F). If the new arrival information is confirmed, the multi-indicator stops to blink.
- If "OFF" is set, the multi-indicator does not blink for the new arrival information.

3 Select the item to be set and press **[1 $\frac{P}{ON}$]** to **[9 $\frac{P}{MODE}$]**.

- "Sync melody" cannot be set during "Talking".
- Press **[F5]** to switch pages.
- Press **[F4]** to make the multi-indicator to blink by the pattern at the cursor position. Note that the multi-indicator does not blink when "Sync melody" or "OFF" is selected.
- If Incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to "Sync msg alert", the message that "Chat mail receipt" cannot be set is displayed.

4 Press **[OK]**.

INFORMATION

- If there are multiple newly-arrived information, the multi-indicator blinks in the following priority when the new arrival notification is set to "ON".
 - ① Missed calls (Phone/Video-phone/Answer Machine)
 - ② Unread Messages (Mail/Chat Mail/Short Messages(SMS)/Message R/F)
- If there have been no newly-arrived information for about 10 hours (about 13 hours for only missed calls) since there was the first newly-arrived information or marks (**[9 $\frac{P}{MODE}$]** **[1 $\frac{P}{ON}$]**) that indicate the number of newly-arrived information on the display are deleted, the multi-indicator stops to blink even when the information are not confirmed while the new arrival notification is set to "ON".
- Even if "Sync melody" is set for Lighting pattern, it may not be synchronized depending on the melodies.
- If "Movie ringtone" or "OFF" has been set as ring tones, the multi-indicator blinks by the default settings even when the blinking pattern is set to "Sync melody".

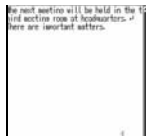
• Phone	• Mail	• Chat mail	• Message Request
• Message Free	• Video-phone	• Open slide	• Close slide
- When a call or mail is received from a party recorded in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the operation depends on the FOMA terminal phonebook setting.

Changing the font size

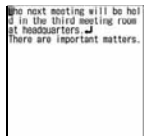
Default Medium (Standard)

The character size can be changed for entering characters by full-screen entry.

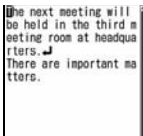
- You can select a character size from 5 types.



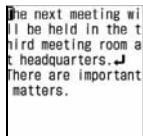
Minimum: 12 dots



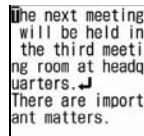
Small: 16 dots



Standard: 20 dots



Large: 24 dots



Maximum: 28 dots

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **7** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** **あ** to **5** **な**.



Font is set.

- Press **OK** to display the example in the character size at the cursor position.

INFORMATION

- The font size of mail message cannot be changed.
- The character size is changed for displaying a site screen and Message R/F. However, if a character is set to "Minimum", the "Small" character size is set. If set to "Maximum", the "Large" character size is set.
- The character size is not changed for in-line entry.

Setting clock display

Default Clock size: Large Time format: 24 hour Clock design: Type1
Clock layout: Up Day: Terminal settings

Whether to display the clock or the size, design and layout of the clock display on the stand-by display can be set. The display format (24 hour/12 hour) and the language used to display the day of the week can be also set.



When displaying the clock of Type 2 by 24 hour format in a large size at the middle



When displaying the clock of Type 3 by 12 hour format in a small size at the bottom



No clock

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Clock size : Sets whether to display the clock. Also, sets the size of the clock to be displayed.

Time format : Specifies 12 hour or 24 hour format to display clock.

Clock design : Sets the design of the clock.

Clock layout : Sets the location to display the clock.

Day : Sets whether to use Japanese or English to display the day of week.

- If "Terminal settings" is set, the display depends on the Select Language setting.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- Press on the stand-by display to set the clock display in Stand-by Display.
- When the display areas for the following cases are overlapped with the clock, the clock is displayed in a small size on the upper part, regardless of settings in this function:
 - When a video/i-motion, Chara-den or calendar is set on the stand-by display
 - When the i-appli stand-by display is displayed
 - When the set area that the content should be displayed overlaps with the clock display position on the custom stand-by display

Safety settings

Security code

Security code available with FOMA terminal	152
Changing terminal security code	[Change Security Code] 153
Setting PIN code	154
Unblocking PIN lock	156

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	157
Preventing unauthorized use	[All Lock] 158
Preventing making/receiving calls	[Self Mode] 159
Preventing display of phonebook or Scheduler	[PIM Lock] 160
Prohibiting keypad dial	[Keypad Dial Lock] 161
Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail	[Privacy Mode Setting] 161
Preventing inadvertent use of keys	[Key Lock] 163
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access	[Remote Lock] 164

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving

Displaying the data Secret Attribute has been set	[Secret Mode] 166
Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	[Reject/Accept Call] 166
Setting the operations for incoming calls that do not notify the phone number	[Anonymous Caller] 168
Setting not to answer a call from the party which is not registered in the phonebook	[Ring Alert Delay] 169
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook	[Reject Non-Reg. Caller] 170

Other “Safety settings”

Other “Safety settings”	171

Security code available with FOMA terminal

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require entry of security codes. There are Network security code for use in network services, password for i-mode other than the terminal security code for various functions. Use FOMA terminal by using the security codes suitably depending on the purpose.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the terminal security code, you need to bring FOMA terminal*, the UIM in use and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

Note: In case the terminal is not purchased by the subscriber, it may not be accepted.

Network security code

Network security code is the 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to the FOMA for usage of network services and various procedures for DoCoMo e-sites.

- If you forgot the Network security code, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. DoCoMo Shops make subscription after confirming the subscriber's identification based on a certificate such as the driver's license. If you have "User ID" and "Password", you can make subscription by accessing to the DoCoMo e-sites from the personal computer.

Note: Please refer to the back of this manual for "DoCoMo e-site".

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM (FOMA card). The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned ON to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code used when using or requesting the issue of a user certificate or resetting total call cost.

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store or delete sites in My Menu, apply to and cancel message service or i-mode pay sites. The default i-mode password is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice (In addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).

- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

INFORMATION

- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code and PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the completion of the application for subscription. Be sure to remember the set terminal security code.
- Be sure to avoid recognizable numbers such as the last 4 digits for the phone number and not to be revealed the security codes or password by others easily.

Change Security Code

Changing terminal security code

Default 0000

- The terminal security code entered is masked with "＊".

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 4P TUV]** **[3 2 DEF]** **[5 5 JKL]** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code (from 4 to 8 digits).

- Enter the current terminal security code.
- If the current terminal security code was not correctly entered, a confirmation screen of authentication failure is displayed. Press **[END]** and enter the current terminal security code again.

3 Enter a new terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) into the New security code field.

4 Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3 into the New security code - check field.

5 Press **[OK]**.

The terminal security code is changed.

Setting PIN code

- The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be changed.
- The PIN1/PIN2 code entered is masked with “*”.

Setting to require entry of PIN1 code when turning the power ON [PIN Code ON/OFF]

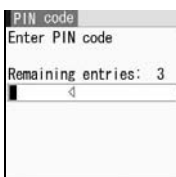
Subscribed to FOMA OFF

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- Press  to make setting not to require entry of PIN1 code when FOMA terminal is powered ON.

3 Enter the PIN1 code.



PIN1 Code ON is set.

- The PIN1 code is set to “0000” when subscribed.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set “ON”

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the stand-by display appears.

- Making/receiving calls and operating the communication functions are unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  to display the PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) entry screen. ➡P156

INFORMATION

- The settings of the PIN1 and PIN2 codes and PIN1 code ON/OFF are stored in the UIM. When using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the settings of the PIN1 and PIN2 code and PIN1 code ON/OFF that you set previously can be used likewise. If no changes have been made to the PIN1 and PIN2 codes, your codes are “0000”.
- If Alarm Auto Power ON has been set to “ON”, the alarm alert sounds before displaying PIN1 code entry screen when the power is turned ON at the set time for the alarm and the schedule alarm. When pressing  to end the alarm sound, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed.

At this time, the alarm sounds by the preinstalled melody (“アラーム・アナログ時計” (Alarm・analog clock) is for Alarm Clock, “アラーム・女性ボイス” (Alarm・Female voice) is for the schedule alarm) even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm.

- To change the PIN1 code, set the PIN1 code ON/OFF Setting to "ON".

1 Press and then press or on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Enter the current PIN1/PIN2 code.

Change PIN code
Enter PIN code
Remaining entries: 3
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

4 Select the New PIN/PIN2 code field, enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code.

5 Select the New PIN/PIN2 code - check field, enter the same PIN1/PIN2 code in Step 4.

6 Press .

The PIN1/PIN2 code is changed.

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a confirmation screen of authentication failure is displayed. Press and enter the current PIN1/PIN2 code again. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press to display the PUK entry screen. ➡P156

INFORMATION

- Even if the wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the FOMA terminal lock is activated, sending/receiving signals such as making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the FOMA terminal lock is activated and the operations involving sending and receiving signals become not available.

Unblocking PIN lock

If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen, the PIN code is automatically locked. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

- The user is notified of the PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) at the time of purchase.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or PIN Lock is blocked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK or PIN1/PIN2 code entered is masked with “*”.

Example Unblocking PIN1 code's lock

1 Press  on the confirmation screen of the PUK.

2 Enter the PUK (8 digits).

PUK
Enter PUK
Remaining entries: 10
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select New PIN code field, enter the new PIN code.

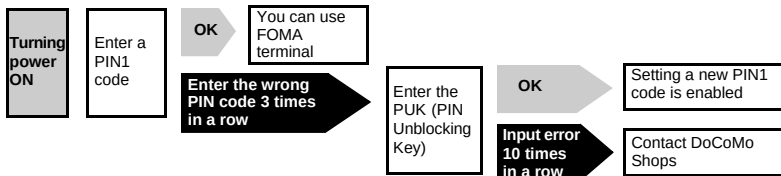
4 Select New PIN code - check field, enter the same PIN code in Step 3.

5 Press .

After PIN Lock is cancelled, a new PIN1 code is set.

INFORMATION

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, FOMA terminal is automatically locked.



Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent FOMA terminal from being used by others or to keep your private information and phonebook entries confidential. You can choose the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The setting of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned OFF.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119, 118) even when the lock functions are set.

Item	Description	Page
All lock	This function disables menu operations to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.	P158
Self mode	This function disables communication functions such as making/receiving of calls, sending/receiving of mail and infrared communication.	P159
PIM lock	This function disables displaying and editing of private information functions such as phonebook entries, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information. The name of the other party registered in the phonebook, whom calling may be made to or received from or whose mail may be received, will not be displayed while PIM Lock is ON.	P160
Keypad dial lock	This function disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P161
Privacy Mode Settings	If FOMA terminal is left unoperated for a certain period of time, the phonebook/Received calls list, mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule or i-a.ppli display automatically becomes not available, which prevents unauthorized viewing by any third party.	P161
Key lock	This function disables the key functions when FOMA terminal is closed to prevent inadvertent operations.	P163
Remote lock	Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others is avoided by setting All Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P164
Secret mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or the schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set to ON and it is not displayed in the normal operation.	P166

Preventing unauthorized use

Default not set

When All Lock is set, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by the third parties.

Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is ON.

To make emergency calls (110,119 and 118) when All Lock is ON, enter the emergency call number in the security code field in the terminal security code entry screen and press .

The emergency call number is displayed as “*”.

- When All Lock is set, the set stand-by display is canceled and the default image is displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the set stand-by image reappears.

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.



■ When canceling All Lock

- ① Enter the terminal security code when All Lock is ON.

INFORMATION

- Calls received during All Lock are rejected and the callers hear the busy tone. They are recorded in the received call list. When All Lock is canceled, the icon that indicates the numbers of the missed calls () is displayed on the stand-by display.
- i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS) and Message R/F are also received when All Lock is ON, but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail and the reception result screen are not displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.
- If the wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling Auto Lock, the power is automatically turned OFF.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the terminal security code, you need to bring FOMA terminal*, the UIM in use and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

Note: In case the terminal is not purchased by the subscriber, it may not be accepted.

Preventing making/receiving calls

Default OFF

All functions that require communications such as making or receiving voice calls or video-phone calls or sending or receiving mails are disabled when Self Mode is ON. Infrared data communications and infrared remote control are also disabled.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Select “Yes”.

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

■ When canceling Self Mode

① **Hold down  for over a second when Self Mode is ON.**

Self Mode is canceled and  disappears from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- If you receive a call when Self Mode is ON, an announcement is played for the caller that you are out of range or your terminal is turned OFF. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode mail or Message R/F sent when Self Mode is set are stored at the i-mode center and Short Message (SMS) are stored at SMS center. When you wish to receive messages, perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.
- Self Mode cannot be set during a call or i-mode.
- Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.

Preventing display of phonebook or Scheduler

Default OFF

When PIM Lock is set, the following functions are locked to prevent the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to "ON".
- When PIM Lock is ON, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. A call or the redial data after setting or call from the received call history stored after setting can be made.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press .

PIM lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

■ Canceling PIM Lock

① Press .

PIM Lock is canceled and disappears from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- When the data for PIM Lock has been set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the default setting becomes active while PIM Lock is activated. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even if PIM is locked.
- When PIM Lock is set, the alert tone or vibrator does not notify that the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.
- You cannot set/cancel PIM Lock from an external device with AT commands.

When PIM Lock is ON

- The following functions and some settings become unavailable.

• Mail/Chat mail/Short Message (SMS)/Message R/F *	• iMenu
• Bookmark	• Last visited URL
• Internet	• Phonebook
• Check i-mode Message	• i-motion
• Ans. Machine/Voice Memo	• Movie camera
• Melody	• Scheduler
• Chara-den	• Own number
• Bar code reader	
• Alarm clock	
• Data transfer in infrared communication	
• Screen Memo	
• Upgrading software	
• Image	
• Camera	
• miniSD card	
• Software Update	

* Message is received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail or the reception result screen is not displayed.

- If the menu is displayed, function menus not available are grayed-out or is indicated not to select them.
- The caller's name is not displayed on the screen even if a call is received from a caller registered in the phonebook. is not displayed on the stand-by display even when Answer Machine is set because Answer machine does not operate. An icon for a recorded message, which has not been played, is also not displayed.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Default OFF

Set to disable making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad Dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook and redials.
- When Keypad Dial Lock is ON, the previous redial data and received calls are deleted. The numbers dialed from the phonebook entries after the setting is made are stored under redials.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press .

Keypad Dial Lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

■ Canceling Keypad Dial Lock

① Press .

Keypad Dial Lock is canceled and disappears from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Keypad Dial Lock of an external device cannot be set or canceled using AT commands.

When Keypad Dial Lock is ON

- The following operations cannot be performed:
 - Making calls from Received Calls
 - Editing, registering, deleting the phonebook
 - Editing and resetting Own Number
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
 - Phonebook data transfer to/from external devices
 - Sending Short Messages (SMS)/i-mode Mail (but mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party saved in the phonebook can be replied.)
 - Reading mail template
 - Using network service by the dial up operation

Privacy Mode Setting

Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail

Sets not to use the FOMA terminal phonebook, redials, Received Calls, mail, My picture, i-motion, i-appli or schedule. Privacy Mode is manually started or specified to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

Setting Privacy Mode operation

Default Phonebook & Logs: Show all Mail: Show all My picture: Show all i-motion: Show all
Schedule: Show all i-appli: Show all Auto start: OFF

Set whether to perform the authentication (to enter the terminal security code) when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is active. You can also automatically activate Privacy Mode.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select each item to set.

Phonebook & Logs : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before displaying the phonebook, redials, Received Calls, recorded messages, Voice Memos when Privacy Mode is ON.

Mail : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before displaying the mail messages when Privacy Mode is ON.

• Setting "Hide secret fldrs" hides the folders that Privacy in Folder Setting has been set to "ON". ●P283

My Picture : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before using My Picture when Privacy Mode is ON.

i-motion : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before using i-motion when Privacy Mode is ON.

Schedule : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before using Schedule when Privacy Mode is ON.

i-appli : Sets whether to require the terminal security code entry before using i-appli when Privacy Mode is ON.

Auto start : Sets the time period to 5, 15 or 30 minutes before starting Privacy Mode automatically if you do nothing on FOMA terminal in stand-by.

4 Press .

5 Press .

INFORMATION

● In case Privacy Mode is activated and My picture, i-motion and i-appli are set to "Authorized access" and when trying to perform the next operation, a message indicating that the items that is set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected after the terminal security code is entered and Privacy Mode is canceled is displayed. Press  to return to the operation screen.

- Ring alert settings
- Incoming & outgoing (video-phone)
- Image (video-phone)
- Registering/editing new phonebook data
- Ring alert settings by Group Setting
- Sound Setting
- Image setting of Mail/Call Image
- i-appli settings of stand-by display settings
- Anonymous Caller
- Incoming Msg. Alert
- Incoming Msg. Setting
- Incoming Chat Mail Setting
- Editing Alarm/Schedule alarm settings
- Editing Own Number

● Images or i-motion set for the stand-by display setting or icons or background for the menu screen are usually displayed even if Privacy Mode is activated (My picture and i-motion are set to "Authorized access").

● If all items except "Auto start" are set to "Show all", Privacy Mode is not activated. It is automatically canceled during Privacy Mode ON.

To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ When canceling Privacy Mode

- ① Hold down  for over a second to enter the security code on the stand-by display.
 - If “Hide secret fldrs” has been set for the mail and Privacy in Folder settings of inbox, outbox and unsent messages has been set to “ON”, holding down (half)  or  for over a second in the applicable folder list screen and enter the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily and the folders are displayed. ●P283

INFORMATION

- While you use the function restricted by Privacy Mode, once the terminal security code have been entered, the authentication is not required until the stand-by display is displayed by pressing . The same rule applies when multiple items are set to “Authorized access” in Privacy Mode Setting. Note that when you use the function which is not restricted by Privacy Mode and requires the terminal security code entry, you need to enter the terminal security code when activating Privacy Mode.

Example

- Once you have entered the terminal security code while you are using the phonebook, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- When trying to send the image saved in My Picture with the My picture and the phonebook have been set to “Authorized access”, no authentication screen is displayed when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen to enter the terminal security code in starting My Picture.
- Phonebook & Logs is set to “Authorized access”, you cannot refer to the phonebook when inputting the characters while Privacy Mode is ON.
- In case Privacy Mode is activated and My picture and i-motion are set to “Authorized access”, Privacy Mode is operated according to Sound Setting or the image setting in Mail/Call Image even if there is an incoming call or mail from the other party that ring alert or image is set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- In case Privacy Mode is activated and My picture is set to “Authorized access”, if all entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are send via infrared communication or backed up to the miniSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not send or backed up.

Key Lock

Preventing inadvertent use of keys

Default Not set

Disable the key operation when FOMA terminal is closed and prevent from the wrong operation while carried around as in the bags.

- While Key Lock is ON, the key operation become valid when opening FOMA terminal.

1 Slide down the keylock switch on the stand-by display and release your finger.

Key Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

■ Disabling Key Lock on the stand-by display

- ① Slide down the keylock switch on the stand-by display and release your finger.
Key Lock is released and  disappears from the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- The setting is disabled temporarily and the operation is available even if FOMA terminal is closed, when the call or mail is received or i-appli is started automatically even if Key Lock is ON. Going back to the stand-by display set Key Lock again.

Remote Lock

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access

Default OFF

Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others is avoided by setting All Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen. Auto Lock is activated when FOMA terminal receives a call under the preset condition with the monitoring period, number of incoming calls, and phone numbers set.

Setting Remote Lock operation

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter the terminal security code.
- 3 Select each item to set.

Remote lock : Sets the terminal to activate or deactivate Remote Lock.

- When "OFF" is set, the below items cannot be set.

Monitoring period

: Sets the time interval from the time of the first incoming a call to the specified time. Even after the time frame has expired, if the pre-set number of incoming calls are not received, Remote Lock will not be activated.

- The setting is made in the 1 to 10 minutes range.

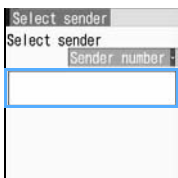
Received calls : Sets the number of incoming voice calls allowed before Remote Lock is activated.

- The setting is made between 3 and 10 times.

Sender 1 to 3 : Sets the original phone numbers that activates Remote Lock. The number of payphone or the same phone number can be also set.

■ When Sender is set

- ① Select Sender 1 to 3 field.
- ② Select Select sender field and press or .



- When "Sender number" is set, enter a phone number in the phone number entry field.
- Press to enter from the phonebook.

Phone number entry field

- ③ Press .

4 Press .

The operating conditions of Remote Lock are set.

INFORMATION

- If registered the phonebook data that the pause and timed pause has been set to the sender's information, the information registered after the pause and timed pause is deleted.
- Auto Lock can be activated by FOMA terminal. ●P158

Setting Remote Lock

Remote Lock is activated by making a call to FOMA terminal under the conditions set in Remote Lock.

- To perform Remote Lock, send your caller ID and make a call to that number.
- Remote Lock cannot be activated from a location outside the service area, where radio waves are hard to reach or when FOMA terminal is not powered ON.

1 Make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the conditions set by Remote Lock.

The guidance that All Lock is set by Remote Lock is played and All Lock is set.

■ Deactivating Remote Lock

To release Remote Lock of FOMA terminal that All Lock is set by Remote Lock, release All Lock by FOMA terminal that Remote Lock is set. ●P158

INFORMATION

- When you make a voice call to activate Remote Lock, in case the other party responds to your call, it is not counted as an incoming call for configuration; Remote Lock cannot be activated. The count is reset to zero.
- When there is an incoming call from the phone number of the sender registered in Remote Lock while Answer Machine or Auto Answer is set, Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts in 4 seconds after the response time set by Answer Machine or Greeting Response Time set by Auto Answer has elapsed. Terminate the call before Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts. If Answer Machine or Auto Answer has started, the call is not counted as an incoming call for setting and Remote Lock cannot be activated.
- The count of incoming calls is only effective for the first call made from a sender. After the counting has been initiated, additional received calls from other senders are not counted.
- Even if a call is rejected, or Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is used (excluding when the call time is 0 second), that number is counted as an incoming call.
- When the period from the time counting is initiated until the time limit ends, counting is released, and the number of missed calls counted from the time counting was initiated is reset to zero.
- If the terminal is turned OFF after the counting has been initiated, the numbers of incoming call that have been counted will be reset to zero.
- If there is an incoming call from the phone number of the sender registered while Remote Lock is ON, the receiver hears a guidance that the terminal is on All Lock. If a call arrives from numbers that are not set as Sender, the call will be disconnected.
- The phone number "186 (✕31#)"/"184 (#31#)" that has been set for the sender does not need to be set as "186 (✕31#)"/"184 (#31#)" when dialing.
- There is no counting initiated during a call.

Displaying the data Secret Attribute has been set

Default not set

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data and the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. To set or cancel Secret Attribute, Secret Mode must be set for FOMA terminal.

1 Press **on the stand-by display.**

2 Enter the terminal security code.

Secret Mode is set and appears.

■ Deactivating Secret Mode

① Press **on the stand-by display.**

disappears.

INFORMATION

- Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook data ◀P122
- Setting Secret Attribute for the schedule data ◀P440

Reject/Accept Call

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, specify Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then set Reject/Accept Call.
- This function is activated only when the other party sends the caller ID.
- Combination of Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.
◀P469, P168

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

Rejecting/accepting incoming call is set for phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Rejecting/accepting incoming call is not set for phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Press **on the stand-by display.**

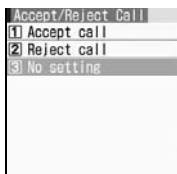
The search screen or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.

2 Place the cursor at the target to set and press **.**

3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Select phone numbers.

5 Press to .



-  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. in the phonebook details screen that Reject/Accept Call is set.

■ When canceling Reject/Accept Call

- ① Press .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Set/Check" → "Setting" → "Accept/Reject Call".
- Since the setting of Reject/Accept Call is canceled for the phone number changed or deleted, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enable Reject/Accept Call

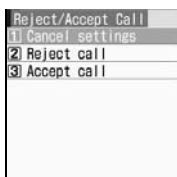
Default Cancel settings

- This setting applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call are not enabled simultaneously.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press  or .



■ When canceling Reject/Accept Call

- ① Press .

When Reject/Accept Call is set

If "Reject call" is set, any incoming call from phone numbers set to be rejected is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

If "Accept call" is set, any incoming call from phone numbers set not to be accepted is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded in Received Calls.
- If Ringing Time setting is set to 0 for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded as a received call.

INFORMATION

- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject Call, FOMA terminal's response depends on the setting in Anonymous Caller regardless of this function setting.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function.
- A call can be made to the phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set regardless of this function setting. In addition, the phonebook data can be edited.

Setting the operations for incoming calls that do not notify the phone number

Default Disable settings

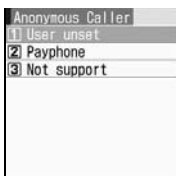
The methods for handling incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID are set depending on the reasons for hide caller ID.

- As for the ring tone and image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this function is prioritized over the setting of Incoming & Outgoing, Call Image and Sound Setting.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 TUV]** **[6 IS MRD]** **[2]** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press **[1 1/2]** to **[3 OFF]**.



- Perform Step 3 to 5 repeatedly for every reason for hide caller ID to set.
- The reason for no caller ID ➡ P62

4 Select each item to set.



Arrival act : Sets operations for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.

- When "Disable settings" is set, the ring tone set in "Phone" in Sound Setting sounds.
- Setting "Call Rejection" rejects an incoming call from the other party which does not notify the caller ID.
- Set "Ring alert off" to make the ring alert to be silent.
- When "Select ring tone" is selected, select the ring tone field and select a melody.
- When you select "Movie ringtone", select the ring tone field and select a video/i-motion.
- When "Disable settings" or "Call Rejection" is set, "Show image" cannot be set.

Show image: Sets an image displayed for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.

- When "Standard image" is selected, the default image is set.
- When "Select image" for Show image is selected, select "Select image" for List images to select an image.
- When "i-motion" is selected, select "Select image" to select a video/i-motion.

5 Press **[OK]**.

INFORMATION

- When "Call Rejection" has been set, the rejected calls are stored in Received Calls.
- When there is an incoming video-phone call without caller ID notification, this function operates only when "Call Rejection" is set for the corresponding reason for hide caller ID. If set otherwise, the ring tone operates as set in the video-phone settings in Sound Setting/Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing and the incoming image operates as set in Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function.
- If "Movie ringtone" is set, "Sync ring alert" set in Show image and i-motion alert is played.
- "Standard image" is when the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for "Movie ringtone". Note that the image can be changed by selecting "Image" in Image field.
- When you set the incoming setting to "Movie ringtone" and reset it to "Ring alert off", the video/i-motion set for "Movie ringtone" is played, but the ring volume becomes silent.

Ring Alert Delay

Setting not to answer a call from the party which is not registered in the phonebook

Default OFF

The ringer action by a ring tone or vibrator is set for a voice call or video-phone call received from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook with the specified time elapsed. The function is effective to "One ring"

- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to "ON".

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable Ring Alert Delay.

- When "OFF" is set, the following items cannot be set.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing.

- The setting is made between 1 to 99 seconds.

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in Delay time in Received Calls.

3 Press .

When Ring Alert Delay is set

When a call is received from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the arrival will be notified only on the display for the period of specified time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Before the specified time passes, normal call receiving operation such as answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed. Incoming calls are recorded in Received Calls.
- This function is operated even for incoming call from the other party saved in the phonebook when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is ON ("Authorized access" is set for Phonebook & Logs).

- This function operates in the following case.
 - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the caller ID is registered in the phonebook.
 - When the phone receives the call from the other party which number is registered in the phonebook that Secret Attribute is set while not in Secret Mode.
- If you receive a call from the caller who is saved in the phonebook, the ringer action starts at the same time as received the call regardless of the function setting.

INFORMATION

- The following functions are prioritized over the settings of this function:
 - Driving Mode
 - Answer Machine
 - Auto Answer
 - Voice Mail Service
 - Call Forwarding Service
- If you receive a call from a phone number to be rejected that has been set in Reject/Accept Call by memory or in the Anonymous Caller settings, that operation takes priority over this function.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function.
- In case Delay time is set to the same minutes set for the Auto Answer function, ring tone may sound on rare occasions.
- In case Ring Alert Delay is set to the same minutes set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

Reject Non-Reg. Caller

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook

Default OFF

- Combination of Caller ID Request Service is recommended when used. ◀P469
- This function cannot be set when Ring Alert Delay is set to "ON".

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press .

■ When canceling Reject Non-Reg. Caller

① Press .

When Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set

When received a call from the other party who is not registered in the phonebook is disconnected without activating a ring tone and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded in Received Calls.
- The phone rejects the call also in the following case.
 - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the caller ID is registered in the phonebook.
 - When the phone receives the call from the other party which number is registered in the phonebook that Secret Attribute is set while not in Secret Mode.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail messages are received regardless of this function.

Other “Safety settings”

In addition to security codes and various lock functions, the following “Safety settings” can be used with your FOMA terminal.

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive option	P297
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See “FOMA i-mode operation guide”.
To receive only mail messages sent from the specified domain	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode Mail	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board” Service	
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified address	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
To reject Short Messages (SMS) or Short Messages (SMS) with no caller ID	Short message SMS All rejection /Reject Short message SMS with no caller ID	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject “Nuisance calls” including malicious calls and repeating misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Barring Service	P468
Safe and reliable data communications are possible by using the electronic authentication service, “FirstPass” (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P206, P238
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication when necessary	Software Update	P564
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus scan function	P570

Camera

Before using the camera	174
Shooting still images with Camera	[Still Camera] 179
Recording videos with Movie Camera	[Movie Camera] 184
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	[Still Image Setting/Recording Setting] 186
Shooting in various modes	188
Changing setting for shooting	190
Sending images shot during voice calls	[One-shot Message] 193
Using Bar Code Reader	[Bar Code Reader] 194

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera.

- Shot still images, recorded videos/sounds can be displayed and played on FOMA terminal and can also be sent via i-mode Mail or data transfer to the devices such as other FOMA terminals, other company's mobile phones or PCs.
- Shot still images, recorded videos/sounds can be set for the stand-by display, incoming call screen or ring alert.
- Still images and videos can be shot laying frames over or applying effects such as monotone and sepia. In addition, adding frames, pasting text and stamps and applying various effects are possible for still images after shooting.
- Shot still images, recorded videos/sounds can be saved on the miniSD memory card.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. ●P387

Using the camera

About the camera

- Note that though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Please also note that noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, images may be displayed to be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may cause stripes to appear on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. Strips may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position.
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing  or . If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press  or .
- When you activate Camera or Auto Focus or switch the in-/out-camera, a motor sound may be heard, but this is not a malfunction of FOMA terminal.
- The in-camera in FOMA terminal uses CMOS technology. Note that in darker places, a CMOS camera may take a slightly grainier picture compared to one taken by an out-camera (regular CCD camera) and this graininess is not an error.

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- Set brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ●P190
The Compact light can be used for shooting in a dark place. ●P179, P184
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing  or . Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing  or .

- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects when recording a video, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot and saved still images and videos are normal. For still images, Auto save can be set to "No" to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i-α ppli software, the shot still image and the recorded videos are not saved in My Picture (Image) or i-motion folder and saved in the software (some software saves it in "mode" folder). Shot images and videos may be automatically sent from software to the server by communication.
- When the miniSD memory card is set as the destination, do not remove the miniSD memory card while using the camera. FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- You may not be able to shoot when the available space in the miniSD memory card is not enough. Check that there is enough available space in the miniSD memory card before shooting.
- If battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, the shot image or video is not saved.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time for an image to be displayed on the shooting screen when you start Camera.

About copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or videos and Site (Program) or Web page information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release recorded work on Internet web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

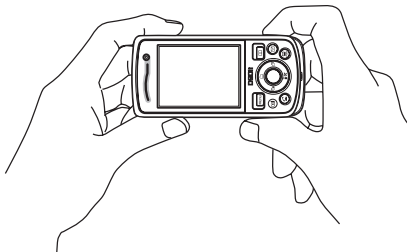


Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

To shoot clean images

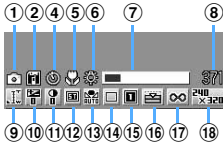
When shooting images, be careful not to jiggle your hand holding FOMA terminal firmly as shown in the figure.

- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap when shooting images with the camera.
- If you use Auto Timer, the shutter is automatically released, and you can avoid blurring of images due to hand movement. ◀P189

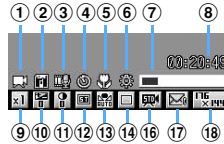


Viewing the shooting/recording screen

- Indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i-a ppli software. Only switching the in-camera/out-camera, turning ON the Compact light and starting Auto Timer can be operated.
- When image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA) and landscape shooting is taken place, **■ STANDBY** (Recording stand-by), **● REC** (Recording) and **|| PAUSE** (In pause) are indicated instead of the icons below during the video recording.



Still image shooting screen



Video recording screen

- ① **Shooting mode** : Indicates camera mode for shooting still images or recording videos.
- ② **Save to** : Indicates the place the memory is saved. ➡P187
 : FOMA terminal : miniSD memory card
- ③ **Recording type** : Indicates the type of the video to be recorded. ➡P187
- ④ **Auto Timer** : Indicates the ON/OFF of Auto Timer. ➡P189
- Auto Focus** : Indicates ON/OFF of Auto Focus (only during shooting still image). ➡P181
- ⑤ **Macro Mode** : Indicates either of the Macro mode or Standard mode. ➡P189
- ⑥ **Compact light** : Indicates ON/OFF of the Compact light. ➡P179, P184
- ⑦ **Indicator** : **During stand-by for shooting**
 Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting. Indicates the remaining time before shooting during counting down of Auto Timer.
 - The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no shot images have been saved.**During video recording/pause**
 Indicates the size rate of the recorded image size to the file size set in Size restrictions.
- ⑧ **Counter** : **During shooting still image**
 During the normal shooting, it indicates the current maximum number (estimates) of still images that can be saved to FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Indicates the remaining time before shooting during counting down of Auto Timer. Indicates shot number/total shot number (up to 6) during manual continuous shoot.
 During video recording
 During stand-by for recording, it indicates the current maximum recording time (estimates) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Indicates the remaining time before shooting during counting down of Auto Timer. While recording, it indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).
- ⑨ **Zoom** : Indicates display magnification of the image. ➡P188
- ⑩ **Brightness** : Indicates the brightness of the image. ➡P192
- ⑪ **Color density** : Indicates the color density of the image. ➡P192
- ⑫ **Camera effect** : Indicates the camera effect that is applied to the image. ➡P192
- ⑬ **White balance** : Indicates the current white balance setting. ➡P192
- ⑭ **Frame settings** : Indicates the current frame setting. ➡P190
- ⑮ **Continuous Mode** : Indicates the current Continuous Mode setting. ➡P182

- ⑩ **Quality** : Indicates the quality of the still image file to be saved. 📷P191
Quality (video) : Indicates the quality of the video file to be saved. 📷P191
 ⑪ **Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions of the file to be saved. 📷P191
 ⑫ **Image size** : Indicates the size of the still image to be shot and the video to be recorded. 📷P191

Still image files/video files

Item	Still image file	Video file
File format	JPEG	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	—	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	.jpg	.3gp
File name	Automatically set by shooting date/time. Example: When the image is shot at 12:34:56 am on April 15, 2005. → 20050415123456.jpg/.3gp • The display name and file name can be changed after shooting 📷P402. • If the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set, the display name, title (for video only) and file name appear as "-----".	
Mail attachment/output	Files can be attached to the mail to send and can also be imported to PCs and other terminals by using the miniSD memory card and proprietary data link software.	

Maximum saved number of still images

Number of still images that can be stored in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card varies depending on settings of the quality, size restrictions, file size and image size or shooting conditions.

- The quality, image size and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting. 📷P186

■ Number of still images that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Quality \ Size	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1224 x 1632
Economy	827	827	827	549	424	202	202	78	57	51
Standard	827	827	718	405	321	145	141	48	35	33
Fine	827	718	491	245	202	85	84	27	19	19

Note: Up to 1,000 items can be stored when the data in the "Deco-Mail picture" and "Item" folders of My Picture (Image) are deleted, but upper limit is approx. 827 images by default.

■ Number of still images that can be stored in miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Size		96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1224 x 1632
Capacity/ Quality											
16 MB	Economy	2,057	1,600	1,309	847	654	313	313	121	89	78
	Standard	1,800	1,440	1,107	626	496	225	218	74	54	52
	Fine	1,600	1,107	757	378	313	132	130	41	30	30
32 MB	Economy	4,246	3,303	2,702	1,748	1,351	646	646	249	184	162
	Standard	3,716	2,972	2,286	1,292	1,025	464	450	154	112	108
	Fine	3,303	2,286	1,564	782	646	272	270	86	62	62

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the quality, recording type, image size and size restrictions settings and the recording conditions.

- The quality, recording type, image size and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting. ●P186

■ Recording time of videos that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Recording time per 1 video/sound recording (unit: second)				Maximum recording time of FOMA terminal memory (unit: minute)			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	112	70	51	21	63	39	29	11
		Video only	190	96	71	24	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	87	44	30	11	49	25	17	6
		Video only	128	52	36	12	72	29	20	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	32	17	13	6	18	9	7	3
		Video only	36	18	14	6	20	10	7	3
Msg attach (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	189	119	86	36	63	40	28	12
		Video only	321	161	120	41	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	148	74	51	19	49	24	17	6
		Video only	217	89	61	21	73	29	20	7
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	54	29	23	10	18	9	7	3
		Video only	61	30	24	10	20	10	8	3

■ Recording time of videos that can be stored in miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: minute

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Capacity: 16 MB				Capacity: 32 MB			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	118	86	35
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	162	120	40
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	36	24	9	147	74	50	18
		Video only	104	42	29	9	216	87	60	20
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	13	10	4	54	28	21	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	60	30	23	10
Msg attach (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	119	86	36
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	161	120	41
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	35	24	9	148	74	51	19
		Video only	105	43	29	10	217	89	61	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	54	29	23	9
		Video only	29	14	11	4	61	30	24	9
None	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	119	86	36
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	161	120	41
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	35	24	9	148	74	51	19
		Video only	105	43	29	10	217	89	61	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	54	29	23	9
		Video only	29	14	11	4	61	30	24	9

Shooting still images with Camera

- FOMA terminal provides a variety of shooting methods such as auto focus shoot that automatically brings the camera into focus, continuous shoot and shoot adding frame images. Various methods can be selected before shooting. ◀P188, P190
- Shutter sound is heard even when "Silent" is set for Ring Volume or Silent Mode is active.

Shooting still images

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Camera is activated and the Still Camera mode starts.

- During still image shooting stand-by, the following operations are enabled.

 : Switches the Compact light ON () / OFF (No icon).*

 : Switches the view finder between the Full mode/Standard mode

- When Full mode is set, the setting icons and guide row are not displayed at the bottom of the screen to make an image easy to view.

 : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

- Even when the camera is switched, zoom and camera effect settings are kept.

 (for over a second)

: Switches between the Still Camera mode/Movie Camera mode.

*You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

- When Camera is activated, the multi-indicator flashes.

2 Point the camera at the object and press or .



Still image shooting screen

The shutter sound is heard, the Compact light lit in red and a still image is shot.

The shot still images are saved in the "Camera" folder of My Picture (Image). ◀P352

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved in the "My picture" folder in the miniSD memory card. ◀P395
- Still images can be shot with Auto Focus using . ◀P181

■ Checking the shot still image immediately

① Press .

② Select the still image to check.

- Press  or  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook or an i-appli software.

When Auto save in Still Image Setting is set to "No"

After shooting, a confirmation screen for the shot still image is displayed.

- When the image size is smaller than 240 x 320 (stand-by), you can enlarge the shot still image by pressing . Press  to return to the original size.

■ Saving the shot still image

① Press .

- If you do not save the shot still image, press  or .

■ Sending mail attaching the shot still image

① Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you will save the shot still image. Select “Yes” to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size setting of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box.

◆P261

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select “No limit” to save the shot still image at the original size and select “9000 bytes” to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you attach the shot still image to mail text. Select “Yes” to attach it to mail text.
- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal.

■ Setting the image for the stand-by display

① Press and select “Yes”.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If the shot still image can be zoomed, select “Yes (Same size)” to maintain the image size, or select “Yes (Large size)” to enlarge the image to the screen size to show on the stand-by display.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

■ Adding the image to phonebook entries

① Press , then press or and select “Yes”.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- An image can be added as a phonebook image only when the size is 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added for the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title

① Press .

② Enter the title and press .

- Up to 31 characters (30 characters for continuous shot images) can be entered regardless of one-byte or two-byte.

■ Making adjustment

① Press .

- Images can not be adjusted when the size is larger than 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE).

■ Saving as mirror image (only while shooting with the in-camera)

① Press .

- When a frame is set to the shot image, and shooting date/time of the 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) sized image is set to other than “None”, the image cannot be saved as mirror image.

■ Switching the normal display/mirror display (only while shooting with the in-camera)

① Press .

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card

① Press .

■ Displaying the list of images stored in FOMA terminal

① Press and then press or .

INFORMATION

- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.
- When the size of a recorded still image file is larger than the value set for Size restrictions, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If there is an incoming call before the shutter sound is heard during stand-by for shooting still images, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and still images have been shot already, still images are saved automatically if Auto save is set to "Yes". If you set Auto save to "No", a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call.
- If there is an incoming call while saving a still image, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues.
- If there is incoming mail while shooting still images, shooting can be continued as before without stop.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, still images cannot be shot. Delete images saved or change settings of image size and quality in Still Image Setting before shoot. ●P190, P395, P405
- You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook.

• Composing mail	• Stand-by display settings	• Saving images in the phonebook
• Adjustment	• Switching where to save	• Displaying the image list
- Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

Using the auto focus function to shoot [Auto Focus]

Press  halfway to focus to the object. Keep on pressing fully to shoot the sharper still image.

- The  key has two positions: half press and full press, so the feeling is different from the other keys when pressed.
- The distance that Auto Focus can bring the camera into focus is from approx. 30 cm to ∞ for the Standard mode, and approx. 7 to 30 cm for the Marco mode.
- Auto Focus cannot be operated while shooting with the in-camera, while shooting with Auto Timer or when Camera effect is set to "Long exposure".

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Camera is activated and the Still Camera mode starts.

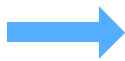
2 Point the camera at the object and press half way.

Auto Focus is activated and the orange focus frame and  (black) are displayed on the screen. You can hear a confirmation sound when the camera is brought into focus, and the focus frame changes to a green "+", and  changes to  (green).

- When the camera does not come into focus, the focus frame changes to a red "+" and  (red) is displayed.
- Note that the still image will be shot without focus in if you press  fully before the green "+" appears.
- To focus in other than the center of the screen, focus once and then keep on pressing  half way to face the camera to the object you want to shoot.



Press  half way.



When the camera is brought into focus

The frame changes to a green "+".

3 Fully press until you hear a shutter sound.

The Compact light lit in red and a still image is shot.

- You can also shoot by releasing your finger from  after the camera comes into focus and then pressing .
- “+” disappears when you release your finger from , but the camera keeps focused in (Focus Lock).
- To bring another object into focus, point the camera at the object and press  half way.
- When Auto save is set to “No”, functions available on the confirmation screen, where to save the shot still image and operations for saving are the same as in normal shooting. ➡P179

INFORMATION

- If you shoot with Auto Focus even though the camera cannot focus in because of the distance from the shooting object, images will be shot at the best condition according to the shooting mode.
- If shot with Auto Focus during continuous shooting, the rest of the images is shot with the focus in on the first image. During manual continuous shooting, you can focus using Auto Focus each time you shoot.
- In the following cases, the camera may not be automatically focused using Auto Focus:
 - When shooting an object of which color has no shading
 - When shooting in a dark place
 - When there is light in the shooting area
 - When the shooting object is moving
 - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
- While the auto focus function is used, the key operations except for ,  and  become invalid and the settings for shooting function cannot be changed.

Shooting continuously [Continuous Mode]

Still images can be shot continuously. Continuous shooting can be done in two modes: “Auto” for continuously and automatically shooting images of the set number and “Manual” for continuously and manually shooting them.

- Up to 6 images can be shot continuously.
- The number of images to be continuously shot can be set in “Continuous shot photos” in Still Image Setting. ➡P187
- Continuous shooting is not available when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1224 x 1632 (2M) or when Camera has been activated from the phonebook or i-appli software. Note, however, that continuous shooting is enabled for some types of software.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Camera is activated and the Still Camera mode starts.

2 Select a type of continuous shooting.



Icon of Continuous Mode

■ Setting to the auto continuous mode

- ① Press   .

The continuous shot icon changes from  to .

■ Setting to the manual continuous mode

- ① Press   .

The continuous shot icon changes from  to .

- Press    to cancel Continuous Mode.
- You can also press , then select a continuous shot type with  and press  to set Continuous Mode.

3 Point the camera at the object and press or .

■ When auto continuous mode is selected

The shutter sound for the auto continuous mode is heard and the still images of the set number are continuously shot.

■ When manual continuous mode is selected

The shutter sound is heard and still images are shot.

- Press  or  to shoot still images again.
- Press  to stop manual continuous shooting on the way. When Auto save is set to "Yes", the still images already shot are automatically saved. When Auto save is set to "No", a confirmation screen is displayed.

When Auto save in Still Image Setting is set to "No"

A confirmation screen is displayed.

- Each time you press , the display switches between one image and thumbnail view.
- While one image is being displayed, pressing  displays the previous image and pressing  displays the next image.
- Functions available on the confirmation screen, where to save the shot still image are the same as in normal shooting. ➡P179

■ Saving all still images collectively

- 1 Press .

■ Saving only one displayed still image (during shooting with the out-camera)

- 1 Hold down  for over a second and select "Yes".
 - An image at cursor position is saved during thumbnail view.

■ When saving only one displayed still image by switching the normal/mirror image (during shooting with the in-camera)

- 1 Hold down  for over a second and choose "Save normal" or "Save mirror".
 - An image at cursor position is saved as the normal/mirror image during thumbnail view.

■ Saving all still images shot continuously as mirror image (during shooting with the in-camera)

- 1 Press   .

■ Selecting images to save from still images shot continuously (in thumbnail view)

- 1 Press    to select still images.
 - Press  to select or to cancel the image; press  to select all or to cancel all.
 - Press  to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail view, press .
- 2 Press  and select "Yes".
 - Only the selected still images are saved.
 - When shooting with the in-camera, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save as normal images or as mirror images. Select "Save normal" or "Save mirror".

INFORMATION

- "1" is added at the end of the file name of the still image that is shot continuously. You can break down continuous images into separate ones by canceling Create animation (➡P354), with numbers "1" to "6" assigned at the end of the file name of separated individual images. File name of the still images ➡P177
- If a call arrives or an alarm is activated during the manual continuous mode, shooting is ended at that point. When Auto save is set to "Yes", the still images already shot are automatically saved. When Auto save is set to "No", a confirmation screen is displayed.
- If a call arrives or an alarm is activated during the auto continuous mode, shooting is continued. When Auto save is set to "No", a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call or alarm. Ring alert or alarm sound is disabled while shutter sound is heard.

Recording videos with Movie Camera

- Various shooting methods can be selected before recording. ●P188, P190
- Videos cannot be recorded while talking or recording voice. Exit any other function before starting video recording.
- Shutter sound is heard even when “Silent” is set for Ring Volume or Silent Mode is active.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Movie Camera is activated and the Movie Camera mode starts.

- During recording stand-by, the following operations are enabled:

 : Switches the Compact light ON () / OFF (No icon).*

 : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot.*

- Can be switched between horizontal and vertical only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA).

 : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

- Even when the camera is switched, zoom and camera effect settings are kept.

 (for over a second)

: Switches between the Movie Camera mode/Still Camera mode.

*You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

- When Movie Camera is activated, the multi-indicator flashes.

2 Point the camera at the object and or .



Video recording screen

The confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard, the Compact light blinks in red for every 2 seconds and a video is recorded. When recording is started,  switches to .

- Press  to pause while recording. The Compact light lit in red and  switches to  while in pause. Press  again, and the recording restarts.
- While recording and in pause, the multi-indicator flashes.

3 Press or .



The shutter sound is heard and recording video is finished.

The recorded video is saved in the “Camera” folder of i-motion. ●P366

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in the “Movie” folder of the miniSD memory card. ●P395
- If the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped and video recorded up to that point is saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

■ Checking the shot video immediately

① Press .

② Select a video to check.

- After the confirmation, press  or  twice to return to the video recording screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or i-α ppli software.

When Auto save in Recording Setting is set to “No”

After recording, a confirmation screen for the recorded video is displayed.

- When Auto play in Recording Setting is set to “Yes”, the recorded video is played automatically.

■ Saving the recorded video

- ① Press .

- If you do not save the shot still image, press  or .

■ Sending mail attaching the recorded video

- ① Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select “Yes” to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the video cannot be attached to mail.
- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the image cannot to be attached to mail.
- When the quality of video is set to “HQ+”, the video cannot be attached to the message.

■ Setting the image for the stand-by display

- ① Press    and select “YES”.

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- For recorded videos that allow zoom display, select “YES (Same size)” to maintain the image size or select “YES (Large size)” to enlarge the image to the screen size to show on the stand-by display.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

■ Adding the image to phonebook entries

- ① Press  , then press  or  and select “Yes”.

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- Images can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to “Video only”.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title

- ① Press   .

- ② Enter the title and press .

- Up to 31 characters can be entered regardless of whether one-byte or two-byte.
- The change is effective after the video is saved.

■ Creating a ticker

- ① Press    and select “Yes”.

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker creation screen is displayed.

◆P373

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be created for the image.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, a ticker cannot be created for the image.

■ Playing the video

- ① Press .

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card

- ① Press  .

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 490 Kbytes, where to save cannot be switched.

■ Displaying the list of videos stored in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card

- ① Press   and press  or .

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded.
- During recording, updating of the indicator and counter displays may be delayed.
- Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit you have set in Size restrictions depending on data you record.
- If Size restrictions is set to "None", data may not be saved when battery power goes out during recording.
- You should avoid a continuous shooting of video/sound that lasts 10 or more hours, because you may fail to display or replay the video/sound when it is stored in the miniSD memory card.
- When a call arrives or an alarm starts during video recording, the recording is stopped at that point. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when Auto save is set to "Yes". When Auto save is set to "No", a confirmation screen is displayed. At this time, sounds such as alert sound may be recorded at the last of saved data.
- If there is an incoming call while saving a video, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues.
- When the battery is almost exhausted during recording, a low battery alert sounds and the data recorded by then is saved automatically. At this time, sounds such as a low battery alert may be recorded at the last of saved data.
- When there is not enough memory for video/sound or the saved data exceeds the maximum number, videos cannot be recorded. Delete saved data or change settings of Size restrictions in Recording Setting before record. ●P190, P395, P405
- In video recording, you cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook.
 - Composing mail
 - Stand-by display settings
 - Saving images in the phonebook
 - Creating a ticker
 - Switching where to save
 - Displaying the video list
- Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Default ● Still Image Settings

Image size: 240 x 320 (stand-by) / Quality: Standard / Shooting date/time: None /
Size restrictions: None / Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. / Continuous shot photos: 6 / Auto save: Yes /
Save to: Phone / Camera time-out: 1 min. / Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 / Set lighting: Always on

● Recording Settings

Quality: Standard / Recording Type: Video + Voice / Size restrictions: Msg attach (S) / Size: QCIF (176 x 144)
/ Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. / Auto Play: No / Auto save: Yes / Save to: Phone /
Camera time-out: 1 min. / Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 / Set lighting: Always on

- Images cannot be set when Still Camera or Video Camera is started from the phonebook or i-a ppli software. In this case, Camera time-out is automatically reset to "1 min."

Example When changing Still Image Setting

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and press  .**
 - When changing Recording Setting
 - ① Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and press  .
- 2 Select each item to set.**
- 3 Press .**

Item	Still Image Setting	Recording Setting	Description
Image size	○	×	Sets the image size for still images to be shot. ●P191 * Camera is switched to the out-camera when the image size is set to 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1224 x 1632 (2M) during shooting with the in-camera.
Quality	○	×	Sets the quality for the still image files to be saved. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files. ●P191
Shooting date/time	○	×	Sets whether to insert shooting date and time at the lower right of the still image.
Quality (video)	×	○	Sets the quality of video or sound files to be saved. Higher quality requires a larger size of video/sound files. ●P191
Recording Type	×	○	Sets the quality of videos or sounds to be recorded. 🎥 : Video + Voice 🎥 : Video only 🎤 : Voice only (Sound Recorder)
Size restrictions	○	○	Sets the size restrictions of files to be saved. ●P191
Size (video)	×	○	Sets the image size for videos to be recorded.
Auto-timer duration	○	○	Sets the duration of time before the start of auto timer shooting. * The setting is made between 2 and 15 seconds.
Continuous shot photos	○	×	Sets the number of images shot continuously. * The setting is made between 2 and 6 images.
Auto play	×	○	Sets whether to play the video/sounds automatically when a confirmation screen is displayed.
Auto save	○	○	Sets whether to automatically save shot still images or video/sounds. * When Auto save is set to "Yes", the image is automatically saved in the specified destination. * Setting "No" displays a confirmation screen after recording, which allows various operations.
Save to	○	○	Sets the memory to save the shot still image/video.
Camera time-out	○	○	Sets the duration of time until Still Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder turns OFF when no operation is made.
Shutter sound	○	○	Sets the shooting confirmation sounds (shutter sounds). * The sound is played when you place the cursor at a shutter sound.
Set lighting	○	○	Sets the lighting of the display for the time of recording video/sounds. * Setting "Phone settings" applies the setting of Display Light. ●P144 * When "Always on" is set, the lighting on the display stays ON while the video recording screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

- Shooting date/time cannot be set when Image size is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) in Still Image Setting.
- In Still Image Setting, 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1224 x 1632 (2M) for Image size and "9000 bytes" for Size restrictions cannot be set simultaneously. In addition, 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1224 x 1632 (2M) for Image size and "500K bytes" for Size restrictions cannot be set simultaneously.
- In Recording Setting, "LP" or "HQ +" for Quality and "Voice only" for Recording Type cannot be set at the same time.
- In Recording Setting, when "Phone" is set for Save to, "None" cannot be set for Size restrictions.
- Resetting does not restore the default settings for Still Image Setting and Recording Setting.

Shooting in various modes

Zooming

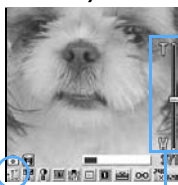
Magnification for shooting image can be changed to take a close-up of the subject.

The available magnifications depend on the size of the image, which are as shown below:

Type of camera	Size	Zoom scale		Maximum display magnification
		During shooting still image	During video recording	
Out-camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	65 scales	—	20 times
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	65 scales	9 scales	20 times
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	65 scales	8 scales	16 times
	240 x 320 (stand-by)	65 scales	—	8 times
	320 x 240 (V-QVGA movie)	—	3 scales	4 times
	320 x 240 (H-QVGA movie)	—	5 scales	8 times
	352 x 288 (CIF)	65 scales	—	6 times
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	65 scales	—	3 times
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)	65 scales	—	4 times
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)	65 scales	—	3 times
	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)	6 scales	—	2 times
	1224 x 1632 (2M)	6 scales	—	2 times
In-camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	2 scales	—	2 times
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	2 scales	2 scales	
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	2 scales	2 scales	
	240 x 320 (stand-by)	2 scales	—	
	320 x 240 (V-QVGA movie)	—	2 scales	
	352 x 288 (CIF)	2 scales	—	
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	2 scales	—	

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen.

●P179, P184



Slider

Icon of Zoom

Each time you press , the slider shifts.

- You can also press , then shift the slider with  and press  to change.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

■ During still image shooting

With the out-camera:



With the in-camera:

: Normal : 2 times

■ During video recording

: Normal : 2 times : 4 times : 6 times : 8 times

: 10 times : 12 times : 16 times : 20 times

INFORMATION

- In still image shooting with the out-camera, when increasing the magnification with the image size of 96 x 72 (phonebook), 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (stand-by) or 352 x 288 (CIF) set, the image may appear blurred on the screen. However, the actual shot image will be recorded with the quality corresponding to the magnification you selected.
- When increasing the magnification, the image appears blurred, but it will be focused after a while.

Using Auto Timer [Auto Timer]

Auto Timer is used to shoot still images or videos. Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified time has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

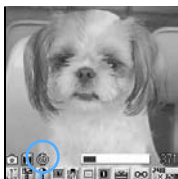
- The duration before shooting can be set in "Auto-timer duration" of Still Image Setting and Recording Setting.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen.

Auto Timer is set and  is indicated.

- Press   or   again to cancel Auto Timer.

2 Point the camera at the object and press or .



The countdown sound is heard and the Compact light flashes in red. An estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds are displayed by the indicator and counter. The intervals of flashing become shorter as the time of shooting approaches, and the shutter sound is heard after the specified time has elapsed.

- To stop the auto timer on the way, press .
- When the auto timer is operating, the multi-indicator flashes.

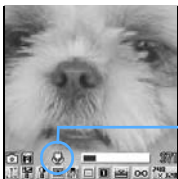
 Icon of Auto Timer

Shooting nearby object [Macro Mode]

When shooting a subject with Auto Focus from a very short distance of approx. 7 to 30 cm, setting Macro Mode enables camera to bring the subject into focus. When not using Auto Focus, the subject can be brought into focus at approx. 7 to 11 cm.

- Macro Mode is unavailable for shooting with the in-camera.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen.



Switches to the Macro mode and  is displayed.

- Press  to return to the Standard mode.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

 Icon of Macro Mode

Changing setting for shooting

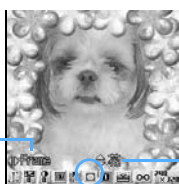
Default Frame: not set / Size: (Still image)240 x 320 (Video)176 x 144 /
 Quality: (Still image)Standard (Video)STD / Size Limit: (Still image)None (Video)Msg attach S /
 Effect: Normal / WhiteBalance: Auto / Brightness: ± 0 / ColorDensity: ± 0

You can shoot by adding the images for frames or change the settings for image size, image quality, size restriction, effects, white balance, brightness or color density.

- When "Voice only" is set for Recording Type in Recording Setting, the settings can not be changed except for the quality and the size restriction.

Example Setting a frame

- Press  on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen and place the cursor at the icon of frame. P179, P184



- When changing the other settings, focus to each icon.
- A cursor also moves by pressing the following keys:

 : Zoom  P188	 : White Balance	 : Size Limit
 : Brightness	 : Frame	 : Size
 : Color Density	 : Continuous  P182	
 : Effect	 : Quality	

- Press  to select a frame and press .

- When changing other settings, change the value with  and press .
- For Effect, White Balance, Frame, Continuous, Quality, Size Limit and Size, you can also change the value by pressing the keys  to ,  corresponding to each icon.

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

 : Frame is set  : Frame is canceled

- The frames saved in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and 240 x 320 (stand-by). Frames set by default P360
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1224 x 1632 (2M) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.
- To cancel the frame, hold down  for over a second.
- Frames cannot be applied when Camera is started from the phonebook or i-appli software.

INFORMATION

- You can also select frames from the frame image list by pressing    during still image shooting or    during video recording.
- The frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing    during still image shooting or    during video recording.
- If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the frame can be updated to the latest one by pressing    during still image shooting or    during video recording.
- Frames can be added for still images after saving the shot image. P360

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting mode	Size	Icon	Sending mail available/not available
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail or Deco-mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	240 x 320 (stand-by)		
	352 x 288 (CIF)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 (stand-by) when attaching files to mail.
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)		
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)*		
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)*		
	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)*		
	1224 x 1632 (2M)*		
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. • 320 x 240 (QVGA) sized video file cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	320 x 240 (QVGA)		

*Available only when shooting with the out-camera

- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500K bytes.
- The image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal is 240 x 320 (stand-by).
- The size restriction setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

Quality of still images/videos

■ During still image shooting



Economy : Provides the lowest quality. File size is reduced.



Standard : Standard image quality



Fine : Provides the highest quality. File size becomes large.

■ During video recording



LP : Provides the lowest quality. Maximum duration of recording becomes longest.



STD : Standard quality



HQ : The video motion becomes smooth.



HQ+ : Provides the highest quality. Maximum duration of recording becomes shortest.

Size restrictions

■ During still image shooting

When the size of a shot still image file is larger than the limit value, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.



9000 bytes : Restricts file size to 9,000 bytes. This file size is suited for being attached to i-mode Mail.



500K bytes : Restricts file size to 500 Kbytes. You can attach to i-mode Mail without changing file size.



None : No restriction for file size

- When you attach a shot file to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal, set the size restriction to other than "None".
- The size restriction setting cannot be changed for 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) and 1224 x 1632 (2M) sized images.
- The size restriction setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

■ During video recording

When file size exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

 **Msg attach S** : Restricts file size to 290 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal of existing type.

 **Msg attach L** : Restricts file size to 490 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

 **None** : No restriction for file size

- In Recordig Setting, when Save to is set to "Phone", "None" cannot be set.
- When you attach a shot file to i-mode Mail and send it to a FOMA terminal, set the size restrictions to other than "None".

Camera effect

You can shoot with the following effects:

 **Normal** : Standard shooting.

 **Backlight** : Detects the amount of light when the object is against the sun and automatically adjusts the exposure.

 **Sepia** : Shoots in sepia.

 **Monotone** : Shoots in monochrome.

 **Sunset** : Shoots human figures in the background of sunset.

 **Sea/Snow** : Shoots beautiful light reflection in sceneries such as the sea and snowy surface.

 **Landscape** : A vivid image provides contrasts emphasized.

 **Long Exposure** : Long exposure mode. Used for shooting at night or under low light condition.

- "Long Exposure" cannot be set for auto continuous shoot. "Landscape" and "Long Exposure" cannot be set for video recording.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.

 **Auto** : Adjusts white balance automatically.

 **Sunlight** : Set when shooting outdoor in fine weather.

 **Cloudy** : Set when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.

 **Fluorescent** : Set when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.

 **Bulb light** : Set when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

Brightness

: -2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- This brightness setting keeps even when Still Camera or Movie Camera is ended.
- Adjusting brightness may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.

Color density

: -2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- This color density setting keeps even when Camera or Movie Camera is ended.
- Adjusting color density may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.
- The color density setting is not reflected when Camera effect is set to "Sepia" or "Monotone" during shooting with the in-camera.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen. **☛P179, P184**

2 Select “Yes”.

One-shot Message

Sending images shot during voice calls

When you shoot a still image during a voice call, you can attach it to i-mode Mail and then send it to the other party.

- Set the memory to save to “Phone” in Still Image Setting to use this function. If the shot still image is not saved to FOMA terminal, this function is not available.
- If Record Chara-den is activated directly before the call, you may not be able to use this function.

1 Press during a call.

2 Shoot still images.

- Shooting procedure **☛P179**
- When “Yes” is set for Auto save in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If “Yes” is selected, the shot image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press to place the cursor at the still image to be sent.

3 Press and select “Yes”.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If a mail address of the other party of current call has been stored in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in Receiver field automatically. The mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” set for Phonebook & Logs).

- Depending on the settings of image size and file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box. **☛P261**
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select “None” to save the shot still image at the original size and select “9000 bytes” to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you paste the shot still image to mail text. Select “Yes” to paste it to mail text.
- Press or to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press on the shooting screen.

4 Compose and send the i-mode Mail.

- i-mode Mail composing/sending procedure **☛P249**

Using Bar Code Reader

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be read using the camera. The scanned data can be added to the phonebook and Bookmark. Also, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save up to 5 scanned data.
 - Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
 - The bar codes and 2 dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be read.
 - QR codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
 - Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may stop the codes from being read.
 - You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly.
- ➡P518

JAN Code

The JAN code is a bar code indicating a number with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be read.



The left JAN code shows the numeral data "4942857117899".

QR Code

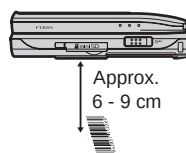
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji/kana and pictograms) or data such as sound and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.



The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D901i".

Notes on scanning code

When Bar Code Reader is started, Camera automatically switches to Macro Mode. Place the out-camera about 6 to 9 cm away from the code to scan.



Scanning code

1 Press **Menu** **6** **JR** **4** **on the stand-by display.**

Bar Code Reader is started.

- During bar code reader stand-by, the following operations are enabled:

- : Switches the Compact light ON ()/OFF (No icon).
 - : Switches between the Standard mode (No icon)/Macro mode ().
- Switch to the Standard mode before scanning large size codes.

2 Scan code.



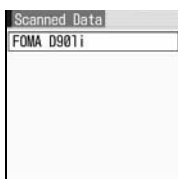
Point the out-camera toward the code to scan it. A confirmation sound is played when scanning ends and the scanned data is displayed.

- If scanned data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When you pause scanning such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon  displayed at the upper right corner changes to .

■ Re-scanning code

- ① Press  or  .

3 Press .



The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When the 5 data has already saved or the memory for data is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved data. Select "Yes" to delete the saved data.

■ Copying text in scanned data

- ① Press  .
- ② Select the start position to copy.
- ③ Select the end position to copy.

Scanning divided QR codes

When data is divided into multiple QR codes, scan the required number (max.16) of QR codes and combine them. To scan QR codes, follow the instructions on the screen.



- Press  or  to cancel scanning of the divided QR codes. Select "Yes" when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned data.

The squares showing the total number of QR codes required for concatenation is displayed. The square completed to scan is indicated in blue, incompleted in gray and last scanned in green.

Remaining number of QR codes required for scanning data/total number of QR codes

INFORMATION

- When the memory for data is not enough follow the instructions on the screen and delete the scanned data saved in FOMA terminal until an available space required for scanning data is recovered.
- Press   on the bar code reading screen and press  or  to switch to the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen. When Bar Code Reader is started from other then the stand-by display, the switching is not available.

Using scanned data

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select scanned data to use.

■ Deleting scanned data

- ① Place the cursor at the scanned data to delete, press    and select "Yes".
 - To delete all scanned data, press   , enter the terminal security code and select "Yes".

3 Place the cursor at the data to add, press (Add new data) or (Update) and press or .

The phonebook registration screen is displayed with the selected data entered.

■ Adding all data to phonebook at one time

- ① Select “Add to phonebook” and press  or .

The phonebook registration screen is displayed. Depending on the data, the name and the reading for it are entered.

■ Sending mail

- ① Select a mail address or “Compose message”.

The mail composition screen is displayed.

- When “Compose message” is selected, the subject and the message are entered depending on the data.

■ Connecting a site or Internet web page

- ① Select URL and select “Yes”.

■ Saving URL as bookmark

- ① Place the cursor at the URL and press   . Or select “Add bookmark”.

- ② Select a folder where the Bookmark is saved to.

- When “Add bookmark” is selected, the site name is saved depending on the data.

■ Starting i-αppli software

- ① Select “Start i-αppli”.

■ Making a voice call or a video-phone call

- ① Select a number for a call, select the items to set and press .

- Customized Call ◀P56

■ Saving still image files

- ① Select a still image file and select “Save”.

- Selecting “Display” displays the still image file.

- ② Select the items to set and press .

- Details on the set items ◀P402

- ③ Select a folder to save the still image.

■ Saving music files

- ① Select a music file and select “Save”.

- Selecting “Play” plays the music file.

- ② Enter the title and press .

The music file is saved in “Data transfer” folder of Melody.

INFORMATION

- Bar Code Reader can be activated while shooting with the camera or from the i-αppli software that supports Bar Code Reader. When Bar Code Reader is activated from i-αppli software, the scanned data is saved and used by the software.
- The file name of the scanned data is defined by scanned date and time + serial file number + file extension (“.jan” for JAN code and “.qr” for QR code) (e.g. “20050415123400.jan” for JAN code scanned at April 15, 2005 12:34). When there are any previously saved data in the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the file name appears as “-----” if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set, and the file name of the data scanned by Bar Code Reader cannot be changed.

i-mode

What's i-mode?	198
Displaying sites	
Displaying sites	204
Reading and operating sites	207
Using My Menu..... [My Menu]	210
Changing your current i-mode password into another number [Change i-mode Password]	211
Displaying Internet web pages	[Internet Connection] 212
Registering web pages and sites for quick browsing	[Bookmark] 213
Saving site contents	[Screen Memo] 218
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading images from sites	[Save Image] 220
Downloading melodies from sites	[i-melody] 222
Downloading Chara-den from sites	222
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	223
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	[i-mode Setting] 227
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	[Receive Message R/F] 230
Displaying Message R/F stored in FOMA terminal	[Message R/Message F] 233
Using certificate	
Operating certificate	237

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services from Sites (Programs), Internet web pages or i-mode Mail by way of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- Sites (Programs) connection

You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games and stand-by images, etc.

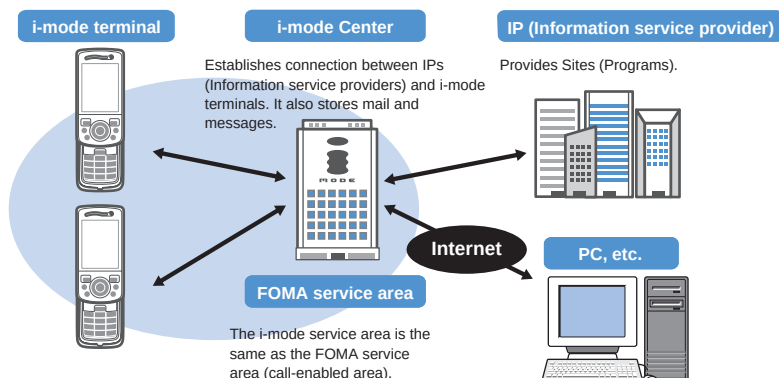
- Internet connection

You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible web pages by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.

- i-mode Mail

You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail, mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

- When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that support carrying over to My Menu in “お知らせ&ヘルプ” of iMenu. ●P199
- i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see “FOMA i-mode User's Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.
- i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest “FOMA i-mode User's Manual”.

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using a simple key sequence and use various online services provided by IPs (Information service providers).

For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs) or “週刊 i ガイド”, etc.

- Sites displaying procedure ●P204



Whole image

Note: The display shown here represents an example. The appearance may differ depending on the settings.

Menu name	Description
マイメニュー (My Menu)	You can record your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ●P210 Pay sites in iMenu are automatically recorded; a total of 45 sites can be recorded.
週刊 i ガイド	The latest site information on new and recommended sites are released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.
メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.
とくするメニュー	Includes enjoyable campaign information, gifts and discount coupon information. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).
i エリア	You can check weather, map and town information in your place or vicinity.
かんたん検索	You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as “Game”, “Stand-by display” etc.
i アプリサーチ	Introduces i-appli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, games, etc.
便利サイトサーチ	Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.
マイボックス	This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.
オプション設定 (Options)	Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.
お知らせ&ヘルプ	Includes information from DoCoMo, operation procedure and rules on use of i-mode.
料金&お申込	You can confirm the fee and payment, change the subscriptions or apply for services.
ENGLISH	iMenu changes to English mode.

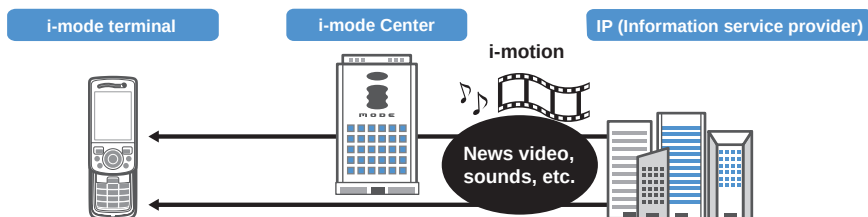
INFORMATION

- You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).
- You may also need to separately subscribe to use services provided by IPs (Information service providers).
- You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if the i-mode icon blinks.
- The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

i-motion

You can download video and/or sound from sites to your i-mode terminal to play or set them for the stand-by display.

- Downloading i-motion ◀P346
- Playing i-motion ◀P366
- Setting to play i-motion automatically ◀P349



- Two methods are available for downloading i-motion: in packets that go through the i-mode Center and digital communication that does not go through the Center.

Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)

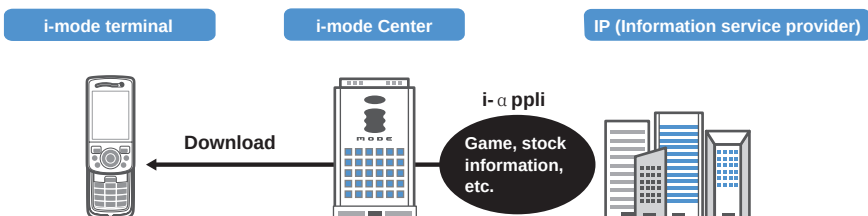
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal for setting as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used for ring tone as well as melodies. (Some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone.)

- Setting Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) ◀P128, P369

i-αppli

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i-αppli software from sites. For example, you can download games to play or you can use i-αppli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because map-related i-αppli software downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading software ◀P322
- Starting software ◀P324
- Automatically starting i-αppli software ◀P335



i-αppli stand-by display

On the i-αppli stand-by display, i-αppli can be used as the stand-by display, which also allows directly receiving mail and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update, using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms, etc.

- Setting i-αppli stand-by display ◀P337

i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-αppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call history or phonebook data), i-αppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-αppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i-αppli DX ◀P320

3D sound

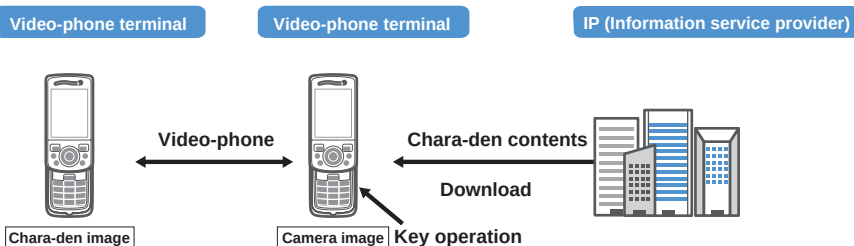
A 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal, using stereo speakers (or stereo earphone set), allows you to create sound that is 3-dimensional or moves around in space and to enjoy realistic i-αppli games, i-motion and ring tone (for contents applicable to 3D sound).

- 3D sound ◀P129

Chara-den

When using video-phone, you can have a character displayed on the other party's video-phone terminal instead of your image, make to move its mouth in response to sounds and make motions by key operation. You can download your favorite character to set for the stand-by display. The recorded image/video of Chara-den can also be set for the stand-by display and can be attached to mail to send (you cannot send image/video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Downloading Chara-den ◀P222
- Setting Chara-den ◀P92, P377
- Recording Chara-den ◀P379
- Checking Chara-den ◀P376
- Operating Chara-den ◀P377



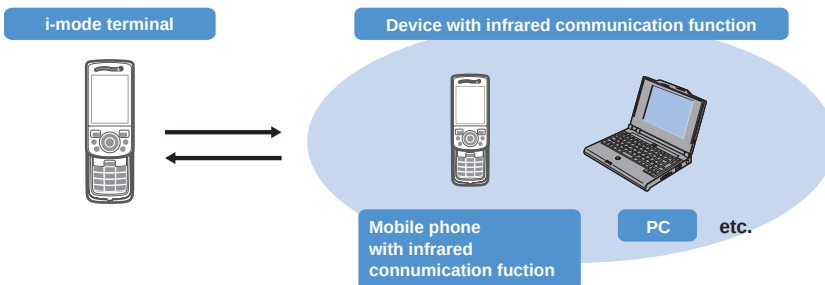
Infrared communication function

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs, etc. that support infrared communication function.*

In addition, taking advantage of infrared communication with i-αppli allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone supporting infrared communication function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

* Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with infrared communication function.

- Using infrared communication ◀P344, P406



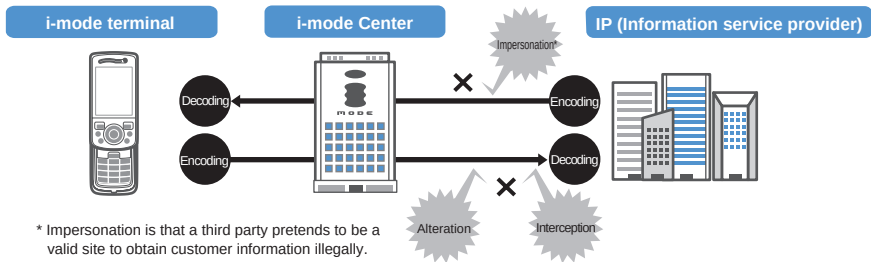
■ SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal customer information such as credit card numbers and street addresses, etc. to be exchanged safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate and the other is to display FirstPass compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display the sites differ depending on the site.

☛P237

- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Message R/F while being connected to the FirstPass center.
- Using the CA certificate saved in your i-mode terminal ☛P237
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass ☛P238



■ UIM operation restriction function

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, a part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and/or i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail, and protects information supplied from IP (Information service provider). When an i-mode terminal is turned on with another or no UIM inserted, this function disables playing or displaying of the obtained files. ☛P38

- Operation restricted files
 - Still image files
 - i-α ppli
 - Chara-den
 - Message R/F
 - Images inserted in Deco-mail text
 - Melody files
 - Video files
 - Screen memos
 - Files attached to i-mode Mail

Note1: This function does not support still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal from external memory.

Note2: This function resets the ring tone, stand-by display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

■ i-melody

You can download your favorite music to your i-mode terminal and use it as ring tone. ☛P222

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animation to your i-mode terminal and use it as the stand-by display or incoming images. ☛P220

■ Message Service

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message Request (Message R)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message Free (Message F)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Message R/Fs reception procedure ●P230, P270
- If you applied to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, “受信する (Receive)” is set for Message F (free) setting by default. Please note that, if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change Message F setting to “受信しない (Not receive)” by yourself.
Note: If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting in “オプション設定” in advance. It is set to “受信しない” by default.

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User's Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

- Message R/Fs are stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the i-mode service area.
- The i-mode Center can store Message R/Fs listed in the table below. Message R/Fs after expiring the maximum storage period are deleted. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/Fs are deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum items stored	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- You can use Check i-mode Message (●P270) to receive Message R/Fs stored in the i-mode Center.

■ トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather forecasts to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request).

Separate application (pay) is required. After application, the site for this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the site from My Menu.

- Reading Message R screen ●P234

■ i-mode password

You need an “i-mode password” to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites to My Menu or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, your password is set to “0000”. Be sure to change it to a unique 4-digit number. ●P211

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

Internet web pages can be connected by entering addresses (URLs) to display i-mode compatible Internet web pages.

- Displaying Internet web pages ●P212

INFORMATION

- Internet web pages not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly. i-mode compatible Internet web pages refer to web pages created using i-mode compatible tags.
- Pages may be displayed differently on a PC.
- Internet web pages with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.

Before using i-mode

- The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet web pages are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet web page cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/Fs, screen memos, i-appli and i-motion) remains for about 1 month with the battery pack removed or empty battery level, but may be erased if the terminal is in such condition for more than 1 month. Because data may be lost due to failure, repair or other handling of i-mode terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- When i-mode terminal is sent for repair, etc., the data you imported using i-mode, i-appli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. You cannot display still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail, screen memos and Message R/Fs when the terminal is turned on with another or no UIM inserted.
- When data with UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the stand-by display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours is inserted or UIM is not inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM is inserted which was used during receiving/downloading the data.

INFORMATION

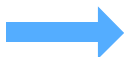
- Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the miniSD memory card. ●P391

If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be transferred and saved to the PC by using the FOMA D series data link software in the attached CD-ROM and FOMA USB cable (optional). ●P550

Displaying sites

You connect to i-mode to view various sites.

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select “ENGLISH”.



- Press  on the i-mode connection screen to stop connection.
- Hold down  for over a second during site display to disconnect i-mode.
- Items with numbers such as  and  can be selected by pressing the numbers corresponding to the items (Direct Key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

2 Select "[3] Menu List".



- Press while accessing the page to stop it.

3 Select an item to view.

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 When you finish viewing the site, press .

5 Select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- To return to iMenu during site display, press and select " Menu".
- When the site requests your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number", the confirmation screen is displayed. When you select "Yes", your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent. The IP (Information service provider) uses "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" that has been sent to identify you for providing the information for you and determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site contents provided by the IP (Information service provider). Since your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent to the IP (Information service provider) via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, gender, etc. will never be disclosed to the IP (Information service provider) with this operation.
- When the site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and press .
- When you display a site including an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:
 - : When Image & Effect Setting is set to not display images or when FOMA terminal is out of service area while receiving an image
 - : When the image data is invalid or cannot be found
 - : When the image cannot be download for incorrect URL

Connecting to SSL page

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection if the date and time setting is not made. (P46)
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on Green UIM (P39). You cannot connect to the site if Blue UIM is inserted.

Connecting to SSL page

When you connect to an SSL page, a screen informing SSL session is started is displayed.

- appears in the upper-right corner of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

■ Displaying certificate during SSL page display

- 1 Press .
- Certificate (P237)

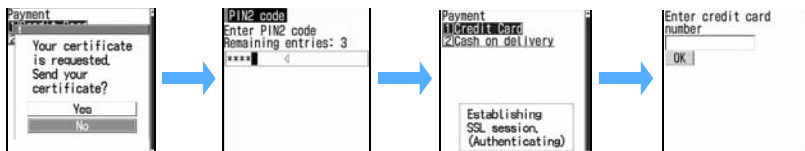
Displaying an ordinary page from SSL page

When displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page, a confirmation screen is displayed.

- Select “Yes” to display ordinary page and  disappears from the upper-right corner of the screen.

Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

When you connect to a FirstPass compatible page, the following screens are displayed:



① Select “Yes”.

The PIN2 code entry screen is displayed. 

② Enter the PIN2 code.

The user certificate is issued and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If site communication safety cannot be confirmed, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect. Select “Yes” to connect or “No” to not connect.
- Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called “certificate” for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. 
- SSL communication 

Reconnecting to the last page displayed [Last Visited URL]

The URL of the site or Internet web page displayed last is recorded. Using Last Visited URL allows you to reconnect quickly to the page displayed last.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The URL of the page visited last is displayed.

- When no last visited URL is recorded, the message informing you that there is no record of last visited URL appears.

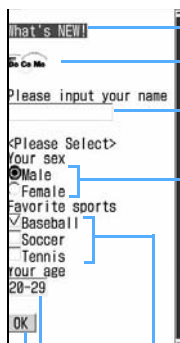
2 Press .

INFORMATION

- Some of the last visited pages may not be displayed. A page different from the last visited one may be displayed.

Selecting linked pages and items

During i-mode connection, the following operations are available depending on sites.



Displaying linked pages

Items used to jump to a related page from the currently displayed page are called link items. Link items are highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

① Press to place the cursor at an item and press .

- Links may be set in some images. Place the cursor at an image (surrounded with a frame) and press to display the linked page.
- Items with numbers such as ① and ② can be selected by pressing the numbers corresponding to the items (Direct Key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

Entering characters

Select an entry field and enter characters.

① Press to place the cursor at an entry field and press .

② Enter characters.

- Available character types and the maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the entry field.
- The entered i-mode password may be masked with “*”.
- The content read by Bar Code Reader can be entered by pressing

on the character entry screen. ●P518

Selecting radio button

You can select one from selections.

: Unselected : Selected

① Press to place the cursor at a radio button and press .

Selecting check box

You can select multiple items from selections.

: Unselected : Selected

① Press to place the cursor at a check box and press .

- Selecting again returns to .

Selecting pulldown menu

With this menu, selections are hidden.

① Press to place the cursor at a pulldown menu and press .

② Select the menu item.

- For some sites, multiple items can be selected by repeating the operation of pressing to place the cursor at an item and pressing . If you press after selecting items, a screen where all selected items are displayed reappears.

Selecting button

You can determine and send page settings to a site or cancel the page settings.

① Press to place the cursor at a button (surrounded with a solid frame) and press .

- The button name differs depending on the site.

INFORMATION

- The information entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus and entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks, screen memos, etc.

Flash function

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites be displayed. An image using Flash (Flash graphics) can be downloaded to i-mode terminal and set as the stand-by display and incoming image.

- Some Flash graphics use the information of your i-mode terminal. To use the terminal information, set "Use saved data" in Image & Effect Setting to "Yes". It is set to "Yes" by default. The information to be used by images are listed below:

• Battery level	• Received signal level	• Time information
• Ring Volume setting	• Select Language setting	• Model information

Flash graphics

- Flash graphics are not displayed when "Not display" is set in Image & Effect Setting. (P228)
- On sites that use Flash graphics, the operations are the same but the indications may be different.
- When saved as screen memo, some Flash graphics may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- When saved as image, some Flash graphics may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The melody of Flash graphics set for the stand-by display or incoming image is not played.
- Even if a Flash graphic is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash graphics that are not correctly operated.
- If an error occurs while playing a Flash graphic, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if  is indicated in the guide row, some Flash graphics may not be operated.
- To play a Flash graphic again, press   .
- Some Flash graphics have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume. To disable sound effects, press    and set "OFF" for Sound effect setting (P228).
- Some Flash graphics vibrate FOMA terminal during play. Note that even if the vibrator is "OFF", FOMA terminal vibrates.
- Sound effects or the vibrator is activated when you play Flash graphics saved in FOMA terminal from Data Box. However, you cannot activate sound effects or the vibrator by selecting an item in the Flash graphics displayed.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing a Flash graphic, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press   to , , , ,  or .
- If the screen is switched to another and redisplayed while playing a Flash graphic, playing of the Flash graphic starts from the beginning.

Displaying next or previous pages

FOMA terminal records history of up to 20 pages. This is called a cache, allowing you to display previous or next pages.

- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (P238).

2 pages before the current page



1 page before the current page



Current page

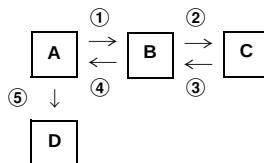


Indicates you can return to the previous pages.

Indicates you can proceed to the next pages.

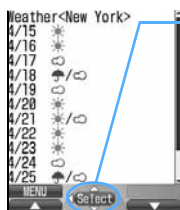
INFORMATION

- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④) and proceed to page D (⑤), the display history of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.
- When you display page B (screen memo) while displaying page A using the submenu and then page C using a link, you can display page A ↔ page B ↔ page C.
- When displaying a site again which is deleted from the history or when displaying a page set to read the latest information, a new page downloaded appears by establishing communication again. However, some pages may establish communication even if the history is recorded.
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all recorded pages are deleted.
- The operation may differ when a Flash graphic is displayed.



Scrolling screen

You can scroll the screen while contents of sites, Internet web pages, received mail or Message R/F are being displayed.



If there are additional lines or selectable link items, ▲ or ▼ is indicated.

- Press (Menu) to scroll the screen. Hold down the button for over a second to scroll continuously.
- Pressing (Select) or (Select) scrolls the screen by a page. Holding down the button for over a second scrolls the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

If page information could not be received correctly, you can perform reload to receive the page information again.

1 Press (Menu) (5) during site display.

The page information is reloaded and the page reappears.

INFORMATION

- If the site could not be displayed because connection was interrupted, etc., you may be able to display the site by reload.

Displaying URL

The URL of the currently displayed site can be displayed.

1 Display a site and press .

The URL of the site is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of URL history, bookmark, i-mode Shortcut or screen memo, press  and select "URL".

My Menu

Using My Menu

You can record frequently accessed sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be recorded in My Menu.
- You need the i-mode password to record sites in My Menu.
- My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, there are certain sites that cannot be carried over to My Menu. In this case, you need to record these sites in My Menu again. You can check the sites that support carrying over to My Menu in "お知らせ & ヘルプ" of iMenu. ●P199
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically recorded in My Menu.
- Only the sites registered in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register Internet web pages, use Bookmark.

Recording sites in My Menu

1 Display a site and select "マイメニュー登録 (Register)". ●P204

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the applicable number or select the applicable item.

2 Select the i-mode password field and enter the i-mode password.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with "*".
- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

3 Select "決定 (OK)".

- 1 Select “**1** My Menu” in iMenu. ➡ P204
- 2 Select a site to display.

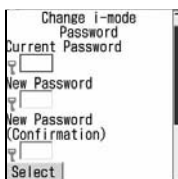
Change i-mode Password

Changing your current i-mode password into another number

You need your i-mode password to record/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service, i-mode pay sites, or make mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default; be sure to change it to another unique number. Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver’s license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

- 1 Select “**4** Options” in iMenu (English) and select “**2** Change i-mode Password”.
- 2 Select Current Password field and enter the i-mode password.



- The entered i-mode password is masked with “* ”.

- 3 Select New Password field and enter a new password.
 - The entered i-mode password is masked with “* ”.
- 4 Select New Password (Confirmation) field and re-enter the password entered in Step 3.
 - The entered i-mode password is masked with “* ”.
- 5 Select “Select”.
 - When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. The screen returns to the i-mode password setting screen when “Re-enter” is selected. Repeat from Step 2.

Displaying Internet web pages

You connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible web pages. You specify Internet web pages by entering the address (URL).

- Internet web pages not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The URL entry screen is displayed.

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter the URL of Internet web page to connect and press .

- Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.
- Press  in the alphabet input mode to enter “/”, “.”, “-”, etc. that are frequently used for URL. In addition, “http://www.”, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com” and “.html” can also be entered by pressing  in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- When operating from a site display, press  and select “Go to location” → “Enter URL”.
- Operations on Internet web page displays are the same as on i-mode site displays. ➡P207
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press  and the message disappears, then the received data is displayed.

Displaying pages using URL history [URL History]

FOMA terminal records history of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use URL History to connect to Internet web pages.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the URL of Internet web page to display.

- When a full URL is not displayed, place the cursor at the URL and press .

■ Deleting URL history

- ① Place the cursor at the URL to delete and press   .
 - To delete all URLs, press    and enter the terminal security code.
- ② Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- To operate from a site display, press  and select “Go to location” → “URL history”.
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL will be overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly [Character Encode]

When characters of sites or Internet web pages are not displayed correctly, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for encoding schemes and structure developed for making characters available on computers. If the character encode is not consistent when sites or Internet web pages are displayed on FOMA terminal, the characters are not displayed correctly.

1 While a site or Internet web page is displayed, press .

- Each time     is pressed, the character encode is switched in the following order: Auto switch → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. If you repeat this operation 5 times, the original screen reappears.
- When you display a site or Internet web page, Auto switch is set.

INFORMATION

- Some characters may not be displayed correctly even if Step1 is repeated.
- Changing the character encode when characters are displayed correctly may not display the characters correctly.

Bookmark

Registering web pages and sites for quick browsing

If you frequently browse the same page of a site such as the weather forecast for a specific area or the price of certain stock, you can register it in Bookmark for convenient access later. You can quickly display a site or Internet web page by only selecting the registered bookmark.

- You can register up to 100 bookmarks.
- You can register an URL of up to 256 one-byte characters. When the URL exceeds the maximum length, the site cannot be registered.
- Some sites may not be able to be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

Sites are registered in one of 20 Bookmark folders.

1 Display the site to register and press .

2 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.

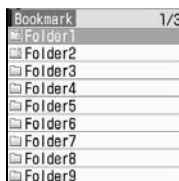
INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo list, screen memo display or URL history list, press  and select "Add bookmark". You can also perform the same operation after displaying the URL history list during site display by pressing  and selecting "Go to location" → "URL history".
- When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number of saved items, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to be overwritten.

Displaying site or web page from Bookmark

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



- Icon definitions:
 : No bookmark
 : Bookmark present

3 Select the bookmark to display.

- For the icon definitions, see "Registering as i-mode Shortcut". ➡P215

■ Checking URL

- ① Place the cursor at the bookmark to check URL and press .

INFORMATION

- To operate from a site display, press  and select "Bookmark" → "Display".

Renaming Bookmark folder

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to change the name and press  .

3 Enter a folder name and press .

- Up to 8 two-byte or 16 one-byte characters can be entered.

Renaming Bookmark title

- This operation does not change the URL of registered bookmarks.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to change the title and press .

3 Enter a title and press .

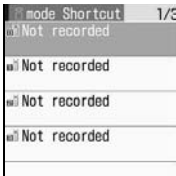
- Up to 12 two-byte or 24 one-byte characters can be entered.
- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed as title.
- When the title or URL is longer than 10 two-byte characters or 21 one-byte characters, the first 9 two-byte characters or 19 one-byte characters followed by "..." are displayed as title.

Connecting to site using simple key sequence [i-mode Shortcut]

If you register a bookmark as i-mode Shortcut, you can quickly display the site or Internet web page from the stand-by display.

Registering as i-mode Shortcut

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to register as i-mode Shortcut and press  .
- 3 Select the registration destination.



- The icon number ( - ) corresponds to the dial keys ( to ) used to display sites.
- On the bookmark list, the icon for the registered bookmark switches from  to  - .

■ Canceling i-mode Shortcut

- ① Place the cursor at i-mode Shortcut bookmark to cancel in the bookmark list and press  .

INFORMATION

- You can display the list of i-mode Shortcut bookmarks by pressing    on the stand-by display. Place the cursor at the bookmark, press   and select "Yes" to cancel i-mode Shortcut registration.

Displaying site using i-mode Shortcut key [Display i-mode Shortcut]

- 1 Press the dial key ( to ) for an i-mode Shortcut number on the stand-by display and press .
- Displaying sites from the i-mode Shortcut list
 - ① Press    on the stand-by display.
 - ② Select an i-mode Shortcut bookmark.

Deleting bookmark

- You cannot delete the Bookmark folders.

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.
 - Deleting all bookmarks
 - ① Press   on the folder list.
 - ② Enter the terminal security code and go to Step 3.
 - Deleting all bookmarks in a folder
 - ① Place the cursor at a folder and press  .
 - ② Enter the terminal security code and go to Step 3.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to delete and press .

■ Deleting selected bookmarks

- ① Press    and select bookmarks.
 - Press  to select or cancel a bookmark and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Deleting all bookmarks in a folder

- ① Press   .
- ② Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- If you delete an i-mode Shortcut bookmark, the i-mode Shortcut registration is also canceled.

Moving/copying bookmark

Saved bookmarks can be moved to other folders or copied to the miniSD memory card. Bookmarks can also be transferred using infrared communication.

Example Moving a bookmark

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to move and press .

■ Moving selected bookmarks

- ① Press    and select bookmarks.
 - Press  to select or cancel a bookmark and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Copying a bookmark to miniSD memory card

- ① Press    .
- ② Select “Yes”.

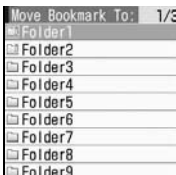
Copying data to miniSD memory card ➡P392

■ Copying all bookmarks to miniSD memory card (backup)

- ① Press    .
- ② Enter the terminal security code.
- ③ Select “Yes”.

Copying data to miniSD memory card (backup) ➡P394

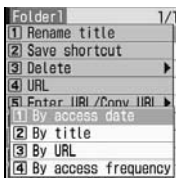
3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to.



The bookmark list is temporally sorted. All folders are the target of sorting.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press   and perss  to .



INFORMATION

- When the Bookmark display is closed, sorting returns to “By access date”.
- When sorted by title, if two-byte, one-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URL displays without title are mixed in titles, they may not follow the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Saving screen memo

- The maximum file size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images, etc. in the screen.

1 Display the site to save as a screen memo and press .

- For a site with title, the title is automatically saved. If a site has no title, the screen memo is saved as "Untitled".

INFORMATION

- When the memory for screen memos is not enough or the maximum number of screen memos is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the screen memo saved in FOMA terminal. To save screen memo, follow the instructions on the screen and delete screen memos in FOMA terminal until space required for saving screen memo is available.
- Protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Displaying screen memo

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the screen memo to display.

- Operations on screen memo displays are the same as on site displays with a few exceptions.
 - ➡P207
- Icon definitions:
 - : Ordinary screen memo
 - : Protected screen memo
- Protecting screen memo ➡P219

INFORMATION

- To operate from a site display, press  and select "Screen memo" → "Display".
- To play a Flash graphic again during screen memo display, press  and "Display" → "Retry".

Renaming screen memo title

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to change the title and press .

3 Enter a title and press .

- Up to 12 two-byte or 24 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, "Untitled" is displayed on the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

- To rename from a screen memo display, press  and select "Rename title".

Protecting screen memo

- Up to 50 screen memos can be protected.

Example Protecting a screen memo

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to protect and press   .

- On the screen memo list, the icon for the protected screen memo switches from  to .

■ Protecting selected screen memos

① Press    and select screen memos.

- Press  to select or cancel a screen memo and press  to select or cancel all.
Selecting all screen memos is not possible when the number of unprotected screen memos being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of a screen memo

① Place the cursor at the screen memo to cancel protection and press   .

■ Canceling protection of selected screen memos

① Press    and select screen memos.

- Press  to select or cancel a screen memo and press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of all screen memos

① Press   .

INFORMATION

- All of the protected data are deleted when Delete All Data is performed. ➡P459
- To operate from a screen memo display, press  and select "Protect". To cancel protection, press  and select "Release".

Deleting screen memo

- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Even when you delete all screen memos, protected screen memos are not deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Example Deleting a screen memo

- Press   on the stand-by display.
- Place the cursor at the screen memo to delete and press    .
 - Deleting selected screen memos**
 - Press    and select screen memos.
 - Press  to select or cancel a screen memo and press  to select or cancel all.
 - Press .
 - Deleting all screen memos**
 - Press   .
 - Enter the terminal security code.
- Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- To delete from a screen memo display, press  and select “Delete”.

Save Image

Downloading images from sites

Images or frames can be saved from sites, mail or i-appli to FOMA terminal. Saved images can be viewed with My Picture (Image) or set for the stand-by display.

- The maximum file size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- You can save images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format.

- Display a site containing the image to save and press  .
- Select the image to save.

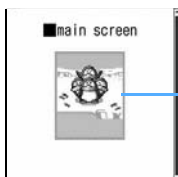


Image is surrounded with a frame.

3 Select each item to set.

- You cannot change file restrictions for image files downloaded from sites.
- For an image which is prohibited to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal ("File restricted" is displayed), you cannot change the item settings except for display name.
- Setting items ➡ P402

■ Setting display name, file name and comment

① Select an item to set and enter display name, file name and comment.

- Display name can contain up to 36 two-byte or one-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_". However, "." cannot be used as the first character of file name.
- Comment can contain up to 100 two-byte or one-byte characters.

■ Using as frame and stamp

① Select the item to set and press or .

4 Press and select the folder to save the image to.

- Frame or stamp images are saved in "Item" folder. ➡ P352
- Press to display the menu list for setting images, including setting for the stand-by display, etc. ➡ P353

INFORMATION

- You can save an image with the same display name and file name for the saved image file.
- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- When displaying a site including an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1224 x 1632 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame. Images with the sizes exceeding 210 x 210 cannot be used as stamp. Still images in GIF format and Flash graphics cannot be used as frame or stamp.
- When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the images saved in FOMA terminal. To save image, follow the instructions on the screen and delete images in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving image is recovered.
 - Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing . ➡ P402

Downloading melodies from sites

Melodies (compatible with i-melody) can be downloaded from sites and saved to FOMA terminal. Saved melodies can be played with Melody or used as ring tone.

1 Display a site containing the melody to download and select the melody.

- You can stop downloading by pressing .

2 Select "Save".

- Select "Play" to play and check the melody. The melody play screen is displayed and the melody is played. ➡P385
- Select "Back" to cancel saving. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select "No".

3 Press .

The downloaded melody is saved in "mode" folder of Melody. ➡P384

- Enter a name to set display name. Up to 25 two-byte or 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not be played correctly.
- When a melody is played in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play it. Select "Yes" to play at the ring alert volume set.
- When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the melodies saved in FOMA terminal. To save melody, follow the instructions on the screen and delete melodies in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving melody is recovered.
 - Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing . ➡P402

Downloading Chara-den from sites

You can download and save your favorite Chara-den to FOMA terminal in addition to preinstalled Chara-den.

- You cannot save the downloaded Chara-den while recording Chara-den.

1 Display a site containing the Chara-den to download and select Chara-den.

- You can stop downloading by pressing .

2 Select "Save".

- Select "Display" to check the Chara-den before saving.
- Select "Back" to cancel saving. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select "No".

3 Press .

Save Chara-den
Display name
Dr. Monkey
Comment

The downloaded Chara-den is saved in “ mode” folder of Chara-den.

➡P376

- Enter a name to set display name. Up to 36 characters can be entered regardless of whether one-byte or two-byte.
- Enter a comment to set comment. Up to 100 characters can be entered regardless of whether one-byte or two-byte.

INFORMATION

- If preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, “My D-style”. ➡P328
- When the memory for Chara-den is not enough or the maximum number of Chara-den is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete Chara-den saved in FOMA terminal. To save Chara-den, follow the instructions on the screen and delete Chara-den in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving Chara-den is recovered.
 - Before deletion, Chara-den can be displayed by pressing  on the Chara-den deletion screen and detail information can be viewed by pressing . ➡P402

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone number, mail address or URL is displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select it to make a voice call (Phone To)/video-phone call (AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To) or connect to a site (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available in certain sites.

1 Display a site and select a phone number, mail address or URL.

- Phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs can be selected only when the cursor can be placed over.

■ Phone To (AV Phone To)

The screen for setting Customized Call is displayed.

① **Select each item for Customized Call and set.** ➡P56

② **Press  and select “Yes”.**

- Phone numbers of up to 26 digits (or 27 digits for the number beginning with “+”) can be selected.

■ Mail To

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① **Compose and send the i-mode Mail.** ➡P249

- Short Message (SMS) cannot be composed.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, Mail To function may not be available.
- Mail addresses of up to 50 characters can be selected.

■ Web To

You are connected to the selected site.

- URLs of up to about 2,000 characters can be selected.

Copying URL

You copy URL from the currently displayed site or screen memo. Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen or phonebook registration screen, etc.

- Copied characters are kept until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be saved. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved characters.

Example Copying URL of a site

1 Display the URL of a site and press  . 

2 Select the start position of the copying range and select the end position.

- Press  before specifying the start position to select all characters.
- Press  to specify the start position again.
- Press  or  after specifying the start position to move the cursor to the beginning or end of the characters.

3 Display the character entry screen to insert the data and then paste the characters. 

INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of URL history, i-mode Shortcut or screen memo, press  and select "Copy URL". When operating from the bookmark list, press  and select "Enter URL/Copy URL" → "Copy URL". When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.
- To copy the URL to mail during site display, press  and select "Compose message". The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the displayed site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone number and mail address in phonebook [Add to Phonebook]

If a phone number or mail address is displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), you can register it in the phonebook.

- You may be able to register the data other than displayed item in certain sites.
- If characters other than "0 to 9", "#", "x" and "+" are included in the phone number, delete these characters when registering.

Registering new data

Example Registering a phone number or mail address displayed on site screen

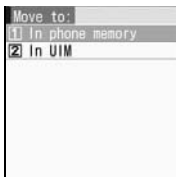
1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address.

- You can register only a highlighted phone number or mail address.

2 Place the cursor at the phone number or mail address to register and press

  .

3 Press or .



4 Set the name, etc. and register the item.

- The selected phone number or mail address is already registered.
- Registering data in phonebook ➡ P104, P108

INFORMATION

- When operating from a screen memo display, press  and select "Phonebook" → "Add to phonebook", and when operating from the Message R/F view screen, press  and select "Record" → "Add to phonebook".

Adding data to existing phonebook entry

- You need to check the registered data in the phonebook editing screen since the registered data may be changed.

Example Registering additionally a phone number or mail address displayed on site screen

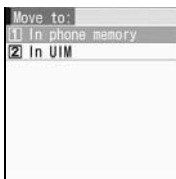
1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address.

- You can register only a highlighted phone number or mail address.

2 Place the cursor at the phone number or mail address to register and press

  .

3 Press or .



4 Select the phonebook entry to update.

5 Check the contents and register the item.

- The selected phone number or mail address is registered.
- Registering data in phonebook ➡ P104, P108

INFORMATION

- When operating from a screen memo display, press  and select "Phonebook" → "Update phonebook", and when operating from the Message R/F view screen, press  and select "Record" → "Update phonebook".
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Registering URL in phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list.

Registering new data

Example Registering data from the bookmark list

- 1 Press**   **on the stand-by display and select a folder.**
- 2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to register and press**   .
- 3 Set the name, etc. and register the item.**
 - Display Other screen by pressing , and you can check the URL.
 - Registering data in phonebook ➡P104

INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo list, press  and select "Phonebook" → "Add to phonebook".

Adding data to existing phonebook entry

Example Registering additionally data from the bookmark list

- 1 Press**   **on the stand-by display and select a folder.**
- 2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to register and press**   .
- 3 Select the phonebook entry to update.**
- 4 Check the contents and register the item.**
 - Display Other screen by pressing , and you can check the URL.
 - Registering data in phonebook ➡P104

INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo list, press  and select "Phonebook" → "Update phonebook".
- When a URL has been displayed from a site (➡P210), the URL cannot be saved.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making i-mode settings

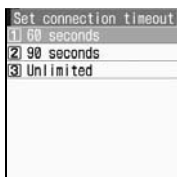
Setting connection time out [Connection Timeout Setting]

Default 60 seconds

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If connection is not normally established, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation to interrupt.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to .



• To not set the connection timeout, press .

INFORMATION

- Even if you set the connection timeout to "Unlimited", connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions, etc.

Changing i-mode host [ISP Connection Communication]

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

About ISP connection communication

You can connect to the various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee when connected to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Note: You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details of service (such as site, Internet connection, mail function, etc.).
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit. Setting to show/hide caller ID
☛P494
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the user host to edit and press .

■ Restoring settings for using i-mode

① Select “ mode (FOMA Card)” and go to Step 6.

■ Changing to the previously set host

① Select the host and go to Step 6.

3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Select each item to set and press .

- Host name can contain up to 8 two-byte or 16 one-byte characters.
- Access point can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- Host address can contain up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- You can delete all contents entered by pressing .

5 Select the edited host.

6 Press .

Setting image display, lighting and sound [Image & Effect Setting]

Default Image: Display Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes
Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON

You can set image, lighting and sound effect (when playing Flash graphics) when a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc. is displayed.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

- Image** : Specifies whether to display images.
- When “Not display” is set, “Animation” and “Use saved data” cannot be set.
- Animation** : Specifies whether to display animation.
- Use saved data** : Specifies whether to use data saved in FOMA terminal for displaying Flash graphics.
- Set lighting** : Sets how the display and keys are illuminated.
- When “Terminal settings” is set, the setting in Display Light () applies.
 - When “Always on” is set, lighting for the display and keys is on while a site, etc. is displayed.
- Sound effect setting** : Specifies whether to play Flash sounds.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- When operating from a site display, press  and select "Display" → "Set image& effect".
- Images may not be displayed correctly even when you set "Display" for Image.
- If "Not display" is set for Image, no image or Flash graphics are displayed.  is indicated in the position of the image.
- If "Not display" is set for Animation, the first image of the animation is displayed. Setting "Not display" also plays Flash graphics.
- For Message R/F, you can set display/not display of images inserted in the message. This settings do not apply to images attached as attached file. Sound effect setting ON/OFF does not have effect on Message R/F, either.
- If "Yes" is set for "Use saved data" in Image & Effect Setting, the information such as battery level, received signal level, time, Ring Volume setting, Select Language setting, and terminal model may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.

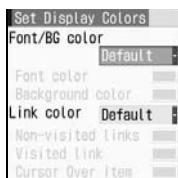
Setting colors to display site [Display Color Setting]

Default Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default

You can set display color used to display sites or screen memos.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select Font/BG color field and press .



- To choose not to specify the font/background color, press  and go to Step 5.

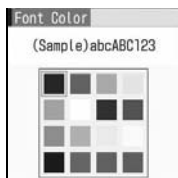
Font/BG color : Sets the color of font/background.

- Setting "Default" disables "Font color" and "Background color" settings.

Link color : Sets the link color.

- Setting "Default" disables "Non-visited links", "Visited link" and "Cursor Over Item" settings.

3 Select Font color field and select a color.



- Sample is displayed in the selected color.
- Default setting for Font color is black. Select from 16 colors.

4 Select Background color field and select a color.

- Default setting for Background color is white. Select from 16 colors.

5 Follow Step 2 to 4 to set the link color.

- Default setting for the link color is blue for "Non-visited links", red for "Visited link" and white for "Cursor Over Item".

INFORMATION

- The link color (Visited link) is effective when the linked screen is recorded in the history.
- Depending on the color you set, characters may become difficult or impossible to see in some sites. In that case, change the color setting.

Receive Message R/F

When Message R/F is received

When Message R/F is received, you are informed of it by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, or multi-indicator. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 Message R and up to 50 Message F can be saved.

1 Receive Message R/F.

Blinks while Message R/F is received.

Blinking.
Reception completed.



 : Unread Message R exists.

 : Unread Message F exists.

The reception result is displayed as ticker.

The number of received Message R/F is displayed.

 and  or  blink and "Receiving messages..." is displayed.

Message R/F ring alert sounds, the multi-indicator flashes and the reception result screen is displayed.

- You can stop reception by pressing  on the receiving screen.

■ If a message not specified with Auto Display arrives while the stand-by display is displayed or if a message arrives when "Not display" is set

If you do not press any keys for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring alert stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. You can also return to the previous screen by pressing .

■ Reading received Message R/F immediately

- ① Press  or  on the reception result screen.

■ When reception fails

"×" is indicated after "Message R" or "Message F".

■ If a message specified with Auto Display arrives while the stand-by display is displayed

If you do nothing, the latest unread Message R/F contents are displayed before the screen returns to the one that was displayed prior to reception from the reception result screen.

- During Multitask, auto display is unavailable.

■ Checking for Message R/F

Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when it arrives while FOMA terminal is out of the service area or turned OFF. Checking for Message R/F is the same as for i-mode Mail. P270

INFORMATION

- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority.
☛P302
- While receiving Short Message (SMS), Message R/F cannot be received. Note that, after receiving Short Message (SMS), Message R/F is not automatically received.
- When FOMA terminal receives a Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- When there is not enough space available to store Message R/Fs or the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, the oldest Message R/F is overwritten. However, unread Message R/Fs and protected Message R/Fs are not overwritten. Be sure to protect Message R/Fs you want to keep.
 - If the message cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread Message R/Fs and protected Message R/Fs, reception of Message R/F is stopped. On the screen,  or  is indicated.
☛P27
- If there are remaining Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, ,  or  (☛P26) is indicated. Note that, sometimes it is not indicated even when there are Message R/Fs. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored, the icon changes to ,  or . The number of messages stored in the i-mode Center ☛P203
- To retry receiving Message R/F that failed to be received in the process, perform Check i-mode Message for Message R/F. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, however, display unread Message R/F, delete unnecessary Message R/F, cancel protection, etc. before retrieval.

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 Press or on the reception result screen.



- Select "Mail" to display i-mode Mail.
- The received Message R is saved in "Message Request" and the received Message F is saved in "Message Free".

2 Select a folder, and select a Message R/F.

- When a melody is attached, it is played automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ☛P300
- Reading Message R/F screen ☛P234

When Message R/F is received, the contents of unread Message R/F can be displayed automatically. You can set which message takes precedence when receiving both of Message R/F.

Example Displaying only Message R

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Displaying only Message F

① Press .

■ Displaying Message R first

① Press .

■ Displaying Message F first

① Press .

■ Not displaying Message R/F automatically

① Press .

INFORMATION

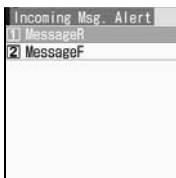
- When Auto Display is set, the contents of the received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the screen returns from the Message R/F reception result screen to the screen that was displayed prior to receiving message.
- The contents of Message R/F are displayed for about 15 seconds. If you do not press any key during auto display, Message R/F is saved in unread status.
- If you display mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen, Auto Display is not performed. In addition, if you receive Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, Auto Display is not performed.
- Auto Display is available only when the stand-by display is displayed.

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F [Incoming Msg. Alert]

Default Select ring alert: Melody/メロディ (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Pattern8
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  or .



3 Select each item to set.

Select ring alert : Sets the sound of ring alert. Melody or movie ringtone can be selected.

Incoming msg. lighting

: Sets the flashing pattern of the multi-indicator.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of the vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring alert within the range of 1 to 30 seconds.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- Even if you set "Sync melody" for Incoming msg. lighting or Set vibrate alert, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.
- Settings in Incoming Msg. Alert and Sound Setting are interlocked. When the ring alert is changed in Incoming Msg. Alert, Sound Setting is changed similarly.

Message R/Message F

Displaying Message R/F stored in FOMA terminal

- If received unread Message R/F exists,  or  is displayed on the stand-by display.

Example Displaying a Message R

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ **Displaying Message F**

① Press   .

2 Select the Message R to display.

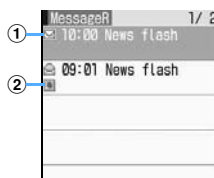
INFORMATION

- When "Auto play" is set in Message Attachment, displaying Message R/F with an attached melody plays the melody automatically at the ring alert volume set. Press  or  to stop playback.
- When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.
 - Images can be stored in FOMA terminal. The operation procedure is the same as for saving images from sites. ➡P220
 - If you could not receive the image, you can try again. ➡P234
 - If no image can be received, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display image on a site. ➡P205
 - You cannot delete images in the message.

Reading Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

■ Reading Message R/F list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Message R/F list screen. Reception date/time and subject are displayed in the message list field.

• Icon definitions:

① Status icon

: Unread

: Read

: Protected

② Attachment icon

: Image

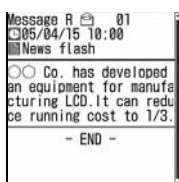
: Image + melody

: Melody

: File error

• In reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date and time is displayed on the other day.

■ Reading Message R/F view screen



Status icon, attachment icon and Message R/F number are displayed at the top of the Message R/F view screen.

• Icon definitions:

: Reception date and time

: Subject

• You can display previous/next Message R/F by pressing .

INFORMATION

● When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

- Handling of attachments is the same as for i-mode Mail. For details, see the indicated reference page in the table below.

Type	Icon	Page
Image		P273
Melody		P276

● You can select a phone number or mail address on the view screen to register in the phonebook. In addition, URL can also be registered in Bookmark. ➡P213, P224

● You can make a call, send i-mode Mail or display a site using the phone number, mail address or URL on the view screen. ➡P223

Reloading images in Message R/F [Reload]

Any unreceived image in Message R/F text can be reloaded.

- If "Not display" is set for image in Image & Effect Setting, images cannot be received even if reload is attempted. ➡P228
- Some images may not be displayed even if reload is attempted.

1 Display the Message R/F list. ➡P233

2 Select a Message R/F.

-  indicates the existence of unreceived image data.

3 Press .

The image is loaded.

Protecting Message R/F [Protect Message]

- Up to 50 Message R and up to 25 Message F can be protected.
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a Message R/F

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to protect and press .

The Message R/F is protected and the status icon changes from  to .

■ Protecting selected Message R/Fs

① Press and select Message R/Fs.

- Press  to select or cancel a message and press  to select or cancel all. Selecting all Message R/Fs is not possible when the number of unprotected Message R/F being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of a Message R/F

① Place the cursor at the Message R/F to cancel protection and press .

■ Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs

① Press and select Message R/Fs.

- Press  to select or cancel a message and press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of all Message R/Fs

① Press .

INFORMATION

- All of the protected data are deleted when Delete All Data is performed. 
- When operating from the Message R/F view screen, press  and select "Protect". To cancel, press  and select "Release protection".

Deleting Message R/F [Delete Message]

- Protected Message R/F cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Example Deleting a Message R/F

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to delete and press .

■ Deleting only read Message R/Fs

- ① Press   .

■ Deleting selected Message R/Fs

- ① Press    and select Message R/Fs.
- Press  to select or cancel a message and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Deleting all Message R/Fs

- ① Press    and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the Message R/F view screen, press  and select “Delete”.

Selecting type of Message R/F to display [Display by Type]

Example Selecting display type for Message R

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Press .

3 Press to .



INFORMATION

- Exiting the Message R/F list returns to “Display all” display.
- Protected Message R/F is not displayed when you select “Display read only”.

Operating certificate

Perform the operation of the certificate required for the SSL communication.

Displaying certificate and setting certificate validity [Certificate Setting]

Displaying certificate

- When the user certificate has not been downloaded, "User certificate" is not displayed.
- When Blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, "DoCoMo Cert" or "User certificate" is not displayed.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select the certificate to display.

INFORMATION

- CA (Certification Authority) certificate
 - ... A certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate
 - ... A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites and saved on Green UIM in advance.
- User certificate
 - ... A certificate which is needed to connect to the FirstPass compatible sites to be downloaded and saved on Green UIM. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate.
- Certificate contents displayed
 - User
 - CN= ... (Common Name) Server name, Administrator name or Discrimination number
 - O= ... (Organization) Company name, etc.
 - C= ... (Country) Country name
 - Issued by
 - CN= ... (Common Name) Server name, Administrator name or Discrimination number
 - OU= ... (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company
 - O= ... (Organization) Company name, etc.
 - Expiration date
 - Serial number
- For a certificate with the user, issuer and/or expiration date items left blank, only their item names are displayed.

Setting certificate validity

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the certificate to set and press .

- Press  to switch On/Off (valid/invalid).

3 Press .

The certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

- When a connected site requests the user certificate, a message “Your certificate is requested. Send your certificate?” is displayed.

Setting FirstPass [Certificate Download]

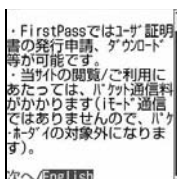
The user certificate can be requested or downloaded from the FirstPass center.

- Unavailable with Blue UIM.
- Set the date and time when connecting to the FirstPass center. ●P46
- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

Requesting issue of certificate

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select “English”.



3 Select “Request your certificate”.



Invalidating the issued certificate

- ① Select “Other settings”.
- ② Select “Revoke your certificate”.
- ③ Select “Yes”.
- ④ Enter the PIN2 code.
- ⑤ Select “Continue”.
- ⑥ Select “Continue”.
- ⑦ Select “Continue”.

4 Select “Continue”.



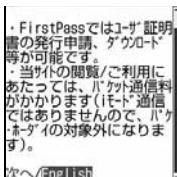
5 Enter the PIN2 code.

The completion screen is displayed and the user certificate is issued.

- PIN2 code ●P152

Downloading certificate

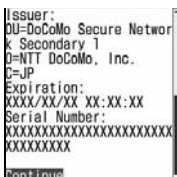
- 1 Press    on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select “English”.



- 3 Select “Download your certificate”.



- 4 Select “Continue”.



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ●P237

INFORMATION

- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is saved on Green UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.
- If FirstPass PC software is installed in a PC from the attached CD-ROM, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. See “FirstPassManual” in the attached CD-ROM for details. To view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated web site (communication fee is separately required for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated web site for details.
- Please note that packet communication fee when connected to the FirstPass center is not included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass is possible to be used for Internet communication from the FOMA terminal and for Internet communication in the condition the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- Before requesting a user certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass Usage Note" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code. ➡P152
- All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can have the user certificate nullified at a DoCoMo Shop.
- In no circumstances shall DoCoMo be put under any obligation by or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Changing certificate host [Certificate Host]

Default Host: DoCoMo

If you use services from other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

- You cannot make this setting during i-mode connection.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select HOST field and press .



- Press  and go to Step 5 to restore settings for connecting to FirstPass.

3 Select User host field and enter the connection destination.

- User host can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.

4 In the same way as Step 3, enter User host URL.

- User host URL can contain up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters.

5 Press .

Mai

FOMA terminal mail function	242
Displaying Mail menu	[Mail Menu] 249

Composing i-mode Mail

Composing and sending i-mode Mail	[Compose Message] 249
Composing and sending Deco-mail	[Deco-mail] 253
Attaching files	[Attachment] 260
Using mail templates	262
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	[Save Mail] 265
Composing mail quickly	[Quick Mail] 266

Receiving and handling i-mode Mail

Receiving i-mode Mail	[Mail Auto Receive] 267
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	[Receive Option] 269
Checking for mail	[Check i-mode Message] 270
Replying to received i-mode Mail	[Reply to Mail] 271
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	[Forward Mail] 272
Displaying and saving attached still image	[Display/Save Image] 273
Downloading i-motion from i-motion Mail	[i-motion Mail] 274
Playing and saving attached melody	[Play/Save Melody] 276
Deleting attachment	[Delete Attachment] 277
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	[Inbox/Outbox] 278
Useful functions of mail	290

Setting mail

Setting mail function of FOMA terminal	[Mail Setting] 292

Using chat mail

Composing and sending chat mail	[Chat Mail] 303

Using Short Message (SMS)

Composing and sending Short Message (SMS)	[Compose SMS] 310
When Short Message (SMS) is received	[Receive SMS] 312
Checking whether there is Short Message (SMS) present	[Check SMS] 314
Setting Short Message (SMS)	[SMS Setting] 314
Saving Short Message (SMS) in UIM	[Save SMS to UIM] 315

FOMA terminal mail function

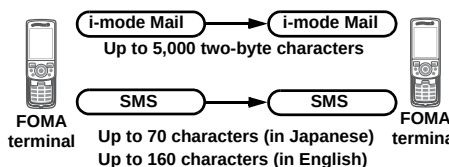
FOMA terminal provides two mail functions: i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS).

- You need to subscribe to use i-mode Mail.
- You can use Short Message (SMS) without subscribing to i-mode.

Sending/receiving mail

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal

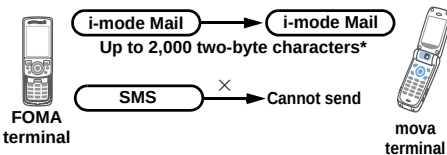
You can use both i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS).



FOMA terminal → mova terminal

The i-mode Mail function is used for message transmission from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.

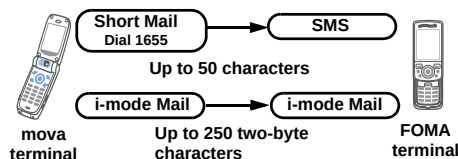
Short Message (SMS) cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.



* The limit differs according to the settings of mova terminal.

mova terminal → FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal can receive i-mode Mail and Short Mail sent from mova terminal. Short Mail is received as a Short Message (SMS).



Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Short Mail cannot be sent from FOMA terminal. Even when you dial 1655, Short Mail cannot be sent.
- FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as a Short Message (SMS).

When you subscribe to i-mode, not only you can exchange mail between i-mode terminals (including mova) but also you can send and receive e-mail via the Internet.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows.

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

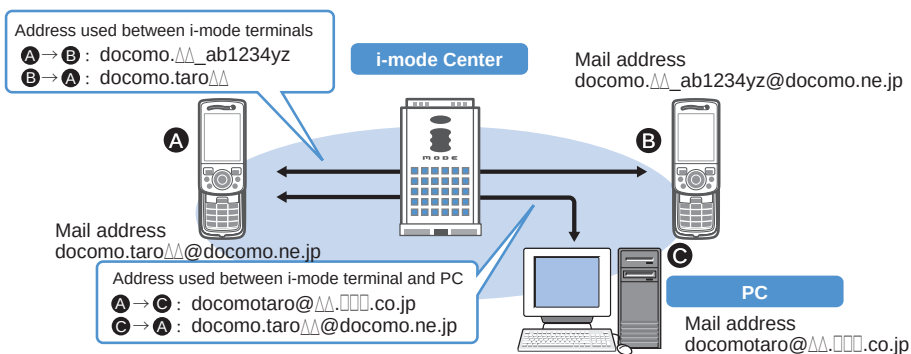
The part of the address preceding the symbol @ is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234_789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

- **How to check your mail address (See “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode for details.)**

iMenu → ENGLISH → [4]Options → [1]Mail Settings → Confirm Mail Address

- During mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova), mail can be sent only by the part preceding the symbol @ in the address.
- When receiving e-mail from a PC, the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp is used.



- Mail transmission procedure ➡P249
- Mail reception procedure ➡P267

Receiving selected mail

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ➡P269

To select the mail to receive, you need to set Receive Option Setting to “ON” in advance. ➡P297

Setting mail

The settings for mail are shown below:

Setting procedure

iMenu → ENGLISH → [4]Options → [1]Mail Settings → [Each settings]

- For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing mail address [Change Mail Address]

For example, you can change the part preceding the symbol @ to another address like “docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”.

Registering secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Register a Secret Code]

When you use the phone number address, a secret code (4 digits) can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

■ Resetting mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Reset Mail Address]

You can use "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" as your mail address.

■ Checking mail address [Confirm Mail Address]

You can check the currently set mail address.

■ Receiving/rejecting specified mail

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following method:

① Receiving mail from specified domains

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) → Receive Mail from Selected Domains]

- You can receive only the mail through the specified provider(s) out of au, Vodafone, TU-KA and DDI Pocket.
- Of the mail through providers other than above, those from the specified domain(s) are received.

Note: Mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charges notification and M-stage visual net are all received.

② Receiving/rejecting mail from specified addresses

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings → Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail]

- Of all received mail, you receive/reject only those from the specified address.

③ Receiving/rejecting only i-mode Mail

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) → Receive only i-mode mail, Reject only i-mode mail]

- You receive (reject mail through Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode terminals.

④ Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova) in a single day are rejected. The default setting is "Reject" and you do not need to make any setting to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with 未承諾広告※)

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without recipients' consent that are marked with " 未承諾広告※ " at the beginning of the subject can be accepted/rejected. The default setting is "Reject" and you do not need to make any setting to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告※ (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

Note: Only one of "Receive Mail from Selected Domains", "Receive Selected Mail", "Reject Selected Mail", "Receive only i-mode mail" and "Reject only i-mode mail" can be set at a time.

⑥ Rejecting Short Messages (SMS)

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings]

- You can set or confirm settings to reject all Short Messages (SMS) or reject only Short Messages (SMS) with hide caller ID.

■ Checking current settings of mail [Confirm Settings]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

■ Restricting mail size [Limit Mail Size]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

■ Suspending i-mode Mail function [Suspend Mail]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent or received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	Two-byte characters (Kanji, Hiragana, Pictograms, etc.)	One-byte characters (Alphanumeric, Katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	—	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

INFORMATION

- The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes) but the sent/received number of characters may be smaller depending on the size of any attachments.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, " / " or " // " is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. Any attachments sent other than i-shot are deleted.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when power of your i-mode terminal is turned OFF, the terminal is out of the service area, etc., or Receive Option Setting is "ON", i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center.

Mail stored in the i-mode Center is re-transmitted a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval.

You can also set to select i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and receive.

INFORMATION

- The maximum number of i-mode Mail items and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum items stored	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 (up to about 2 MB)	720 hours

- i-mode Mail that exceeds the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the size of the i-mode Mail. When the maximum number of items that can be stored is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts i-mode Mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time,  or  is indicated on your i-mode terminal. When Receive Option Setting is "ON", however,  or  is not indicated even if the maximum number of items is exceeded.
- You can use Check i-mode Message (P270) or Receive Option (P269) to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mail and Message R/F.
- When the i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is stored in your i-mode terminal. P267
- Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.

Other convenient function

■ Mail with attachment

• Attaching melodies to mail

You can send/receive melody files downloaded from sites or Internet Web pages by attaching them to i-mode Mail. (You cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal.)

- Sending ☛P260
- Receiving ☛P276

• Attaching images to mail

You can send/receive still image files obtained from sites, Internet Web pages or external memory by attaching them to i-mode Mail. (You cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal. The attached file other than i-shot is deleted when you send mail to mova terminals.)

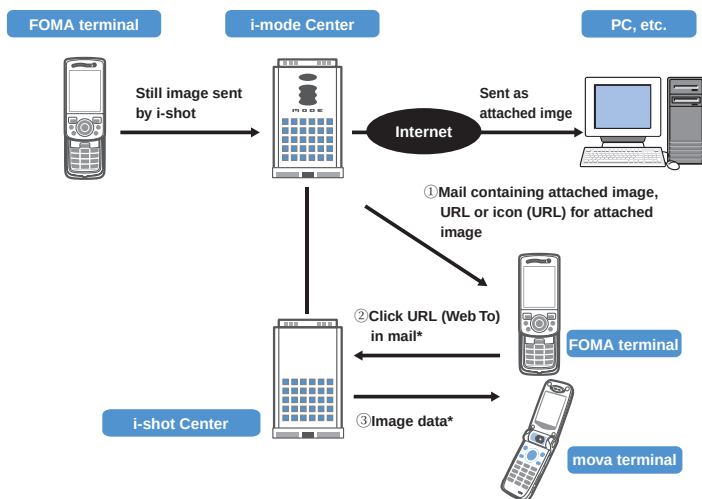
- Sending ☛P260
- Receiving ☛P273

■ i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments. Or URLs (or icons) for viewing still images are sent with the storage period given automatically. Click the received URLs to download the images.

The number of characters of message text you can send by mova service is up to 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to a mail to mova terminals, the attached files are deleted from the mail received and only the message text is notified.

- Sending ☛P260
- Receiving ☛P273



* When a mail containing URL of attached image is received.

- The i-shot Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after the storage period.

■ i-motion Mail

You can send/receive video files taken with i-motion Mail compatible terminals or downloaded from sites in the form of i-motion Mail (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

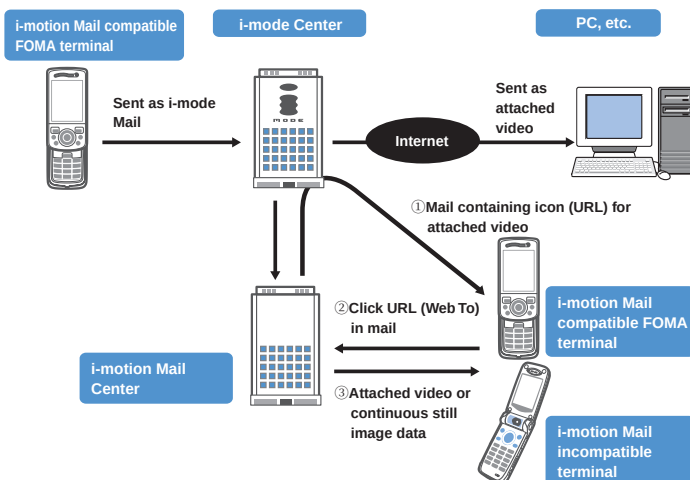
- Sending i-motion Mail ➡ P260
- Receiving i-motion Mail ➡ P274

• Service schematic

Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).

When the mail is received by i-motion Mail compatible terminals, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text.

When the mail is sent to i-motion non-compatible terminals, the i-motion is converted to continuous still images and received as mail with URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.

■ Deco-mail (Decoration mail)

You can compose and send your original messages by changing the character size and background color and by inserting images in the text as you edit i-mode Mail, and enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail are received from PCs, operations may not be the same as on PCs because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to non-compatible terminals, it is received as mail with URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL (sending Deco-mail to non-compatible terminals is scheduled to be available from December, 2004).

- Editing Deco-mail ➡ P253
- Sending Deco-mail ➡ P253
- Models supporting Deco-mail: 90xi Series, 880iES (for receiving only)

■ Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5) at the same time. ➡ P251

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

■ Sending/receiving CC/BCC

When editing i-mode Mail, you can specify the receiver by selecting from TO, CC and BCC in the same way as on PCs.

If there is no address for TO, however, mail cannot be sent. ➡ P251

■ Chat mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation.

- The communication fee for chat mail to/from multiple addresses is the same as that for sending mail to multiple addresses at one time.

Short Message (SMS)

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending procedure ●P310
- Receiving procedure ●P312
- Inquiry procedure ●P314

Address for Short Message (SMS)

The address of Short Message (SMS) is the “subscribing mobile phone number”.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters is different depending on the font type setting (●P314).

Item	Font type “Japanese”	Font type “English”
Address	20 characters (number only)	
Message	70 characters regardless of one- or two-byte	160 one-byte characters*

* One-byte alphanumeric and symbols can be sent (except for “ 「 ”, “ 」 ”, “ ・ ”, “ * ” and “ ° ”). When symbols (“ | ”, “ ^ ”, “ $\text{\{}$ ”, “ $\text{\}}$ ”, “ _ ”, “ $\text{\`}$ ” and “ $\text{\$}$ ”) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

INFORMATION

- You cannot send a subject line with Short Messages (SMS).
- If you use one-byte katakana or pictograms in Short Messages (SMS), the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.

When you cannot receive Short Messages (SMS)

A Short Message (SMS) sent to FOMA terminal is received by the Short Message Center and sent to FOMA terminal immediately. If FOMA terminal is turned OFF or outside the service area and message cannot be received, the Short Message (SMS) is stored in the Short Message Center.

INFORMATION

- The Short Message Center stores Short Messages (SMS) for a maximum of 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ●P314
- Short Messages (SMS) that exceed the maximum storage period are automatically deleted.
- You can use Check SMS to receive Short Messages (SMS) stored in the Short Message Center. ●P314
- When FOMA terminal receives a Short Message (SMS), it is deleted from the Short Message Center. Received Short Messages (SMS) are stored in FOMA terminal. ●P312

Other convenient function

■ Delivered report

You can receive a delivery report that informs whether the other party has received the sent Short Message (SMS). ●P314

■ Saving in UIM

You can save sent or received Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM. ●P315

Displaying Mail menu

You can select various mail functions of FOMA terminal from Mail menu. Shortcut operations are available for some functions.

1 Press on the stand-by display.



Menu	Description	Page
Inbox	Displays received mail.	P278
Compose message	Composes and sends new i-mode Mail.	P249
Chat mail	Mail can be exchanged as if having a conversation with friends.	P303
Unsent messages	Displays the mail saved without sending or that failed to be sent.	P278
Outbox	Displays sent mail.	P278
Check new message	Checks for mail or Message R/F at the i-mode Center or for Short Message (SMS) at the Short Message Center. Also sets items of Message Retrieval from the i-mode Center and Receive Option.	P270, P314
SMS	Composes and sends Short Message (SMS), performs SMS Setting and displays received/sent Short Message (SMS) in the UIM.	P310
Read templates	Displays templates and composes messages.	P263
Mail setting	Sets various mail functions.	P292

Compose Message

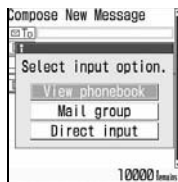
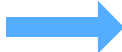
Composing and sending i-mode Mail

• See “Entering characters” for how to enter characters. ◀P512

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select field.



Mail composition screen



Indicates how many more one-byte characters can be entered.

2 Select “Direct input” and enter the address.

- Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit “@docomo.ne.jp” from the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, use  in alphabet input mode to enter symbols such as “@”, “.”, “-”, etc. frequently used in addresses. “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com”, etc. can be entered using  in alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party’s i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ Searching phonebook

- ① Select “View phonebook”.
- ② Search the phonebook and select a mail address.

■ Entering mail addresses in mail group

- ① Select “Mail group”.
- ② Select a mail group to enter mail addresses. ➡P252

3 Select field and enter the subject.

- Up to 15 two-byte or 30 one-byte characters can be entered.

4 Select and enter the message.

- Up to 5,000 two-byte or 10,000 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When a file is attached, the number of characters that can be entered is reduced.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character in the message.
- Press  to enter a space. A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. ➡P253

■ Inserting signature

- ① Press  .
- Signature must be recorded beforehand. ➡P296
 - The characters in the signature are included in the total number of characters in the message.

5 Press .

- Press  on the connection screen to stop connection. Press  on the sending screen to cancel sending. Note that the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.

INFORMATION

- You can also compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phonebook entry containing a mail address and pressing .
- You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies. ➡P516
- When a message larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically saved due to conflict with other applications, part of the message being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, an error message “Transmission failed” may be displayed depending on radio wave conditions.
- When a phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message text being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.

- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from Unsent messages. ◀P265
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum allowable number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep. ◀P287
- An error message for address unknown, etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or Short Message (SMS) from Unsent messages (◀P288).
- Mail can be composed quickly using templates. ◀P262
- You can compose and send i-mode Mail easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail). ◀P266

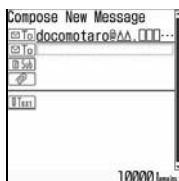
Adding receivers [Add Address]

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at the same time (multi-address transmission).

- The receiver can be one of the three types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC). Enter the address of the direct receiver in  field.
 - In  field, add an address to which you wish to send the contents of the mail in addition to the direct receiver.
 - In  field, add an address you do not wish to be known to other receivers. The mail address entered in  field is not shown to other receivers.
- Mail with no address specified in  field cannot be sent.

1 Place the cursor at the address field on the mail composition screen and press

 . ◀P249



Address field is added.

- Repeat operation until you have added all the receivers you send mail to.

■ Adding CC or BCC

- ① Press  .
- ② Select input method.
 - Select "View phonebook" to enter a mail address by searching from the phonebook.
 - Select "Mail group" to select and enter addresses in a mail group.
 - Select "Direct input" to enter a mail address directly.
- ③ Select "CC" or "BCC" and enter a mail address.
 - Also "TO" can be selected.
 - When "Mail group" is selected, the already specified mail address is displayed for TO, CC and BCC.

■ Changing TO, CC and BCC

- ① Place the cursor at the address to change and press  .
- ② Select an address type to change.

■ Deleting the added address

- ① Place the cursor at the address to delete and press  .
- ② Select "Yes".

2 Enter the address in the added address field and send the mail.

- Operation is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

- The mail address entered in  field and  field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

Entering mail address from mail group [Mail Group]

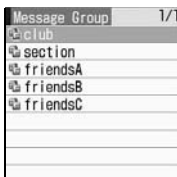
If several addresses are saved in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set easily.

- Mail addresses must be saved in a mail group in advance. ➡P297

1 Press on the mail composition screen. ➡P249

2 Select "Mail group".

3 Select a mail group to add.



- If the total of already entered addresses and mail group addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- You can change TO, CC and BCC of the address. ➡P252

■ Displaying mail group details

- ① Press .
- ② Check the contents and press .

Composing and sending Deco-mail

In i-mode Mail text, decoration settings such as changing font size or background or inserting still images or preinstalled images can be made (Deco-mail).

Deco-mail can be composed in two ways: entering characters after specifying decoration (P253) and setting decoration after selecting entered characters (P258). The composed Deco-mail can be viewed using the preview function.

[Example of decoration]

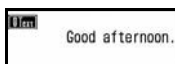
① Changing font color



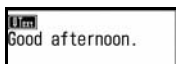
④ Blinking characters



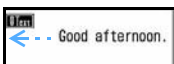
⑦ Changing word alignment



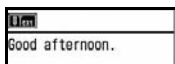
② Changing font size



⑤ Setting ticker



⑧ Inserting separating line (ruled line)



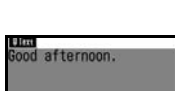
③ Inserting image



⑥ Swinging characters right and left



⑨ Changing background color



Flow of Deco-mail composition

STEP1 Display the message text entry screen



Start composing i-mode Mail and display the text entry screen.



STEP2 Input decorated characters and images



Press , select the decoration method and enter characters.

• Press   during editing to check the decoration.

STEP2 Enter characters and decorate



Press  at the start position of character range and press  at the end position. Select the decoration method.

STEP3 Confirm the decoration and send

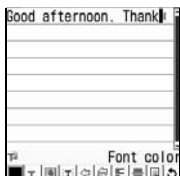
Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

Entering characters after specifying decoration method

1 Select  on the mail composition screen. P249

2 Press .

3 Select the decoration and enter characters.



Decoration selection screen

Place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press to select a decoration. You can set more than one decoration by selecting multiple icons. Note that "Ticker", "Swing" and "Word alignment" cannot be selected at the same time.

- To set more than one decoration continuously, place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press .
- To cancel a selected decoration and enter characters, place the cursor at the character entry position, press and press . Only "Font color", "Font size", "Blink", "Word alignment (in blank line)", "Ticker (in blank line)" and "Swing" (in blank line) can be canceled.

- Font color** : Changes the color of characters and lines (ruled lines) inserted.
- Font size** : Changes the font size.
- Insert image** : Inserts images. For an image with actions such as animation, the actions automatically stop after a certain period of time.
- Blink** : Displays characters that blink. Blinking stops automatically after a certain period of time.
- Ticker** : Displays characters that tick (ticker display). Ticker actions stop automatically after a certain period of time.
- Swing** : Displays characters that swing right and left. Swinging stops automatically after a certain period of time.
- Word alignment** : Changes alignments of characters or images inserted.
- Insert line** : Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).
- Background color** : Changes the background color.
- Back to original** : Restores to the previous condition.

4 Press and check the decoration.

You can check the decoration set to the text and the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter.

5 After checking the decoration, press .

■ Changing decoration

- 1 Press , move the cursor to the start position and press .

Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Decorating characters after specifying range". ●P258

■ Canceling all decorations

- 1 Press .

6 Press .

7 Press .

■ Saving Deco-mail as a template without sending

- 1 Press .
- 2 Select "Yes".
- 3 Set display name and file name and press .

The template is saved in "Read templates".

INFORMATION

- You can also press  on the message text entry screen and select "Decorate mail".
- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data remain and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down  for over a second deletes the characters and decoration at the same time.

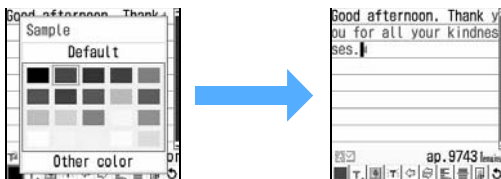
Example of decoration

Follow the procedure below on the decoration selection screen.

- The number in parentheses () indicates the example of decoration in P253.

■ Changing font color (Example of decoration ①)

- ① Select .
- ② Select a color and enter characters.
 - Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in "Other color".
 - The color of pictograms is also changed and can be retuned to the original.



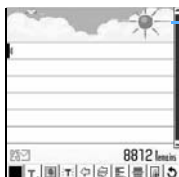
■ Changing font size (Example of decoration ②)

- ① Select  (or ).
- ② Select a size and enter characters.
 - Select from "large", "standard" or "small".



■ Inserting image (Example of decoration ③)

- ① Select .
 - When the miniSD memory card is attached, select the folder where an image to be inserted is saved.
- ② Select a folder and select an image.



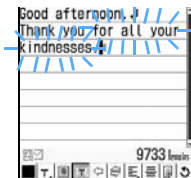
The image is inserted at the position specified with word alignment (  .

- You cannot select video/i-motion or images larger than the attachable data size.

“ 青空 (Blue sky)” in “Deco-Mail picture” inserted

■ Making characters blink (Example of decoration ④)

- ① Select  and enter characters.



The entered characters are blinking.

■ Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (Example of decoration ⑤)

- ① Select  and enter characters.



- Enter characters between  and .

■ Making characters swing right and left (Example of decoration ⑥)

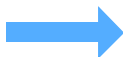
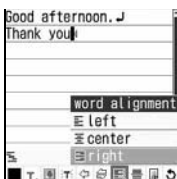
- ① Select  and enter characters.



- Enter characters between  and .

■ Changing word alignment (Example of decoration ⑦)

- ① Select  (or  ).
- ② Select display position of characters and enter characters.
- Select form “left”, “center” or “right”.



■ Inserting line (ruled line) (Example of decoration ⑧)

- ① Select .



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (■).

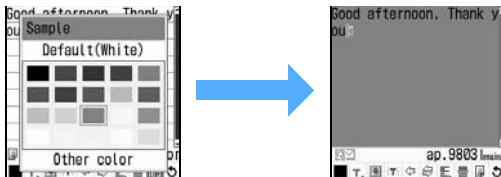
Line inserted

■ Changing text background color (Example of decoration ⑨)

① Select .

② Select a color.

- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in "Other color".



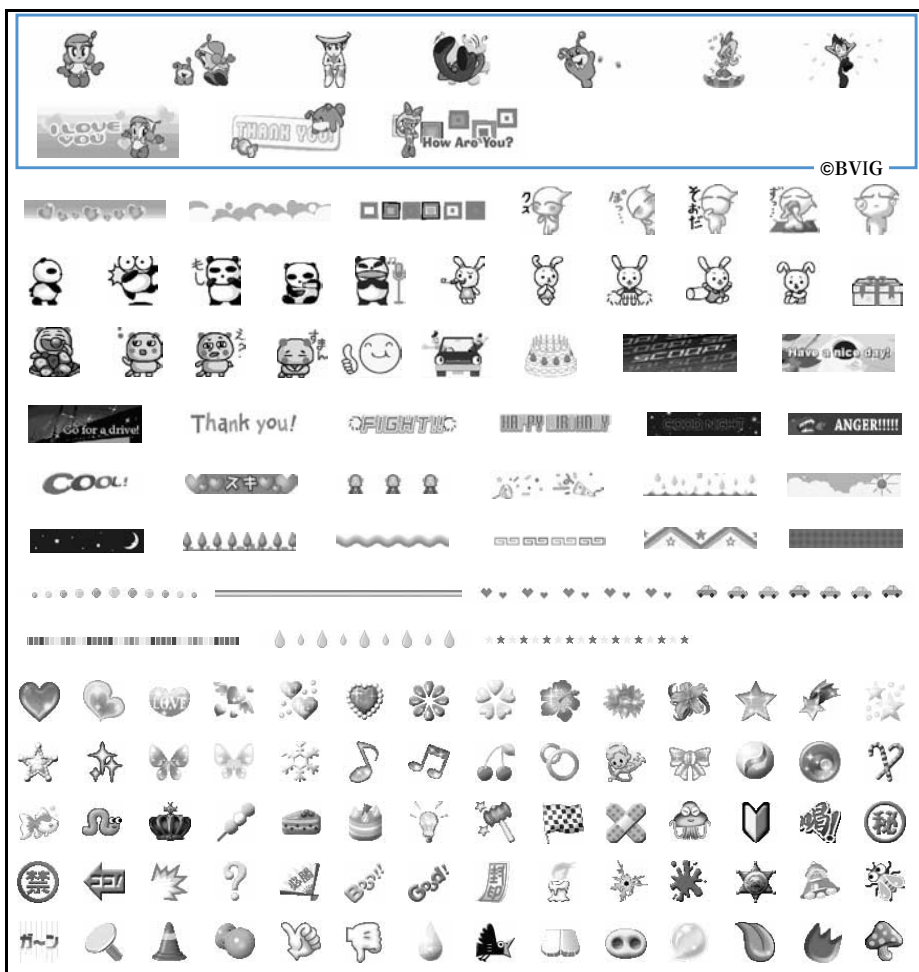
■ Restoring the previous condition

① Select .

Only the last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

■ Images in "Deco-Mail picture" folder

- The following images are saved in "Deco-Mail picture" folder by default.



You can decorate characters or change the decoration of characters entered in the message text.

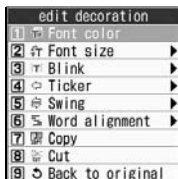
- The number in parentheses () in Step 4 indicates the example of decoration in P253.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color.

- 1 Select  on the mail composition screen. P249**
- 2 Place the cursor at the start position of character range and press .**
- 3 Place the cursor at the end position of character range and press .**



- Press  to move the cursor to beginning of the text.
- Press  to move the cursor to end of the text.
- Press  to select all the text.

- 4 Select the decoration method.**



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations are the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. P253

Changing font color (Example of decoration ①)

- Press  and select a font color.
 - The color of lines (ruled lines) inserted by decoration is also changed.

Changing font size (Example of decoration ②)

- Press  and press  to .

Making characters blink (Example of decoration ④)

- Press  and press .
 - To cancel blink, press  and press .

Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (Example of decoration ⑤)

- Press  and press .
 - To cancel ticker, press  and press .

Making characters swing right and left (Example of decoration ⑥)

- Press  and press .
 - To cancel swing, press  and press .

Changing word alignment (Example of decoration ⑦)

- Press  and press  to .
 - Display position of image inserted by decoration is also changed.

Copying characters

- Press .

Cutting characters

- Press .
 - The characters in the specified range are cut.

Restoring the previous condition

- Press .
 - The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Decorating characters continuously

- Press  and repeat Step 4.

5 Press  to cancel the specified range and press .

6 Press .

■ **Saving Deco-mail as a template without sending**

① Press   .

② Select “Yes”.

③ Set display name and file name and press .

The template is saved in “Read templates”.

INFORMATION

- You can also press  on the message text entry screen and select “Decorate mail”→“Edit decoration”.
- Press   on the message text entry screen to display the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter at the lower right of the screen.
- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data remain and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down  for over a second deletes the characters and decoration at the same time.
- When you check the decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, inserted animation, etc. on the mail composition screen or on the message text entry screen, the operation stops automatically after a certain period of time.
- When mail is sent/received to/from other than Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

Downloading Deco-mail template [Deco-mail Template]

Deco-mail template can be downloaded from sites.

1 Select Deco-mail template to download during site display.

- You can stop downloading by pressing .

2 Select “Save”.

- Select “Back” to cancel saving Deco-mail template. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select “No”.

■ **Confirming contents of template**

① Select “Display”.

3 Press .

Deco-mail template is saved in “Read templates”. ➡P262

■ **Changing display name**

① Select Display name field and change the display name.

- Display name can contain up to 20 two-byte or one-byte characters.

■ **Changing file name**

① Select File name field and change the file name.

- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- Deco-mail template downloaded from sites can be edited on the mail composition screen. ●P263
- To insert Deco-mail template in Deco-mail, use the same procedure as for reading mail template.
- When there is not enough storage space for templates or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a message is displayed indicating that storage area is full. Delete unnecessary templates and download a template again. ●P264

Attachment

Attaching files

You can send i-mode Mail with still images and melodies attached. You can also send i-motion Mail with video recorded with FOMA terminal.

• Attachable files are as shown below:

Item	Melody	Still image of up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)	Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB	Video/ i-motion of up to 500 KB*1
Maximum number of files that can be attached to one mail	Up to 10*2		Up to 1	
Condition of attachment	Melodies (MFi) cannot be attached.	Create animation and continuous shots cannot be attached.	Only still images (JPEG) can be attached.	Files with playback restriction set cannot be attached.*3

*1 Depending on the receiver's model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images.
Playing video/i-motion on PC ●P552

*2 Up to 10 still images and melodies in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of items that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.

*3 Some files without playback restriction may not be attached.

- When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies and still images are attached) is less than 100 two-byte characters or 200 one-byte characters (200 two-byte characters or 400 one-byte characters for Deco-mail), you cannot attach video/i-motion or a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes.
- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set with your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be attached.
- When i-mode Mail with a still image (one image in JPEG format) is sent to a mova terminal, it is received as mail with URL (i-shot Mail).
- A GIF still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mail.
- Shot video of up to 500 Kbytes, except the text, can be attached to i-motion Mail. i-motion exceeding the size limit cannot be attached. The video with the image size of 320 x 240 (QVGA) cannot be attached to mail regardless of file size.
- When sent to other than FOMA D901i, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.

1 Select  field on the mail composition screen. ●P249

2 Select the type of file to attach and select a file.

■ Attaching still image

① Select “Image” and select a folder.

- Place the cursor at a still image and press  to display the still image. Press  to return to the list.
- Still images that cannot be attached are not displayed.

② Select a still image.

File name of the selected still image is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen.

Image size and file size of the selected still image are checked in this order.

- For JPEG still image with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to reduce it to the stand-by size (QVGA). When file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the image to Data Box. If “No” is selected, the reduced image is not saved. The mail is saved in Unsent messages with no image attached. Even when sent mail is displayed from Outbox, the image attached to the mail cannot be displayed.
- For JPEG still image exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the image to Data Box.

■ Attaching video/i-motion (i-motion Mail)

① Select “i-motion” and select a folder.

- Place the cursor at video/i-motion and press  to play the video/i-motion. Press  to return to the list.
- Video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed.

② Select video/i-motion.

■ Attaching melody

① Select “Melody” and select a folder.

- Place the cursor at a melody and press  to play the melody. Press  to return to the list.
- If a melody that cannot be attached is selected, a message appears indicating that the melody cannot be selected.

② Select a melody.

File name of the selected melody is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen.

■ Attaching data in miniSD memory card

① Select “miniSD card” and press to .

- Place the cursor at a still image and press  to display the still image. Place the cursor at video/i-motion or a melody and press  to play the video/i-motion or melody.
- When video/i-motion that cannot be attached is selected, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be selected.

② Select the data.

The selected data is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen.

- The operation of each data format is the same as for selecting data in FOMA terminal.
- For still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 Kbytes or video of up to 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to copy the image to FOMA terminal.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 (QVGA) (P356). QVGA is the size of the stand-by display and is suited for sending to an i-mode terminal.
- When you send mail with a JPEG still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-mode Center to a size that can be sent to i-mode terminal.
- If mail with both melody and GIF still image attached is sent to a mova terminal, it cannot be received.

Changing/canceling attachments

Example Canceling attachment

- 1 Display the mail composition screen.** (P249)
- 2 Place the cursor at the attachment field to cancel and press**  .
 - Changing attachment
 - ① Place the cursor at the attachment field to change and press .
 - ② Attach a new file. (P260)
- 3 Select “Yes”.**

Using mail templates

Mail template is used to register the sentences frequently used at the beginning of message or frequently used i-mode Mail messages. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the content. Deco-mail template is a template for Deco-mail that has the layout, decoration, etc. predefined. Deco-mail template allows you to easily compose and send Deco-mail. Deco-mail template is read in the same way as a mail template.

- The following templates are registered by default.



I Love You
©BVIG



Thank You!
©BVIG



How Are You?
©BVIG



元気?
(How are you?)



頑張れ
(Cheer up)



ありがとう
(Thank you)



反省してます
(Sorry)



遊ぼう
(Let's go out)



誕生日おめでとう
(Happy birthday)



さみしい
(Sad)



おはよう
(Good morning)



ドライブ
(Drive)



- You can save created templates.
- You cannot use templates for Short Message (SMS).
- Templates cannot be read while KeyPad Dial Lock is set.

Using template to compose mail [Read Template]

You can read templates to use for composing new i-mode Mail.

1 Press on the mail composition screen. **P249**

2 Select the template to read.



- Icon definitions:
- : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes
- : Melody
- : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody

3 Add/edit the contents and send it. **P249**

INFORMATION

- If you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering message text, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the mail contents. Select "Read body only" or "Read all" and select a template to overwrite the mail. Press to stop reading template. When "Read body only" is selected, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When "Read all" is selected, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

Viewing template and composing mail

You display a list of registered templates and check the contents to set on the mail composition screen.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the template to display.

- Press on the detail screen to display previous or next templates.

3 Press .

The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

4 Add/edit the contents and send it. P249

INFORMATION

- If “Auto play” is set in Message Attachment, displaying a template with a melody attached plays the melody automatically at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume. Press  to stop playing the melody.

Saving mail as template [Save Template]

Cromposed mail or received/sent mail can be saved as template.

- Size of the storage area for templates is 100 Kbytes and up to 100 templates can be saved.
- The contents of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.
- i-motion or still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If any of subject, address or text is not entered, the template cannot be saved. If a file is attached, however, the template can be saved even if no other item is entered.

1 Press    on the mail composition screen. P249

2 Select “Yes”.

3 Press .

Save Template
Display name
20050415170846
File name
20050415170846

- Display name can contain up to 20 two-byte or one-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters, including one-byte alphanumeric, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- To check or change detail information of template, press  on the template list screen and select “Detail info” → “View” or “Edit”. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.
- If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- If the date and time are not set when saving a template, “-----” is set as file name. If you save the template without entering display name, “-----” is set as display name.
- When there is not enough storage space for templates or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a message is displayed indicating that storage area is full. Delete unnecessary templates and save a template again.

Deleting template

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press   .

■ Deleting selected templates

① Press and select a template.

- Press to select or cancel a template and press to select or cancel all templates.

② Press .

■ Deleting all templates

① Press .

② Enter the terminal security code .

3 Select “Yes”.

Save Mail

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- Up to 200 unsent mail/messages can be saved.

1 Press on the mail composition screen. ➡P249

i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages.

- If any of subject, address or text is not entered, the mail cannot be saved. If a file is attached, however, the mail can be saved even if no other item is entered.

Editing and sending sent/unsent i-mode Mail

Example Editing unsent mail

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- is displayed for Short Message (SMS).
- For sent mail, press and select a folder.

2 Select the mail to edit.

- To edit sent mail, place the cursor at the mail to edit and press .
- When “ON” is set for Unsent messages and Outbox in Edit by Slide, you can display the edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is selected or displayed.

3 Edit and send the mail. ➡Step 2 to 5 in P249

INFORMATION

- You can also edit mail by pressing on the sent mail view screen.
- If “Auto play” is set in Message Attachment, displaying sent mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume. Press to stop playing the melody.
- You can edit and send sent/unsent Short Message (SMS) in the same way.

Composing mail quickly

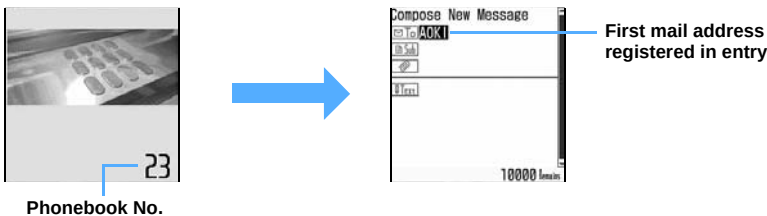
You can compose Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail easily to the parties saved to phonebook No. 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal.

- The first phone number registered in the phonebook entry for the party is set as the address of Short Message (SMS) and the first mail address as the address of i-mode Mail.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party in phonebook No. 23

- 1 Enter the phonebook No. (  in this case) on the stand-by display and press .**

The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0. You cannot use Quick Mail if you enter    in this example.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ◀P249

■ Composing Short Message (SMS)

- ① Enter the phonebook No. on the stand-by display and hold down  for over a second.**
 - The Short Message (SMS) composition screen is displayed with the phone number registered in the phonebook entry set as the address.
 - Composing and sending Short Message (SMS) ◀P310

INFORMATION

- If no mail address (or phone number for Short Message (SMS)) is registered to the specified phonebook entry or no entry is registered in the phonebook, pressing  (or holding it for over a second for Short Message (SMS)) displays a confirmation screen indicating that no applicable data exists. Press  to display the mail (message) composition screen with no address set.
- For the phonebook entry with secret attribute set, set Secret Mode before operation. ◀P166

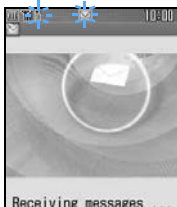
Receiving i-mode Mail

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and the screen display, ring tone, vibrator and multi-indicator notify you that i-mode Mail has been received. The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox.

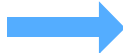
1 Receive i-mode Mail.

Blinks while mail is being received.

Blinking.



Reception completed.



: Unread i-mode Mail exists.

: Unread Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail exist.

The reception result is displayed as ticker.

Displays the number of received i-mode Mail.

and blink and "Receiving messages..." is displayed.

Mail ring tone sounds, the multi-indicator flashes and the reception result screen is displayed.

- You can stop reception by pressing but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.
- If you do not press any keys for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

■ When reception fails

" × " is indicated after "Mail".

INFORMATION

- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority.
- When Indicator light is set to "ON" in Illumination Setting, the multi-indicator flashes while unread i-mode Mail exists.
- When Receive Option Setting is "ON", you can select and receive only the mail you want without automatically receiving all mail.
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, you will also receive other i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center.
- When i-motion Mail is received, the video/i-motion data is stored in the i-motion Mail Center.
- When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC.
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- You can send/receive i-mode Mail with melodies and still images as attachments. The i-mode Center will delete unsupported attachments. If an attachment has been deleted, a message, "[添付ファイル削除] (Delete attachment)" is inserted under the subject of the mail.
- Attachments larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size) are deleted at the i-mode Center. Attachable data size

- When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Checking with the phonebook is performed as follows.
 - Only when the mail addresses completely match, the name is displayed on the received mail list/view screen. For a mail address of i-mode terminal, if it is saved without "@docomo.ne.jp" in the phonebook, the name is not displayed even when the part preceding the symbol @ matches. However, when mail is received from "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is displayed as long as the part preceding the symbol @ matches, even if "@docomo.ne.jp" is omitted in the phonebook entry.
 - When two or more i-mode Mail messages are received at the same time, the mail ring tone, vibrator and multi-indicator are activated according to the settings made for the party (sender) of the i-mode Mail received last.
 - When a mail address is saved to the phonebook entry with secret attribute set, the mail ring tone, vibrator and multi-indicator are activated only when Secret Mode is set.
 - When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), the name of the party saved is not displayed and the ring tone or vibrator is not activated.
- While receiving Short Message (SMS), i-mode Mail cannot be received. Note that i-mode Mail is not received automatically even after receiving Short Message (SMS).
- When i-mode Mail is not automatically received, the mail is stored in the i-mode Center. Up to 3 attempts to resend the stored mail are made at certain intervals.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep. ●P287
- If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. ●P27
- If i-mode Mail has not been received and is stored in the i-mode Center,  or  is indicated (●P26). However, the icon may not be displayed even when i-mode Mail remains in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center (●P245) is reached, the icon changes to  or .
- To receive i-mode Mail that you have failed to retrieve, perform Check i-mode Message (●P270) or Receive Option (●P269). When the maximum number of received mail is reached, display unread mail (●P278), delete unnecessary mail (●P288) or cancel mail protection (●P287) before receiving new mail.
- When Privacy Mode is active ("Hide secret fldrs" set for Mail), if automatically received mail is saved in the folder with Privacy set to "ON" in Folder settings, the reception result screen is not displayed and the ring tone or multi-indicator is not activated.
- When you send i-mode Mail to your own mail address, the mail may not be received automatically soon after sending. Perform Check i-mode Message (●P270).

Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 Select "Mail" on the mail/message reception result screen.



- If "Message R" or "Message F" is selected, each message is displayed.
- The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox. Note that, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder and select a mail.

- When a melody is attached, it is played automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ●P300
- Displaying received mail ●P278

INFORMATION

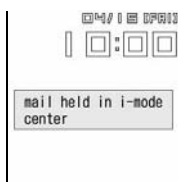
- Press  on the mail/message reception result screen to display i-mode Mail.
- To display the folder list when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Mail), entry of the terminal security code is required. Also, when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for i-α ppli), selecting a Message i-α ppli folder requires entry of the terminal security code.

Receive Option

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives



When Receive Option Setting is "ON", the received i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. A notification on the stand-by display informs that mail has arrived.

- Even if mail is received, the ring tone or vibrator is not activated.
- Press a key other than  to return to the stand-by display or previous screen.

INFORMATION

- When you perform Check i-mode Message, you can receive all i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center.
➡P270
- Short Message (SMS) and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is "ON".

Selecting mail to receive

You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select only necessary mail to receive. You can also delete unnecessary i-mode Mail without receiving it.

- To select mail to receive, "ON" must be set in Receive Option Setting in advance. ➡P297
- Even if Receive Option Setting is "ON", all i-mode Mail is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not wish to receive unnecessary mail, unselect Mail in Message Retrieval.
➡P296

1 Press on the stand-by display.



You are connected to i-mode and the list of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center appears.

- The icons displayed at the end of mail are described below.

: Still image file is attached.

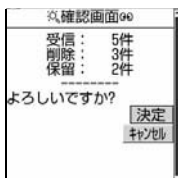
: Melody file is attached.

: i-motion file is attached.

2 Select “保留 (Hold)” for each mail and select “受信 (Receive)”, “削除 (Delete)” or “保留” from the pulldown menu.

- When “保留” is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center as it is. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message, etc.
- When the mail list has more than one page, select “前ページ (Previous page)” and “次ページ (Next page)” at the end of the list to view the previous and next page respectively.

3 Select “受信／削除 (Receive/Delete)”.



■ Deleting all mail stored at the i-mode Center

- ① Select “削除” for “i モードセンターから全てのメールを (All mail from the i-mode Center)”.

4 Select “決定 (OK)”.

INFORMATION

- Selecting pulldown menu items ◀P207

Check i-mode Message

Checking for mail

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned OFF.

Also checks for Message R/F at the same time if it is set in Message Retrieval.

- Depending on radio wave condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message.

1 Press twice on the stand-by display.

Check i-mode Message is executed. If stored in the i-mode Center, i-mode Mail is received.

- To check for Message R/F, follow the same procedure as for i-mode Mail.
- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto receive. ◀P267

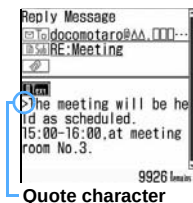
However, when you receive i-mode Mail using Check i-mode Message, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds unlike auto receive. Press  to return to the stand-by display without displaying i-mode Mail.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to received Short Message (SMS) for which "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support" is displayed as sender or to Short Mail sent from mova terminal (i-mode subscription).

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the mail to reply and press .



The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in  field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in  field (for only i-mode Mail), and ">" followed by the received message text is entered in  field.

- You can set whether to quote the message when replying and select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.
 P298

■ When FOMA terminal is closed

When "ON" is set for Inbox in Edit by Slide, you can display the reply screen by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is selected or displayed.

■ Replying to all addresses of received mail

① Press   .

- You can reply to all the receivers except you and the sender.

3 Edit and send the mail. 

- When a reply is sent, the status icon for the received mail changes from  to , or  to  in the received mail list.

INFORMATION

- You can also operate by pressing  on the received mail view screen.
- The received mail attachments are not attached to reply mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start software or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for reply mail and they are not quoted as characters, either.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to images, they are not quoted in reply mail.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses, the mail addresses displayed in  field differ depending on the screen you use to reply. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is shown. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are displayed.
- You can reply to received Short Message (SMS) in the same way.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail

- i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and Short Message (SMS) is forwarded as Short Message (SMS).

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the mail to forward and press .



“FW:” followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in  field (for only i-mode Mail) and the received message text is entered in  field.

- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 Edit and send the mail. 

- When forward mail is sent, the status icon for the received mail changes from  to , or  to  in the received mail list.

INFORMATION

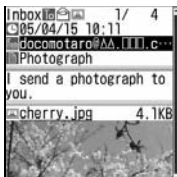
- When operating from the received mail view screen, press  and select “Reply/Forward” → “Forward”.
- Even if files are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, some melody files may not be attached depending on the type.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start software or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for forward mail and they are not quoted as characters, either.
- Regarding attachments to received mail (still image and melody), files that are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forward mail.
- If you forward mail with a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached to forward mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the maximum data size that can be sent in mail is exceeded, the message indicating the mail cannot be sent is displayed when  is pressed.
- You can forward received Short Message (SMS) in the same way.

Displaying and saving attached still image

Displaying still image

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.



The still image, file name and file size are displayed under the message.

• Icon definitions:



: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal



: Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal



: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download



: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded



: Still image



: Still image data error

■ Switching between displaying and not displaying still image

① Select the file name.

■ Checking title of still image

① Place the cursor at the file name to check title and press

  .

■ Displaying URL for still image exceeding 10,000 bytes

① Place the cursor at the file name to display URL and press

  .

• To display the URL before download, place the cursor at “保存期限 (Storage period)” in the message and press   .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the view screen for sent mail, mail template or mail in the miniSD memory card, press  and select “Attachment” → “Check title”.
- You can switch displaying and not displaying a still image from the view screen for sent mail, mail template or mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.
- Still image of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.
- Up to 36 characters can be saved as file name of the still image downloaded. File name can contain only one-byte alphanumeric characters, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of file name.
- When received mail with a still image attached is displayed, the attached still image is automatically displayed. Note that, still image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the still image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of the still image to display the image.
- The file name of images inserted in Deco-mail is not displayed in the mail view screen.
- A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode Mail will be automatically downloaded. The image automatically downloaded is saved in “ mode” folder of My Picture (Image). When the image cannot be automatically downloaded because mail reception is interrupted or there is not enough storage space available for images, you can download it by selecting “保存期限” in i-mode Mail.
- When a still image is wider than the display, the image is reduced and displayed.
- Some still images may not be displayed correctly.
- When displaying mail saved in the miniSD memory card, a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to the mail cannot be displayed.

Saving still image

Saved still images can be viewed using My Picture (Image) or set for the stand-by display. You can also save as frames or stamps to use for editing still images.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.

3 Place the cursor at the file name to save and press   .

- If the still image is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal ("File restricted" is displayed), its information cannot be changed. Go to Step 5.

■ Saving image displayed in Deco-mail

① Press    and select the image.

4 Select each item to set.

- The setting procedure is the same as for saving images from sites. ➡P220

5 Press  and select the folder to save the image to.

Still image is saved in "i mode" or "Deco-Mail picture" folder of My Picture (Image). ➡P352

- Frame or stamp images are saved in "Item" folder. ➡P352
- Saved still images can be set for the stand-by display. ➡P353

INFORMATION

- You can save still images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.
- Still images larger than 352 horizontal x 288 vertical view size cannot be used as frame.
- Still images larger than 210 horizontal x 210 vertical view size cannot be used as stamp.
- Still images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format and 960 x 1280 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete images saved in FOMA terminal. To save an image, follow the instructions on the screen and delete images in FOMA terminal until the space required for saving image is available.
- Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be shown by pressing .

i-motion Mail

Downloading i-motion from i-motion Mail

When video/i-motion attached to mail is sent, it is stored at the i-motion Mail Center and the mail is received with URL to view the i-motion. Select the URL to receive the i-motion and play it.

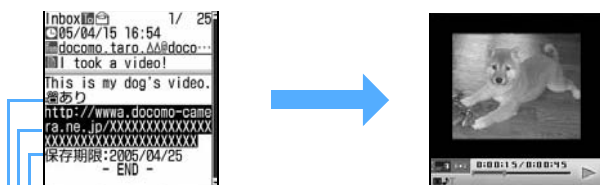
- i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.
- The volume for playing i-motion follows the settings of i-motion. ➡P375

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion.

3 Select the URL for i-motion and select “Yes”.

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback begins.



The storage period of i-motion in the i-motion Mail Center is displayed.

- The URL for i-motion is displayed.

“あり” is displayed indicating that i-motion is attached.

- Playback screen operating procedure ➡ P366

4 When the playback ends, select “Save”.

- Select “Play” to play the i-motion.
- Select “File property” to display the information of the i-motion. ➡P402

5 Press .

The downloaded i-motion is saved in “ mode” folder of i-motion.

- Enter a name to set display name. Up to 36 two-byte or one-byte characters can be entered.

■ Setting for stand-by display

- Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with playback restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the stand-by display.

① Press and select “YES”.

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged can be set to Same size or Large size.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-αppli stand-by display. If “YES” is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled and selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display.
- Operation procedure of video/i-motion set for stand-by display screen ◀P136

6 Select “Back”.

INFORMATION

- You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.
- When i-motion Mail has been sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion saved in the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.
- Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. ●P552
- When displaying mail saved in the miniSD memory card, video/i-motion attached to the mail cannot be displayed.

Playing and saving attached melody

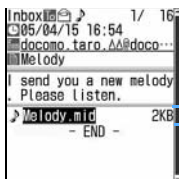
- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D901i, the received melody may not be played correctly.

Playing melody

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

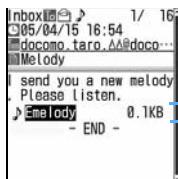
2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.

- There are two types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.



Displayed under the message

The melody icon, file name and file size are displayed under the message (SMF format).



Displayed in the message

The melody icon, title and file size are displayed in the message (MFi format).

- Icon definitions:

- : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- : Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal
- : Melody data error

3 Select a melody to play.

- Press or to stop playback.

■ Checking title of melody

① Place the cursor at the melody to check title and press .

- To check the title of melody displayed in the message, place the cursor at the melody and press .

② Press after checking the title.

■ Displaying melody data as text (Data display)

① Select the melody to display data and press .

- To return to the title display, select the first row of the melody data displayed and press .
- This function is not available with melodies that appear under the message.

INFORMATION

- You can play and save a melody from the submenu while displaying the data.
- In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play. Select "Yes" and, in Silent Mode the melody is played at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume. In Customize Silent Mode, the melody is played at the ring alert volume set in Customize Silent Mode.
- When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.
- When a melody in MFi format is attached to mail, it is not attached when replying to or forwarding the mail, even if the icon is .
- If "Auto play" is set in Message Attachment, displaying received mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume.
- You can play melodies attached to sent mail, mail templates and mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way.

Saving melody

Saved melodies can be played with Melody or used as a ring tone.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.

3 Place the cursor at the melody to save and press .

- The set display name is displayed. Enter a name on the save melody screen to set the display name. Up to 25 two-byte or 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press .

The melody is saved in “ mode” folder of Melody.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a melody, press and select “Attachment” → “Save”.
- When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete melodies saved in FOMA terminal. To save melody, follow the instructions on the screen and delete melodies in FOMA terminal.
 - Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

Delete Attachment

Deleting attachment

You can delete still images and melodies attached to received mail.

- Still images exceeding 10,000 bytes, melodies displayed in the message or links to start software cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting an attached still image

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.

3 Place the cursor at the file name of the still image to delete and press .

- Press to delete all attached still images.

4 Select “Yes”.

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a still image or melody, press and select “Attachment” → “Delete” or “Delete all”.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS). The received mail is saved in "Inbox" and the sent mail is saved in "Outbox". "Unsent messages" contains the mail that was saved without sending or that failed to be sent.

- Up to 200 i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS) can be saved in Outbox and Unsent messages for each. Up to 1,000 mail/messages can be saved in Inbox (the maximum number may decrease depending on the data size.) ●P36

Example Displaying received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Displaying sent mail

- ① Press   on the stand-by display.

■ Displaying unsent mail

- ① Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

The received mail list is displayed.

■ Displaying mail in Message i-appli folder without starting software

- ① Place the cursor at a Message i-appli folder and press  .

- Select a Message i-appli folder to start the corresponding software. ●P324

3 Select the mail to display.

- You can register phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs in the phonebook and register URLs in Bookmark. ●P291, P292
- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail or display sites using the phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs. ●P223

INFORMATION

- When decorated mail is received from PCs, operations may not be the same as on PCs because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals.
- When there is more than one data item attached in the message text (links to start software or melodies displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case,  is displayed for the attached data.
- When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.
- When Privacy Mode is active, the folder list or folders are hidden according to Privacy Mode Setting for Mail.
 - When "Authorized access" is set, displaying the folder list requires entry of the terminal security code.
 - When "Hide secret fldrs" is set, the folders with Privacy "ON" in Folder settings are not displayed. You can cancel Privacy Mode temporarily and display the folders by holding down  or  half way for over a second on the folder list screen and entering the terminal security code.

■ Reading Inbox folder list screen

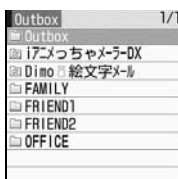


Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Inbox folder list screen.

• Icon definitions:

- (in gray): No mail
- (in yellow): No unread mail
- : No unread mail (Privacy ON)
- : No unread mail (used for Message i-α ppli)
- : Unread mail exists
- : Unread mail exists (Privacy ON)
- : Unread mail exists (used for Message i-α ppli)

■ Reading Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Outbox folder list screen.

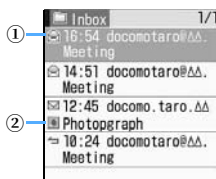
• Icon definitions:

- (in gray): No mail
- (in yellow): Mail exists
- : Privacy ON
- : Message i-α ppli

INFORMATION

- Inbox can contain "Inbox" folder, Message i-α ppli folders and up to 40 folders that you can add. ●P283
Newly received i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) is saved in "Inbox" folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort received mail to specific folders upon reception. ●P293
- Outbox/Unsent messages can contain "Outbox"/"Unsent messages" folder, Message i-α ppli folders and up to 10 folders that you can add respectively. ●P283 Newly sent i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) is saved in "Outbox" folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort sent mail to specific folders. ●P293
- Even if Message i-α ppli has been deleted, mail can be displayed if the folder for the i-α ppli software is left undeleted.
- Select a Message i-α ppli folder to start the corresponding software. ●P324

■ Reading Inbox mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the mail list screen. Reception date/time, sender and subject (for Short Message (SMS), beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

• Icon definitions:

① Status icon

: Unread

: Unread (unable to reply)

: Read

: Read (unable to reply)

: Read (replied)

: Read (forwarded)

: Protected

: Protected (unable to reply)

: Protected (replied)

: Protected (forwarded)

Note: For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

② Attachment/SMS/Message i-αppli icon

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes

: Melody

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody

: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes

: Short Message (SMS)

: i-αppli To

: Message i-αppli

Note: When i-motion or a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.

- When the sender is saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other day.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For Short Message (SMS) which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes --/-- (only on the reception day). Sender is not displayed.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

- When there are attachments or links to start software, the icon, file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen. For details, see the indicated reference page in the table below.

Type	Icon	Page
Still image	 : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal	P273
	 : Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal	
	 : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download	
	 : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded	
	 : Still image before download	
Melody	 : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal	P276
	 : Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal	
	 : Melody data error	
Link to start software		P336

- For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked with the mail address field in the phonebook data. For Short Message (SMS), the phone number of sender or receiver is checked with the phone number field in the phonebook data.
 - Only when the mail addresses completely match, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. For a mail address of i-mode terminal, if it is saved without "@docomo.ne.jp" in the phonebook, the name is not displayed even when the part preceding the symbol @ matches. However, when mail is received from "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is displayed as long as the part preceding the symbol @ matches, even if "@docomo.ne.jp" is omitted in the phonebook.
 - If a mail address or phone number is saved in the phonebook entry with secret attribute set, the name is not displayed unless Secret Mode is set.
 - When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), the name is not displayed.
- The subject and sender of Short Message (SMS) and delivered report are displayed as shown below.

Item	Short Message (SMS)	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Subject	Received SMS	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

Note1: When the sender's phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field in the received mail list.

The name is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs).

Note2: When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:

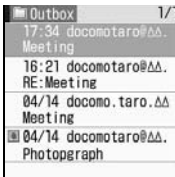
"User unset" (message was sent with setting not to notify the caller ID)

"Payphone" (message was sent from a payphone)

"Not support" (message was sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID information)

- You can change the mail status between read and unread. To change unread mail to read, place the cursor at unread mail and press **Menu** **5** **1**. To change read mail to unread, place the cursor at read mail and press **Menu** **5** **2**.
 - To change selected unread mail to read, press **Menu** **5** **3**. To change selected read mail to unread, press **Menu** **5** **4**. Then select mail to change the status, press **OK** and select "Yes".
 - To change all unread mail in a folder to read, press **Menu** **5** **5** and select "Yes". To change all read mail in a folder to unread, press **Menu** **5** **6** and select "Yes".
 - You cannot change the status of protected mail.

■ Reading Outbox/Unsent messages mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the mail list screen. Sent date/time, receiver and subject (for Short Message (SMS), beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

• Icons definitions:

No icon: Unprotected

: Protected

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes

: Melody

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody

: i-motion

: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes

: Short Message (SMS)

: Message icon

Note: When i-motion or a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.

- In the sent date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other day.
- If the receiver is saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- Select mail from the unsent mail list to display the mail composition screen.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

■ Reading received mail view screen



Receiver icon*, status icon, attachment/SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the received mail view screen.

* For i-mode Mail, you can check which of TO, CC and BCC is applied to you as a receiver.

• Icon definitions:

: Reception date and time : Sender

: Receiver (TO) : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)

: Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)

: Subject ("Received SMS", "Delivered report" or "Notify missed call" for Short Message (SMS))

: Sender (unable to reply)

: Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)

: Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)

• You can select the font size.

• For Short Message (SMS) which contains an error, is displayed.

■ Reading sent/unsent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment/SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the sent mail view screen.

• Icon definitions:

: Sent date and time

: Receiver (TO)

: Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)

: Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)

: Subject

• You can select the font size.

INFORMATION

- To display the sent or saved date and time, the date and time setting must be made. ◀P46

Adding and deleting folders

Adding folders

- In Inbox, you can add up to 40 folders other than “Inbox” folder and Message i-α ppli folders.
- In Outbox or Unsent messages, you can add up to 10 folders other than “Outbox” folder or “Unsent messages” folder and Message i-α ppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for “Inbox”, “Outbox” and “Unsent messages” folders and Message i-α ppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding an Inbox folder

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- Outbox ◀P278
- Unsent messages ◀P278

2 Press .

■ Changing folder settings

- ① Place the cursor at the folder to change the settings and press  .

3 Select each item to set.

Folder name : Sets the mail folder name.

Up to 8 two-byte or 16 one-byte characters can be entered.

Privacy : Sets whether to display a folder when Privacy Mode is active.

- If “ON” is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (“Hide secret fldrs” set for Mail).

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- When Message i-α ppli is downloaded, a folder for Message i-α ppli is automatically created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i-α ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

Deleting folders

- "Inbox", "Outbox" and "Unsent messages" folders set by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders with protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection, and then delete the folders.
- A Message i-appli folder cannot be deleted unless the software for the folder is deleted. ●P341

Example Deleting an Inbox folder

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.**
 - Outbox ●P278
 - Unsent messages ●P278
- 2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press  .**
- 3 Enter the terminal security code.**
- 4 Select "Yes".**

Checking number of mail items [Msgs. in Folder]

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.**
 - Outbox ●P278
 - Unsent messages ●P278
- 2 Place the cursor at the folder to check and press  .**
- 3 Press  after checking the number.**

INFORMATION

- When operating from the mail list screen, press  and select "Display" → "Check No. of items".

Checking mail address [Display Address]

You can view an entire mail address when not all the address is displayed or the address is saved in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

- 1 Display the mail view screen.**
 - Inbox ●P278
 - Outbox ●P278
 - Mail templates ●P263
- 2 Select a sender or receiver address to display.**
- 3 Press  after checking the address.**

INFORMATION

- To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press **[Menu]** on the mail view screen and select "Display" → "Display address". When operating from the received/sent/unsent mail list, place the cursor at the mail to display mail address, press **[Menu]** and select "Display" → "Display address". All receivers' addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all receivers except you for received mail ("TO:" and "CC:" are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder [Move Mail]

Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders or the miniSD memory card.

Example Moving received mail to another folder

1 Press **[☑]** **[1 1/28]** on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox **[P278]** • Unsent messages **[P278]**

2 Place the cursor at the mail to move and press **[Menu]** **[4 1/28]** **[1 1/28]** **[1 1/28]**.

■ Moving selected received mail

① Press **[Menu]** **[4 1/28]** **[1 1/28]** **[2 1/28]** and select mail.

- Press **[☑]** to select or cancel an item, and press **[Menu]** to select or cancel all.

② Press **[☐]**.

■ Moving all received mail

① Press **[Menu]** **[4 1/28]** **[1 1/28]** **[3 1/28]**.

■ Copying received mail to miniSD memory card

① Press **[Menu]** **[4 1/28]** **[4 1/28]** **[1 1/28]**.

② Select "Yes".

■ Copying all received mail to miniSD memory card (backup)

① Press **[Menu]** **[4 1/28]** **[4 1/28]** **[2 1/28]**.

② Enter the terminal security code.

③ Select "Yes".

3 Press **[☑]** and select the destination folder.

4 Select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- If mail is received when multiple received mail is selected, "Unable to display message" appears and the moving operation may be canceled.

Sorting received/sent mail [Sort]

Default By date

You can temporarily change the sorting order of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox.

- You cannot change the order of mail for Unsent messages and Short Message in UIM.

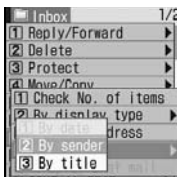
Example Sorting received mail list**1** Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox 

2 Press .

■ Sorting sent mail list

- ① Press  .

3 Press to .

The sorting order of the mail list changes temporarily.

INFORMATION

- When you exit the display of the received or sent mail list, the sorting order returns to "By date".
- When sorted by sender or by address, the mail will be sorted by mail address not by name saved in the phonebook even if the mail address is saved in the phonebook.
- When sorted by title (subject), if the subject contains both two-byte and one-byte characters, the mail may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When sorted by title (subject), the mail will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if Short Message (SMS) is included in the mail list and beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Making calls from received/sent mail [Phone Call]

A call can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp") and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are saved in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making call from received mail**1** Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox 

2 Place the cursor at the mail to make a call to and press .

- When operating from the received/sent mail view screen, press  .

3 Select each item for Customized Call and set. **4** Press and select "Yes".

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- Up to 500 received mail and up to 100 items for each of sent mail and unsent mail can be protected.
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox  P278
- Unsent messages  P278

2 Place the cursor at the mail to protect and press .

- When the mail is protected, the status icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail :  (read)  (unable to reply)  (replied)  (forwarded)

Sent mail : 

Unsent mail : 

■ Protecting selected received mail

① Press and select mail.

- Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all. Selecting all received mail is not possible when the number of unprotected mail being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press .

■ Protecting all received mail

① Press .

■ Canceling protection of received mail

① Place the cursor at the mail to cancel protection and press .

■ Canceling protection of selected received mail

① Press and select mail.

- Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of all received mail

① Press .

INFORMATION

- All of the protected data are deleted when Delete All Data is performed.  P459
- When protecting from the mail view screen, press  and select "Protect". To cancel protection, press  and select "Cancel protection".
- When operating from the sent/unsent mail list, press  and select "Protect" → "Protect", "Protect selected" or "Protect all". To cancel protection, press  and select "Protect" → "Release", "Cancel selected" or "Cancel all protect".
- If the maximum number of protected items is exceeded while protecting all mail, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.
- If mail is received when multiple received mail is selected, "Unable to display message" appears and the moving operation may be canceled.

Deleting received/sent mail [Delete Mail]

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mail at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	All mail (including unread items)	○	×	×
Read msgs. in folder	Read mail in folder	○	○	×
All (in folder)	All mail in folder (including unread items)	○	○	×
7 days past (folder)	All mail in folder that has been stored for longer than the specified number of days (including unread items)	○	○	×
14 days past (folder)		○	○	×
30 days past (folder)		○	○	×
Selected item	A selected mail item	×	○	○
Selected items	Selected mail items	×	○	×

1 Press on the stand-by display.

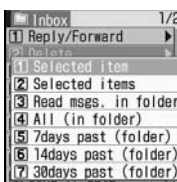
■ Deleting all mail

- Press   .
- Enter the terminal security code and go to Step 4.

2 Select a folder and press .

- To delete one item, select the received mail to delete.

3 Press to .



■ Deleting selected received mail

- Press  and select mail.
 - Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- Press .

■ Deleting all received mail in a folder

- Press  and enter the terminal security code.

4 Select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- If mail is received when multiple received mail is selected, "Unable to display message" appears and the moving operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

Sent/unsent mail can be deleted in the following method:

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	All mail	○	×	×
All (in folder)	All mail in folder	○	○	×
Selected item	A selected mail item	×	○	○ (sent mail only)
Selected items	Selected mail items	×	○	×

Example Deleting sent mail

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Deleting all mail

- ① Press   .
- ② Enter the terminal security code and go to Step 4.

2 Select a folder.

3 Place the cursor at the mail to delete and press .

■ Deleting selected sent mail

- ① Press    and select mail.
 - Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Deleting all sent mail in a folder

- ① Press    and enter the terminal security code.

4 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- Unsent mail can be deleted using the same operation.
- When operating from the folder list, press  and select “Delete message”.
- When operating from the mail view screen, press  and select “Delete”.

Useful functions of mail

When the message of i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) contains phone number, mail address or URL, select it to make a call (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To) or connect to a site (Web To). You can also copy characters in i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) and save phone number or mail address, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function from a site. ●P223

INFORMATION

- A call can be made by selecting a phone number and call type.
- When mail is received from a PC, etc., Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function may not be available.

Copying texts

You can copy characters in i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) being displayed. Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen or phonebook registration screen.

- For Short Message (SMS) stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied.
- Copied characters are saved in FOMA terminal until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and they can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be saved. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved characters.

Example Copying from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item to copy.

- Inbox ●P278
- Outbox ●P278
- Mail templates ●P263
- Short Message (SMS) in UIM ●P316

2 Press .

- Place the cursor at the item to copy when copying selected item.

3 Select the copying method.



Copy text : Copies a specified range of characters in message text.

Copy title : Copies the subject.

Copy selected item : Copies selected items (mail address, phone number, etc.).

- To copy message text, specify the copy range. ●Step 2 of "Copying URL" in P224

4 Display a character entry screen and paste the copied characters.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the view screen for sent mail, mail template or Short Message (SMS) in UIM, press  and select "Move/Copy" or "Copy".
- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be copied and pasted to Notepad before saving as schedule. ➡P453

Registering phone number, address and URL in phonebook

You can register a mail address, phone number and URL in i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data in a new phonebook entry or add data to an existing phonebook entry.

Example Registering data from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item to register.

- Inbox ➡P278
- Outbox ➡P278
- Short Message (SMS) in UIM ➡P316

2 Place the cursor at the item to register and press .

3 Press or .



- To add as a new entry, press . The operations that follow are the same as for saving from sites (Step 3 in "Registering new data" ➡P224).
- To update an existing entry, press . The operations that follow are the same as for saving from sites (Step 3 in "Adding data to existing phonebook entry" ➡P224).

INFORMATION

- When operating from the view screen for sent mail, Short Message (SMS) in UIM or mail in the miniSD memory card, press  and select "Save".
- If the cursor is not placed on a mail address, phone number or URL in the i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) displayed, the item cannot be registered. However, adding to the phonebook is possible by placing the cursor at the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail (receiver can be selected if there is more than one).
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URL as bookmark

If there is a URL in the message text of the i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) being displayed, you can directly register the URL from that screen.

Example Registering bookmark from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing a URL to register.

- Inbox ➡ P278
- Outbox ➡ P278
- Short Message (SMS) in UIM ➡ P316

2 Place the cursor at the URL, press and press .

3 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the view screen for sent mail or Short Message (SMS) in UIM, press  and select "Save".
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Mail Setting

Setting mail function of FOMA terminal

Function	Description	Page
Sort Criteria	Sorts received/sent mail automatically to designated folders.	P293
Signature	Sets the signature to add to mail.	P296
Message Retrieval	Sets the items to inquire to the i-mode Center.	P296
Receive Option Setting	Sets to receive selected mail without auto receive.	P297
Mail Group Setting	Registers multiple addresses in a group.	P297
Mail Reply Format	Specifies whether to quote received mail when replying.	P298
Mail List Setting	Sets the display format of received/sent mail list.	P299
Incoming Msg. Attach.	Specifies whether to receive attachments.	P299
Message Attachment	Specifies whether to play attached melodies automatically when mail is displayed.	P300
Display Type	Sets the type of mail to display in received/sent mail list.	P300
Font Size	Sets the font size of mail displayed.	P301
Incoming Msg. Setting	Sets the FOMA terminal operation for incoming mail.	P302
Display Priority	Specifies whether to display screen for receiving mail during FOMA terminal operation.	P302

Sorting mail automatically into designated folders [Sort Criteria]

Received/sent i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS) can be sorted into the specified folder automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria for each of Inbox and Outbox can be registered.

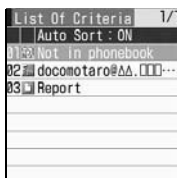
Setting sort criteria

- To activate the sort criteria set, turn Auto sort "ON". ◀P295

Example Sorting received mail by mail address

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .



Auto sort ON/OFF is displayed in the first line. And the registered sort criteria are listed in the order of priority.

- Icon definitions:

: Sent mail address

: Received mail address

: Phonebook No.

: Not in phonebook

: Subject

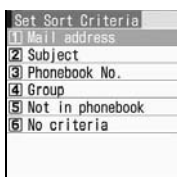
: Group

: No criteria

■ Sorting sent mail

① Press .

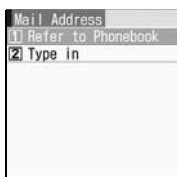
3 Press .



Sort criteria setting screen

Sorts received/sent mail for the specified mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort Short Messages (SMS) as well.

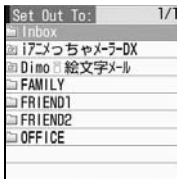
4 Press , enter a mail address and press .



■ Specifying mail address saved in phonebook

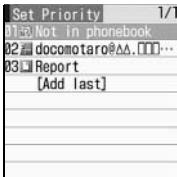
① Press , select the phonebook entry containing the address to enter, and select the mail address.

5 Select the folder to sort to.



- When a Message i-appli folder is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed indicating mail in the selected folder is used for software. To sort mail to the folder, select "Yes".

6 Specify the priority.



The new criterion is added to the selected row.

- Select "Add last" to add the criteria to the end of the list.
- Criteria are placed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria is changed, "Move to last" is displayed instead of "Add last".

■ Specifying subject

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 15 two-byte characters).

You cannot sort Short Messages (SMS) by subject.

- ① Press **[2]** on the sort criteria setting screen. ➡P293
- ② Enter the subject and press **[OK]**.

■ Specifying phonebook No.

Sorts mail by the mail address or phone number saved to the specified phonebook No.

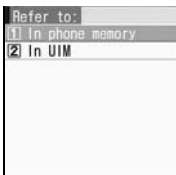
i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address with that in the phonebook. Short Messages (SMS) are sorted by checking the phone number with that in the phonebook.

- ① Press **[3]** on the sort criteria setting screen. ➡P293
- ② Enter the phonebook No.
- ③ Select the phonebook data.

■ Specifying group

Sorts mail by the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group in the phonebook.

- ① Press **[4]** on the sort criteria setting screen. ➡P293
- ② Press **[1]** or **[2]**.



- ③ Select the group to set.

■ Specifying Not in phonebook

Sorts mail of which the mail address or phone number is not saved in the phonebook.

i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address with that in the phonebook. Short Messages (SMS) are sorted by checking the phone number with that in the phonebook.

- ① Press **[5]** on the sort criteria setting screen. ➡P293

■ To set no condition

Sorts all mail without setting criteria.

- ① Press **[6]** on the sort criteria setting screen. ➡P293

INFORMATION

- The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when two criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows.
 - ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
 - ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- To set sort criteria when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" is set for Phonebook & Logs or "Authorized access" or "Hide secret fldrs" is set for Mail), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after criteria are set. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address; therefore, no sorting occurs when "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp" is specified in the criteria.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

■ Changing registered sort criteria

- ① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press .
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 to 6 in "Setting sort criteria". ➡P293
- ② Select "Yes".

■ Changing priority

- ① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press .
- ② Select the position to move.
 - The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select "Move to last".

■ Deleting a criteria

- ① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to delete, press and select "Yes".
 - To delete all criteria, press , enter the terminal security code and select "Yes".

3 Select the sort criteria to check.

- You can change sort criteria while checking it.

Setting Auto sort

Default got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON

Example Sorting received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press and press .

- To set Auto sort for sent mail, press and press .

3 Press .

■ Not sorting mail automatically

- ① Press .

You can register the signature added to message of i-mode Mail or Short Messages (SMS). You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

- You can enter up to 50 two-byte or 100 one-byte characters.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Auto insert : Sets whether to insert signature automatically.

- Press  not to insert signature automatically.

Signature : Enter the signature text.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- The characters in the signature are included in the total character count for the message text.
- If you set not to automatically insert the signature, you can use the submenu to insert the signature when composing mail. ▶ P250
- If you add your phone number, mail address or URL to your signature and send i-mode Mail to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function.

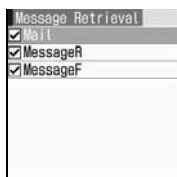
Setting items to inquire to i-mode Center [Message Retrieval]

Default all selected

- "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" are all selected as ☒ by default. If you do not want to check for i-mode Mail, Message R or Message F, change to ☐.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select the type of inquiry.



- Press  to select or cancel all.

3 Press .

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Not selecting and receiving mail

① Press .

Adding address to mail group [Mail Group Setting]

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

• Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Editing group name

① Place the cursor at the mail group to edit and press  .

■ Copying mail group

① Place the cursor at the mail group to copy and press  .

■ Deleting a mail group

① Place the cursor at the mail group to delete and press   .

② Select "Yes".

■ Deleting all mail groups

① Press    and enter the terminal security code.

② Select "Yes".

3 Enter a mail group name and press .

Mail group name is added.

• Press  to add another group.

• Up to 8 two-byte or 16 one-byte characters can be entered.

4 Select a mail group to add mail address.

■ Editing mail address

① Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to edit and press  .

② Edit the mail address and press .

■ Deleting a mail address

① Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to delete and press  .

② Select "Yes".

■ Displaying mail address details

① Press  .

• The name in the phonebook is not displayed when the mail address is not saved in the phonebook or when Privacy Mode is active.

② Press  after checking the details.

5 Press and select each item to set.

Address Type : Sets TO, CC and BCC.

- TO is the main address.
- CC is the broadcast address. The mail address is displayed to other receivers. Select CC when sending mail addressed to TO also to other addresses.
- BCC is the broadcast address. Mail addresses set as BCC are not displayed to other receivers.

Address : Enter the mail address.

- Up to 50 characters can be entered including one-byte alphanumeric characters and some symbols.

■ Entering mail address from phonebook

① Press . ➡P110

6 Press .

- When the mail address is saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.
- To add another mail address to the mail group, repeat from Step 5.

7 Press .

The mail address is added to the mail group.

INFORMATION

- When the same address is registered in both of the phonebook and mail group, changing the name in the phonebook changes the name registered in the mail group.
- If TO is not set for any addresses in a mail group, mail cannot be sent.
- Entering mail address from mail group ➡P252

Setting whether to quote message when replying [Mail Reply Format]

Default Quote: Yes Quote characters: > (one-byte character)

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to an i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS). In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Quote : Sets whether to quote message when replying to mail.

- Press  to go to Step 3.

Quote characters : Sets a quote character.

- You can enter 1 two-byte or 2 one-byte characters.
- The quote characters are included in the total character count for the message text.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

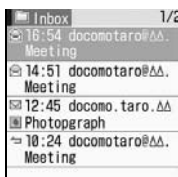
3 Press .

Setting display style of mail list [Mail List Setting]

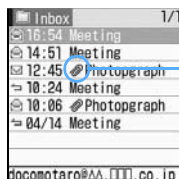
Default Display 2 rows

The display style of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox can be set.

- You cannot select the display style for Unsent messages and Short Message (SMS) in UIM.



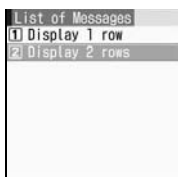
Display 2 rows



Display 1 row

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .



Setting whether to receive attachments [Incoming Msg. Attach.]

Default Image: Receive Melody: Receive

You can set whether to receive still images and melodies attached to i-mode Mail.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Image : Sets whether to receive images.

Melody : Sets whether to receive melodies.

3 Press .

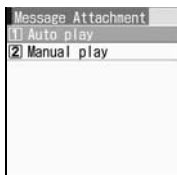
INFORMATION

- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message is received regardless of this setting.

You can set whether melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F play automatically when the mail is displayed.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .



INFORMATION

- When melodies are set to play automatically, the melody plays once when you display received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with attached melodies. When more than one melody is attached, the melody plays sequentially.

Selecting type of mail to display [Display Type]

You can select the type of mail to display in the mail list for Inbox and Outbox.

- You cannot select the display type for Unsent messages and Short Message (SMS) in UIM.

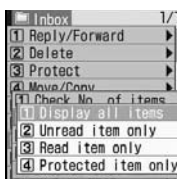
Example Selecting display type for received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox ➡ P278

2 Press .

3 Press to .



- For Outbox, you can select "Display all items" or "Protected item only".

INFORMATION

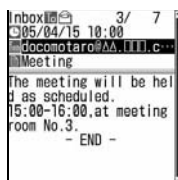
- Exiting the received or sent mail list returns the setting to "Display all items".
- If you select "Read item only", received mail items protected are not displayed.

You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail and mail template, etc.

- The font size cannot be changed while composing and editing mail.



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard):
20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing font size of received mail

1 Press [Menu] [1] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox P278
- Mail templates P263
- Short Message (SMS) in UIM P316

2 Select a mail and press [Menu] [3] [1].

- When a mail template is displayed, press [Menu] [4] [1].

3 Press [1] to [3].



INFORMATION

- When operating from the view screen for receive mail, sent mail and unsent mail in the miniSD memory card, press [Menu] and select "Font size".
- Once the font size has been changed, the new font size is used for displaying received mail, sent mail, mail templates and the mail in the miniSD memory card.

Setting operations for incoming mail [Incoming Msg. Setting]

Default Select mail ring tone: Melody/ ハート 1 (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Pattern8
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

You can set the operations that is performed when i-mode Mail or Short Message (SMS) is received.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Select mail ring tone : Sets the sound of ring tone. Melody or movie ringtone can be selected.

Incoming msg. lighting

: Sets the flashing pattern of the multi-indicator.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone within the range of 1 to 30 seconds.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence. ◀P106
- Even if you set "Sync melody" for Incoming msg. lighting or Set vibrate alert, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

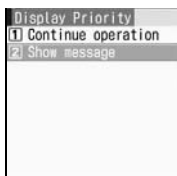
Setting mail reception notification [Display Priority]

Default Show message

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  or .



Continue operation : Displays none of the receiving and reception result screens when i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Show message : Displays the receiving and reception result screens when i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

INFORMATION

- Even when "Show message" is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed during camera use, i-appli execution, streaming type i-motion play or alarm sounding.
- When "Continue operation" is set, i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) and Message R/F are received automatically but the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the ring tone/multi-indicator is not activated in the following conditions:
 - Not in stand-by (other function is running)
 - During All Lock
 - During Driving Mode
 - During PIM Lock
 - When Camera is activated
 - During alarm sounding
 - When software has been started from the i-appli stand-by display
- When i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) or Message R/F is received during a voice call or data communication, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed regardless of this function setting.

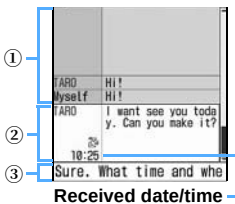
Chat Mail

Composing and sending chat mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. Mail sent and received can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the other parties must be registered in the member list in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is "ON" or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as i-mode Mail with the subject "チャットメール (Chat mail)" in one-byte or two-byte characters.

Chat mail screen



① Sent/received log

Press to scroll the sent/received log of chat mail.

- When the sent/received log cannot be displayed on one screen, pressing displays the first row and pressing displays the last row.

② Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the chat mail at the cursor. Up to 250 two-byte or 500 one-byte characters can be displayed.

When is indicated at the lower right and left of the field, page can be switched using .

- Icon definitions:

: Broadcast address not registered in the member list is contained.

③ Text entry field

Displays the entered text.

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen is displayed. Press   and go to Step 3 to add another member.

2 Select “Yes”.

3 Press .

4 Select Address field and enter a mail address.



- Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. ◀P250

■ Entering mail address from phonebook

① Press .

② Search the phonebook and select a mail address.

- When registering a mail address of i-mode terminal, enter the address containing “@docomo.ne.jp”. If the address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, omit “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, you need to register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook and then register only the phone number to chat member.

5 Select Nickname field and enter a nickname.

- Up to 4 two-byte or 8 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When no nickname is specified, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select Font color field and select a color.

- The color not used for registered member is displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange and black.
- The nickname on the chat mail screen is displayed in the selected color.

7 Press .

- To add another member, press  and repeat Step 4 to 7.

8 Press .

The member is added.

INFORMATION

- When a new member is added from the received mail list, text submenu or broadcast address list, the edit member info screen appears with the specified address entered in Address field. ◀P308
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.

- Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you exit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in "Outbox" folder for i-mode Mail. However, when the sent chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- Select "Yes" when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members.

2 Select the text entry field and enter message.

- Up to 250 two-byte or 500 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When "ON" is set for Chat mail in Edit by Slide, you can display the text entry screen by opening FOMA terminal on the chat mail screen.

■ Copying and pasting text from chat mail log

① Place the cursor at the chat mail to copy text on the chat mail screen, press   and specify the range.

- Specifying the range P519

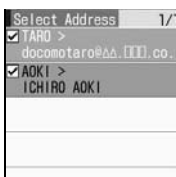
② Select the text entry field and press  .

- Pasting text P519

■ Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail

① Press   .

3 Press and select addresses.



- Press  to select or cancel an address, and press  to select or cancel all.

4 Press .

5 Press .

- When the chat mail has been sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

- Chat mail can be operated from the following screens.
 - Press **[Menu]** **[7 8 9]** **[5 6 7]** while displaying the receive mail list.
 - Press **[Menu]** **[3 4 5]** **[3 4 5]** while displaying received mail.
 - Press **[Menu]** **[7 8 9]** **[4 5 6]** while displaying the sent mail list.
 - Press **[Menu]** **[3 4 5]** **[3 4 5]** while displaying sent mail.
- If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when existing chat mail, it is saved in "Unsent messages" folder. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in "Unsent messages" folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in "Unsent messages" folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.
- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, chat mail cannot be sent. If you send chat mail while receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F and fail, FOMA terminal will automatically retry a maximum of 3 times.
- To start chat mail when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" or "Hide secret fldrs" set for Mail), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Receiving chat mail [Receive Chat Mail]

When chat mail is received, you are informed of it with the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, or multi-indicator.

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject "チャットメール" in one-byte or two-byte katakana characters is received from a registered chat member, a message appears indicating that the log is updated and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, it is saved in "Inbox" folder. Display the mail on the chat mail screen following the procedure in "When chat mail has not been started" below.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in "Inbox" folder as i-mode Mail.

- When received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list (P278) and press **[Menu]** **[7 8 9]** **[5 6 7]**.

- When operating from the received mail view screen, press **[Menu]** **[3 4 5]** **[3 4 5]**.
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to register the sender address. Select "Yes" and register.
P304

When receiving chat mail stored in i-mode Center

1 Press **[Menu]** **[1 2 3]** on the chat mail screen.

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message appears indicating that the log is updated and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

- When Indicator light is set to "ON" in Illumination Setting, the multi-indicator flashes while unread chat mail exists.
- Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.
- When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.
- You can reply to chat mail as i-mode Mail using the same procedure as for i-mode Mail. ➡P271
- Even if the message of chat mail contains phone number, mail address or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function is not available. In addition, i-α ppli To function is also unavailable. When you exit chat mail and display the chat mail from Inbox, these functions become available.
- When you delete chat mail from "Inbox" folder, the nickname appears as "-----", data/time as "--/--" and text as "Deleted." on the chat mail screen.
- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read mail in "Inbox" folder.
- When mail is sent or received from Message i-α ppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to check broadcast addresses on the chat mail screen and press .

- When the sender is not registered as a chat member, "Not recorded" appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press  to display the mail address for the displayed name.

■ Adding unregistered sender to chat member

- ① Press .

■ Copying broadcast addresses

- ① Press  .

Deleting all chat mail log

All chat mail on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mail in "Inbox" folder or "Outbox" folder is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 Press on the chat mail screen.

2 Select "Yes".

Editing chat members

You can edit chat member information, add and delete members. The information on registered members can be checked and all registered members can be replaced.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select “Yes”.

2 Press .

3 Place the cursor at the member to edit and press .

■ Deleting a chat member

- ① Place the cursor at the member to delete and press  .
- ② Select “Yes”.

■ Displaying chat member details

- ① Select the member to display details.
 - To check details of all members, press  .
- ② Press  after checking the details.

■ Adding chat members

- ① Press  .
- Adding chat member P304

■ Replacing all chat members by mail group

- ① Press  .
- ② Select a mail group and select “Yes”.

All chat members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

4 Press .

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

3 Select Nickname field and enter a nickname.

- Up to 4 two-byte or 8 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When no nickname is specified, “Myself” is displayed on the chat mail screen.

4 Select Text color field and select a color.

5 Press .

1 Press  or  on the chat mail screen.

2 Select “No”.

Chat mail exits. The previous chat mail is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When “Yes” is selected, all chat mail is deleted. In this case, the chat mail in “Inbox” folder or “Outbox” folder is also deleted except for protected mail.

INFORMATION

- When unsent (draft) chat mail exists, it is saved in “Unsent messages” folder. The previous unsent (draft) chat mail is displayed next time chat mail is started. However, when there is not enough storage space for mail, chat mail is not saved.

Setting operations for incoming chat mail [Incoming Chat Mail Setting]

Default Incoming setting: Same:Msg setting

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Incoming setting : Sets whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow Incoming Msg. Setting.

- When “Customize” is set, the following items can be set.

Ring tone : Sets whether or not to emit the ring tone. Melody or movie ringtone can be selected.

Lighting : Sets the flashing pattern of the multi-indicator.

Vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone within the range of 1 to 30 seconds.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

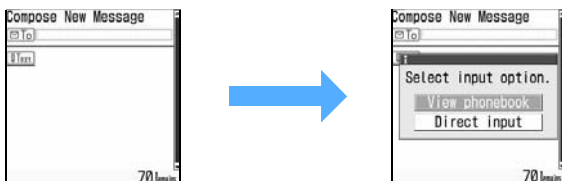
- When more than one mail is received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

Composing and sending Short Message (SMS)

- You compose and send Short Message (SMS). Short Message (SMS) can be saved without sending.
- If you use one-byte katakana and pictograms, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
 - Up to 200 unsent mail/messages can be saved.
 - Short Message (SMS) will be able to be sent/received to/from parties using overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the service starting date and oversea carriers available.

Example Composing and sending Short Message (SMS) by entering address directly

1 Press on the stand-by display and select field.



2 Select “Direct input” and enter the address.

- When the address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed in  field.
- To send to a party using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter “+” (by pressing  for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number (omit the first “0” of the phone number).

■ Searching phonebook

- ① Select “View phonebook”.
- ② Search the phonebook and select a phone number.
Enter the phone number of the other party's FOMA terminal.

3 Select and enter message.

- When the font type is set to “Japanese” in SMS Setting, up to 70 two-byte or one-byte characters can be entered.
- When the font type is set to “English” in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (except `、。」「、・` and `°`) can be entered.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character of message.

■ Inserting signature

- ① Press  .
- Signature must be recorded beforehand. 
 - The characters in the signature are included in the total character count for the message.

4 Press .

■ Saving Short Message (SMS) without sending

- ① Press  .
- If neither the address nor message is entered, it is not saved.
 - Up to 200 unsent message can be saved.
 - You can edit and send unsent Short Message (SMS). 

INFORMATION

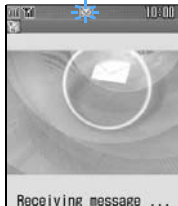
- You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies. ●P516
- Characters cannot be decorated.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report are set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the Short Message Center while composing Short Message (SMS).
- Depending on the model of receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms (●P538) may not be displayed correctly.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and Short Message (SMS) is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send Short Message (SMS) from Unsent messages. ●P265
- When transmission is completed correctly, Short Message (SMS) is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected sent mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep. ●P287
- If you set delivered report setting to "Request" (●P314) and send a Short Message (SMS), you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. Delivered report is saved in Inbox.
- Even if "Not notify" is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when Short Message (SMS) is sent.
- When a phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.
- Some characters may not be sent depending on the font type. ●P248
- The signature is not inserted when the font type is set to "English" in SMS Setting.
- If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the characters even if the number of characters is less than maximum number of characters. Reduce the number of characters and send it again.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, Short Message (SMS) cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or Short Messages (SMS) from Unsent messages. ●P288
- You can compose and send Short Messages (SMS) easily to the parties saved to phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail). ●P266
- Reading received/sent/unsent Short Message (SMS) list/view screen ●P280

When Short Message (SMS) is received

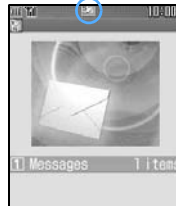
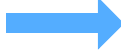
When a Short Message (SMS) is delivered, it is automatically received and the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, and multi-indicator notify you that a Short Message (SMS) has been received. The received Short Message (SMS) is saved in Inbox.

1 Receive a Short Message (SMS).

Blinks while message is being received.



Reception
completed.



 : Unread Short Message (SMS) exists.

 : Unread Short Message (SMS) and i-mode Mail exist.

 : Displays the number of received Short Messages (SMS).

 blinks and "Receiving message..." is displayed.

Mail ring tone sounds, the multi-indicator flashes and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Pressing  while receiving messages stops the reception.
- If you do not press any keys for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

■ Reading received Short Message (SMS) immediately

① Press  or  on the reception result screen.

- You can reply to (P271) or forward (P272) the received Short Message (SMS). The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail. You cannot reply to Short Message (SMS) for which "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support" is displayed in the sender field.

■ When reception fails

" × " is indicated after "Messages".

INFORMATION

- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority.
 ☛P302
- When Indicator light is set to "ON" in Illumination Setting, the multi-indicator flashes while unread Short Message (SMS) exists.
- When FOMA terminal receives Short Messages (SMS), Short Messages (SMS) stored in the Short Message Center are deleted.
- Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as a Short Message (SMS).
- When Short Message (SMS) is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Collating with the phonebook is performed as follows.
 - When two or more Short Messages (SMS) are received at the same time, the mail ring tone, vibrator and multi-indicator operate according to the settings of the Short Message (SMS) received last.
 - When the phone number is saved in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the incoming mail settings are valid only in Secret Mode.
 - When Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs), the name saved in the phonebook is not displayed and the ring tone, vibrator, etc. are not activated.
- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, Short Message (SMS) is not automatically received. Note that, after receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, Short Message (SMS) is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.
- If reception of Short Message (SMS) fails, you can use Check SMS to receive the Short Message (SMS) again. When the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, display unread mail (☛P278), delete unnecessary mail (☛P288) or cancel mail protection (☛P287) before receiving new message.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep. ☛P287
 - When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of Short Message (SMS) is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. ☛P27
 - When the UIM already contains 20 Short Messages (SMS), Short Message (SMS) may not be received even though there is space available in Inbox.  or  is indicated on the screen (☛P27). Move to FOMA terminal or delete Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM. ☛P317, P318
- When Short Message (SMS) received from other company's mobile phones has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of sent or received Short Messages (SMS) saved on the UIM has reached 20, Short Message (SMS) cannot be received. Delete unnecessary Short Messages (SMS) and perform Check SMS again.

Checking whether there is Short Message (SMS) present

You can make inquiry for any Short Message (SMS) delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned OFF.

- Depending on radio wave condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

If the Short Message Center stores Short Message (SMS), it is received.

INFORMATION

- The length of the waiting time for receiving Short Message (SMS) may be longer.

SMS Setting

Setting Short Message (SMS)

Default Font type: Japanese Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days
SMSC: DoCoMo Type of Number: international

Usually, you do not need to change SMSC, Address and Type of Number settings.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

- Font type** : Select Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type. ●P248
- Delivered report** : Sets whether to request a delivered report when you send a Short Message (SMS).
- Keep in SMS center** : Sets the storage period of sent Short Messages (SMS) in the Short Message Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the Short Messages (SMS).
- SMSC** : Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.
- When "Others" is set, select Address field and enter the address. Up to 20 one-byte characters can be entered.
- Type of Number** : Select either "international" or "unknown".

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the Short Message (SMS) composition screen, press  and select "SMS settings". In this case, only "Delivered report" and "Keep in SMS center" can be set. Settings made from the submenu of the Short Message (SMS) composition screen are valid only for Short Message (SMS) being composed.
- You can set to reject all Short Messages (SMS)/Short Messages (SMS) with hide caller ID. ●P244

Saving Short Message (SMS) in UIM

You can save sent and received Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM by moving/copying them.

Moving/copying Short Message (SMS) to UIM

- Up to 20 received/sent Short Messages (SMS) can be saved in the UIM.
- The number of delivered reports is not included in the total number of 20.
- Short Messages (SMS) in Unsent messages cannot be saved in the UIM.
- When you move or copy a sent Short Message (SMS), the corresponding delivered report is moved or copied to Inbox of the UIM together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received Short Message (SMS) to UIM

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Short Message (SMS) in Outbox 

2 Place the cursor at the Short Message (SMS) to move and press

   .

■ Moving selected Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press    and select Short Messages (SMS).
 - Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Copying a Short Message (SMS)

- ① Place the cursor at the Short Message (SMS) to copy and press    .

■ Copying selected Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press     and select Short Messages (SMS).
 - Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

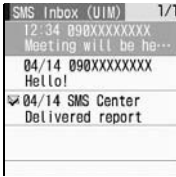
3 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select “Move/Copy”→“Move to UIM” or “Copy to UIM”.
- When the UIM already contains 20 Short Messages (SMS), you cannot move or copy additional Short Messages (SMS). Delete unnecessary Short Messages (SMS) from the UIM. 

Example Displaying a received Short Message (SMS)

1 Press on the stand-by display.



Received Short Messages (SMS) are displayed in two lines on the received SMS (UIM) list screen. The received date and the sender or receiver are displayed in the first line, and the beginning of the message or “Delivered report” is in the second line.

• Icon definitions:

 : Unread (able to reply)

 : Unread (unable to reply)

No icon: Read (able to reply)

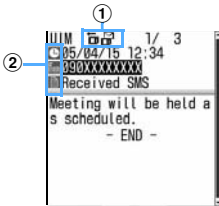
 : Read (unable to reply)

 : Delivered report

• The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether Short Message (SMS) in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.

• To display sent Short Message (SMS), press   .

2 Select a Short Message (SMS).



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the received SMS (UIM) view screen.

• Icon definitions:

① **Icon**

 : Received (able to reply)

 : Read (unable to reply)

 : Sent

 : Delivered report

 : Short Message (SMS) in UIM

② **Icon**

 : Date and time

 : Sender

 : Receiver

 : Sender (unable to reply)

 : Subject (“Received SMS”, “Sent SMS” or “Delivered report”)

• The receiver is displayed in the view screen of the delivered report. “SMS Center” is displayed for the sender.

• When a sent Short Message (SMS) is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are erased from the Short Message (SMS) inside the UIM.

INFORMATION

- From Short Message (SMS) in UIM, you can also reply to or forward received messages, resend messages already sent, change the font size, save in the phonebook and perform other operations. The operation is the same as that of received/sent Short Messages (SMS).
- When you reply to/forward or resend Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM, the sent Short Messages (SMS) are saved in Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- To display received Short Messages (SMS) or sent Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM when Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” set for Mail), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Moving/copying Short Message (SMS) in UIM to FOMA terminal

You move or copy Short Message (SMS) stored in the UIM to Inbox or Outbox of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy a sent Short Message (SMS), the corresponding delivered report is moved or copied to Inbox together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received Short Message (SMS) to FOMA terminal

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Moving/copying sent Short Message (SMS)

- ① Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the Short Message (SMS) to move and press

  .

■ Moving selected Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press    and select Short Messages (SMS).
• Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Copying a Short Message (SMS)

- ① Place the cursor at the Short Message (SMS) to copy and press   .

■ Copying selected Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press    and select Short Messages (SMS).
• Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

3 Press .



4 Select a folder to move to and select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select “Move/Copy” → “Move to phone” or “Copy to phone”.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox or Outbox or the maximum number of received or sent messages is exceeded, you cannot move or copy messages. Also, unprotected messages are not overwritten.

Deleting Short Message (SMS) from UIM

- When you delete a sent Short Message (SMS), the corresponding delivered report is also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received Short Message (SMS) from UIM

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Deleting sent Short Message (SMS)

- ① Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the Short Message (SMS) to delete and press

  .

■ Deleting selected Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press    and select Short Messages (SMS).
 - Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.
- ② Press .

■ Deleting all Short Messages (SMS)

- ① Press   .
- ② Enter the terminal security code.

■ Deleting all delivered reports

- ① Press   .
- ② Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

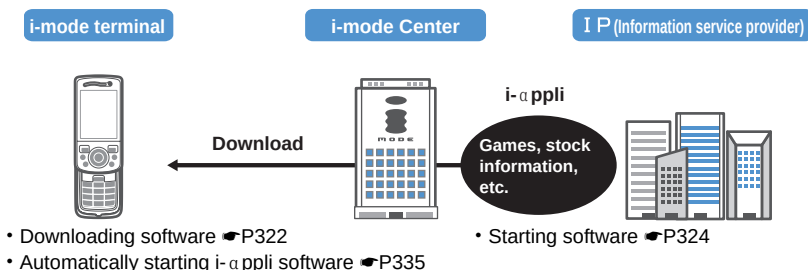
- When operating from the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select “Delete”.

i-α ppli

i-α ppli	320
Downloading software	322
Starting software	324
Starting software with One-touch Button	[One-touch Button] 334
Starting software with i-α ppli Shortcut	[i-α ppli Shortcut] 334
Automatically starting software	335
Starting software from a site or mail	[i-α ppli To] 336
Operating i-α ppli stand-by display	[i-α ppli Stand-by Display] 337
Managing software	339
Using various functions from software	343

i-α ppli

Downloading i-α ppli from sites allows more convenient use of a FOMA terminal compatible with i-mode (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i-α ppli for stock price information can be obtained for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i-α ppli retrieves only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i-α ppli may be made and working with My Picture (Image) including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i-α ppli software.



INFORMATION

- Some software may use the serial number of the i-mode terminal and UIM.
- Some software may attempt to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ➡ P326

Using saved data

Some i-α ppli software allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Obtain images from My Picture (Image)
- Save video in i-motion
- Use icons
- Save schedules
- Save images in My Picture (Image)

INFORMATION

- Any image and video saved by i-α ppli is stored in the “ mode” or “Deco-Mail picture” folder of My Picture (Image) and the “ mode” folder of i-motion respectively.
- Some software may not be used when Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” set for Phonebook & Logs, My Picture, i-motion or Schedule).

i-α ppli DX

i-α ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-α ppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call history or phonebook data), i-α ppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-α ppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i-α ppli DX software allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as messages, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i-α ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Use mail composition screen
- View latest unread message
- Obtain images from My Picture (Image)
- Save video in i-motion
- Change image settings (stand-by display, call image, incoming/outgoing mail image, Message R/F reception)
- View phonebook
- Save schedules
- View latest redial
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Save images in My Picture (Image)
- Save ring alert in Melody
- Use icons
- Use mail menu
- View latest received call

INFORMATION

- With i-α ppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of the software regardless of NW transmission setting of the software. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on the software.
- Some software may not be used when Privacy Mode is active ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs, My Picture, i-motion or Schedule).
- Any image, video and ring alert saved by i-α ppli DX is saved in the "mode" folders of My Picture (Image), i-motion and Melody respectively.
- Activating i-α ppli DX requires the date and time setting of FOMA terminal. ●P46

Message i-α ppli

Message i-α ppli is a type of i-α ppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of software by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

Notes on Message i-α ppli

- If there are 5 mail folders of Message i-α ppli when downloading Message i-α ppli, software cannot be downloaded. In that case, delete the mail folder for Message i-α ppli before downloading. ●P340
- If Message i-α ppli that uses the same mail folder is already on the software list, the software cannot be downloaded.
- When Privacy Mode is activated ("Authorized access" set for Mail), re-downloading and upgrading of Message i-α ppli are restricted.
- When Message i-α ppli is downloaded, a folder for Message i-α ppli is automatically created in the folder list of Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder is given the name of the Message i-α ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.
- When Message i-α ppli is downloaded, if you have received messages that support the software, you can sort them into the folders automatically created. ●P323
- Messages used in Message i-α ppli may not be correctly displayed.

Other convenient functions

i-α ppli stand-by display

On the i-α ppli stand-by display, i-α ppli can be used as the stand-by display screen, which also allows directly receiving messages and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display screen can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or to use your favorite character to inform you of incoming messages and alarms, etc. ●P337

- This function is available with software supporting the i-α ppli stand-by display.

■ i-α ppli auto start

Software can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some software allows auto start at the time intervals preset with the software. ◀P335

■ Shooting with camera

Images can be taken with the FOMA terminal camera from software. ◀P344

- This function is available with software supporting shooting with camera.

■ Infrared communication

Communication can be made from software with devices provided with the infrared communication function. Enhanced applications are available by interaction with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ◀P344

- This function is available with software supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

■ Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from software. ◀P413

- This function is available with software supporting infrared remote control. Software that supports the other device is required.

Downloading software

You can download your favorite software from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 software applications can be saved in FOMA terminal.
- If Message i-α ppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, the software can be updated if a new version is available.
- If software download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., the software will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing software to download and select the software.

The selected software is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading, press  and select "Yes".

■ When Software Info Display is "ON"

Software information is displayed. When you select "Yes", the software is downloaded.

- The detail information of the software to be downloaded can be checked by pressing .

■ When the selected software is already downloaded with a different UIM

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. When you select "Yes", the downloaded software overwrites the existing software.

■ When the selected software is already downloaded

"Already downloaded" is displayed. When the new version of the software is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select "Yes", the software is downloaded to upgrade.

■ When downloading software that uses saved data or serial number of the i-mode terminal/UIM

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to download. When you select "Yes", the software is downloaded.

- The details of the data to be used by the software can be checked by pressing . Note that some software may be unable to check.

2 Select a folder where to save the software.

3 Set downloaded software operation and press .

Set  α ppli display : Sets the software which supports i-α ppli stand-by display whether to set for i-α ppli stand-by display.

Set NW transmission

: Sets whether to allow the communication by software.

Use icons : Sets whether to allow the software to use icons such as mail and battery level.

- Some items may not be available for setting or operation setting screens may not be displayed depending on the software.

4 Select “Yes”.

The downloaded software starts.

- Select “No” to return to the site screen.

INFORMATION

- When downloading software while activating Privacy Mode (“Authorized access” set for i-α ppli), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When the memory for software is not enough or the number of software exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete software saved in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving the software is recovered. Deleted software can not be restored even when the software download has failed.

Downloading Message i-α ppli

When Message i-α ppli is downloaded, folder for Message i-α ppli is automatically created in the lists of Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i-α ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- If a Message i-α ppli program is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-α ppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select “Yes”, the Message i-α ppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i-α ppli. However, when Privacy Mode is activated (“Authorized access” set for Mail), re-downloading and upgrading of Message i-α ppli cannot be performed. To re-download or upgrade, cancel Privacy Mode beforehand.
- If a received mail that supports Message i-α ppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created automatically at time of the download. When you select “Yes”, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is active (“Authorized access” or “Hide Secret fldrs” set for Mail), you cannot sort them.

You set whether to display software information when you download software.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Not to display software Information

① Press .

Starting software

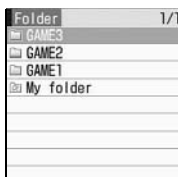
1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ To display only i-α ppli Shortcuts

① Press on the stand-by display.

The i-α ppli Shortcut list is displayed. Go to Step 3.

2 Select a folder.

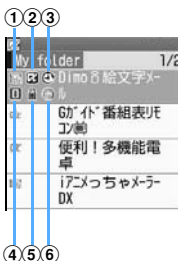


• Icon definitions:

: No software

: Software present

3 Select a software application to start.



• Icon definitions:

① : Normal software : i-α ppli DX software

: Message i-α ppli

② : Software that can be set for i-α ppli stand-by display

: Software that is set for i-α ppli stand-by display

③ : Software with Auto Start

: Software at stopped condition by i-α ppli control

④ to : Software registered as i-mode Shortcut

⑤ : Software downloaded from SSL pages

: Protected software

: Protected software which was downloaded from SSL pages

⑥ : Software registered in One-touch Button

• Whether Easy Selector Plus is effective for 4 or 8 directions depends on the software.

• To cancel starting software, press and select "Ended".

■ When software makes communication

When "Confirm every session" is set for NW transmission of the software to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

- Setting NW transmission ➡ P326

Quitting software

Quit the software in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit software by pressing  and then selecting "Ended".

INFORMATION

- Activated software is interrupted when any of the following conditions occur. Interrupted software is automatically resumed. However, depending on the particular software, the status at the time of interruption may or may not be restored.

- When there is an incoming call
- When the time set in Schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
- When you pressed  to switch to another function

If you press  during a call or alarm to change to the i-α ppli screen, i-α ppli can be resumed during the call or alarm. ➡ P423

- Using software to start another specified i-α ppli allows use of the software without returning to the software list. If no software to be started is set, selection of software is required. If software to be started is set but not on the software list, it must be downloaded.
- When you are outside the service area and cannot communicate or the saved data cannot be used, software may not start or not operate correctly.
- When starting software while activating Privacy Mode ("Authorized access" set for i-α ppli), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- Images used on i-α ppli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i-α ppli are images shot with the camera while i-α ppli is activated, images obtained using the i-α ppli infrared communication function, images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or images obtained from Data Box.

- Because of the 3D polygon* engine loaded, three-dimensional image can be displayed with i-α ppli.

*By combining polygons (triangles and squares), three-dimensional image with depth can be displayed.

- For i-α ppli builders:

If software does not operate normally while building, trace display may help. Press     to display the trace. Note that trace information is not displayed if software built to record trace information is not saved.

- Depending on the software, there is a case that IP (Information service provider) directly accesses the saved software in FOMA terminal and stops the software usage. If the software usage is in stopped condition, you cannot start, set to stand-by display, or update the software, but only can delete it or display the software detail information.

To use the software again, you will have to receive communication of reuse. Contact the IP (Information service provider).

- Depending on the software, there is a case that IP (Information service provider) sends data to the software saved in FOMA terminal.
- When your terminal stops or restarts the software or sends data by request of IP (Information service provider),  flashes and i-mode communication is carried out, but in this case no communication fee is charged.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data [Security Error History]

When software ended because an error that software cannot use the saved data occurred , the name of the software, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Latest 20 records of security error history are recorded.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Deleting the history

- ① Press  and select “Yes”.

All histories are deleted.

Displaying software detail information [Software Description]

Detail information such as the name and version of software can be checked.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to check and press .

3 Check detail information.

- Displayed items differ depending on the software.

■ Checking the site certificate

- ① Press .

- Site certificate can be checked only when software is downloaded from SSL pages.

Setting operating condition of software [Software Setting]

- Only one software application can be set for i-α ppli Stand-by Display or One-touch Button.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to set and press .

3 Select each item to set.

Set  α ppli display : Used to set whether to set the software which supports the i-α ppli stand-by display as your stand-by display.

Set NW transmission during  α ppli display

: Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while the i-α ppli stand-by display is starting up.

Set NW transmission : Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while the software is starting up.

- When “Confirm every session” is set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to communicate each time the software is activated.

Use icons : Specifies whether to enable the software to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Set one-touch button : Used to set whether to register the software to One-touch Button.

Start from browser : Used to set whether to start the software from sites (i-α ppli To).

- Start from mailer** : Used to set whether to start the software from mail (i-α ppli To).
- Start from external** : Used to set whether to start the software from external devices (i-α ppli To).

Allow ring tone/image changes by software*

- : Specifies whether to allow the software to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the stand-by display.
 - If "Yes" is set, the ring tone and image of the stand-by display are changed automatically.

Confirm every set-up*

- : Specifies whether to display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/dial record by software*

- : Specifies whether to allow the software to refer to the phonebook or call history.
 - If "Yes" is set, the phonebook or call history is referred automatically.

* This setting is available only for i-α ppli DX.

- You cannot select the item not supported by the software.

4 Press .

- When "i-α ppli stand-by display" is set to "Yes", a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the current stand-by display setting.

INFORMATION

- When software that connects to networks for communication is set as the i-α ppli stand-by display, communication may automatically be carried out depending on the software.
- Depending on this setting, network communication from software and icon information (unread mail, remaining battery level, etc.) may not be able to be used.
- Connection to networks requires communication fee. Please note that software automatically makes connection if a setting is made to allow communication.
- Note that if you set "No" for Set NW transmission, the software may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by the software.
- If "Yes" is set for "Use icons" for the i-α ppli stand-by display, information of icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs (information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.
- While Privacy Mode is ON ("Authorized access" set for i-α ppli), the i-α ppli stand-by display does not start even if it is set.

Setting lighting and vibrator during software running [Light/Vibrate Setting]

Setting display light

Default Use phone setting

- 1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .



Use phone setting

: The light is turned ON according to the Display Light settings (P144) of FOMA terminal.

Use software setting

: Software controls the lighting ON/OFF.

INFORMATION

- The i-appli stand-by display light operation depends on settings for Display Light of FOMA terminal.

Setting vibrator

Default ON

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

Software controls the vibrator operation during software running.

■ Not to activate the vibrator by software

- ① Press .

Using pre-installed software

The following software applications are preinstalled by default:

Game software	• 電車で GO ! 3D サウンド 山手線一周 (Go! by Train 3D Sound): Going round in Yamanoteline • フリップル (FLIPULL)
Other software	• Dimo  絵文字♥メール (Dimo Pictogram Mail) • i アニメっちゃメール DX (i-anime Mailer DX)
	• Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) • 便利! 多機能電卓 (Multifunction calculator)

Select each application from the list to start. P324

- Software of Dimo  絵文字♥メール can be set as the i-appli stand-by display. P326
- If you delete software preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style". To access "My D-style", select **[3] メニューリスト (Menu list)** of the Japanese iMenu → "ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer)" (as of December 2004).

Dimo 絵文字♥メール (Dimo Pictogram Mail)



©BVIG

Characters make amusing actions corresponding to the pictograms in the messages, which allow enjoyable message exchange.

When the other party has a model that supports Dimo, characters notify you of incoming calls or messages, or give you information about unread messages in FOMA terminal.

- For details, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

電車で GO! 3D サウンド 山手線一周 (GO by Train! 3D Sound: Going round in Yamanote line)

You can become an electric train driver who drives the train toward the final destination station as scheduled observing the running rules.

- Driving the electric train in the Yamanote line in counterclockwise direction (departing from and arriving at Shinagawa station)

Game screen and keys to be used

Master controller level

Scheduled time of arrival

Current time

Available time*1

Speed limit

Speed

Running section

Remaining distance



 : Master controller level-down/brake power-up

 : Master controller level-up/brake power-down

 : Master controller OFF, brake releasing

   : Horn

 : Confirm speed limit

 : FOMA terminal open/close*2

 : Close doors

*1 The game ends when the available time goes out.

*2 Open and immediately close FOMA terminal.

Playing method

① Starting

When message “ドアが閉まります ご注意ください (Attention, please! Doors will be closed)” has appeared, once open and close FOMA terminal within 5 seconds. When the cab signal goes lit, release the brake and raise the master controller level for departure.

② Running

While running, observe the speed limit by adjusting the master controller level and brake.

③ Stopping

When the train comes close to the station, decelerate it by braking and stop at the specified position in the station.

About game modes

There are 3 modes available:

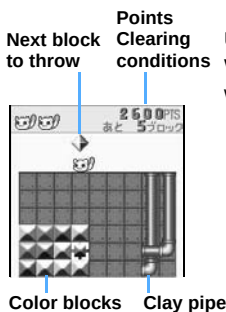
Mode	Description
一周モード (はじめから) One-circuit mode (from the beginning)	Go round the Yamanote line departing from Shinagawa station. Halfway results can be saved.*
一周モード (続きから) One-circuit mode (continuous)	Resume the game from the section saved.
エリアモード Area mode	Play in one of 5 areas comprising the whole section. One area can be selected for playing from those cleared in the one-circuit mode.

* Halfway results can be saved in the following cases:

- When “タイトルに戻る (Return to title)” is selected after pressing 
- When the game is over
- When the entire section has been cleared

フリップル (FLIPULL)

This is a puzzle game that allows to eliminate a block on the screen by throwing a block of the same color to it.



Use or to move the player and or to throw a block. When a block is hit by a block of the same color, it is eliminated and replaced with the block thrown.

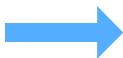
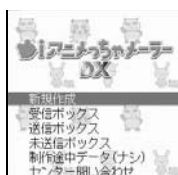
- A block thrown by the player on a clay pipe can hit a target block laterally.
- There are also iron blocks that cannot be eliminated by a thrown block and magical blocks that can be eliminated by a thrown block of any color.
- The background music can be set ON or OFF by .

i アニメっちゃメール DX (i-anime Mailer DX)

You can compose a fun mail by adding color or motion effects to the text, or adding an animated character.

■ Starting mail composition

When you run i アニメっちゃメール DX, the top screen is displayed. Select “新規作成 (New)” on the top screen to start the mail composition.



Enter the address. From the phonebook, you can also search for the address. (Every time you enter an address, another empty address field is added. You can enter up to 5 addresses).

Enter the title.

When you select “本文へ (To message)”, the preview screen is displayed. Proceed to text composition.

■ Composing mail text



Enter text characters in the preview screen. You can also set an effect in this screen.

- Move the cursor and press , and enter text characters.
- Use when you want to delete characters. Use to change the line.
- You can send up to 140 two-byte or 280 one-byte characters at a time. If you use an effect, this will decrease the number of characters that can be sent because of the amount of data in the effect.

Number of input characters (including effect)/
Number of characters that can be sent

To use animation or effects, press  and select an item.

Item	Description
1. ステージエフェクト (Stage effect)	You can select the background color and the background pattern. • If you select the color white, some patterns become invisible.
2. テキストエフェクト (Text effect)	You can set the font color and size, and text motion. When you press  at the start or the end point, the category list is displayed. Choose a category and select an effect.
3. キモチアニメ (Emotional animation)	You can insert an animated character. Put the cursor on the inserted character and press  to enter the text you want to have the character say.
4. アニメっちゃ絵文字 (Animation pictograph)	You can enter the pictogram of  アニメっちゃメーラー DX.
5. エフェクト解除 (Clear effect)	Clear the text effect. Press  at the start and end points for clearing it.

Sending mail

Press  on the preview screen and select “送信 (Send)”.

- If you press  and select “途中保存 (1 件のみ可能) (save unsent)”, the text being composed is saved. The address, however, is not saved. If any mail has already been saved, it is overwritten.

Other features

The following functions are available when selected on the top screen:

Item	Description
受信ボックス (Inbox)	Displays received messages.
送信ボックス (Outbox)	Displays sent messages.
未送信ボックス (Unsent messages)	Displays messages that failed to be sent.
制作途中データ (Draft)	Displays messages saved before being sent.
センター問い合わせ (Check new message)	Shows Mail menu of FOMA terminal. You can perform Check i-mode Message from Mail menu.

- Only the mail received from  アニメっちゃメーラー DX and sent or saved using  アニメっちゃメーラー DX can be shown.
- From the menu of Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages, you can reply, forward or re-send the mail.

INFORMATION

- Other parties also need to support  アニメっちゃメーラー DX to receive the mail composed with this function. The mail composed with  アニメっちゃメーラー DX cannot be shown correctly with the FOMA terminal's mail function or any mail software of PC.

G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and an AV remote controller.

You can download information on TV programs on the requested time anywhere, anytime. You will be informed of the program title, contents, starting and ending times and G code®.

By entering your favorite program in the reservation list, it is registered in Scheduler and an alarm can be emitted when the program starts. In addition, you can search for TV program information using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video deck and DVD/HD recorder remotely. Recording reservation to the DVD/HD recorder with infrared function is possible as well (some devices do not support this function).

- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Note: The display shown here represents an example. It differs from the actual display. Programs according to the home area are displayed.

便利！多機能電卓 (Multifunction calculator)

In addition to basic calculation, the FOMA provides several useful calculation functions such as calculation for splitting a bill.

Basic calculation

When you select “基本計算 (Basic)” from the title screen, the calculator screen is displayed.

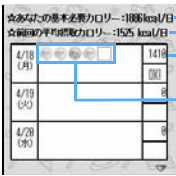


The calculation methods are the same as with usual calculators. Use  to select “+”, “-”, “x” and “÷”. Press  to display the calculated value. To change entered incorrect digits, press . To renew the calculation from the beginning, press .

- When you press  and select “計算一覧表示 (Details)”, the details of current calculation are displayed. When you select “過去計算一覧表示 (Last calculations)”, up to 5 past calculations are displayed.

■ Useful calculations

Select a calculation type from the title screen.

Item	Description
ワリカン計算 (Splitting)	Set the rate of splitting the bill (0.1 to 2.0) for each attribute such as male/female and select “ワリカン！ (Split!)”, and the amount of money to be shared is displayed.
ゴチルーレット (Roulette)	Determine the amount of money to be paid by a roulette for each person. When you set the total amount of money, number of persons, seriousness (difference of money for each person) and select “開始 (Start)”, the roulette starts to spin. When you press  , the amount of money is displayed. Press  to have each person start the roulette and press  to determine his or her share.
時間計算 (Time duration)	Calculates the time duration from the start date and time to the end date and time. To set the start date/time and end date/time, press  , select the position to be changed with  , change the digits with  and then press  . When you select “決定 (Enter)” after setting the date and time, the time duration is displayed on the screen. Press  to select the units to display the time. Besides, by selecting “あと何日？ (How many days remain?)”, you can calculate the time duration from the present to the specified date and time, or selecting “あれから何日？ (How many days past?)” enables you to calculate the duration from the specified date and time to the present.
カロリー計算 (Calories)	Calculates the total calories of food intake. Enter the sex and age, and the calories calculation screen is displayed.   Basic required calorie  The average calorie of the previous week  Your total calorie intake for today  Enter icons of the food you have eaten today Move the cursor to the entry position and press  to select the food from the list. An icon indicating the calorie level is displayed. Place the cursor at the icon to check the food name. • This calorie calculation gives only rough results and not the precise value. • Whether the calories are insufficient or excessive is determined by referring to the standard reference for calories according to the sex and age.
いろいろ変換 (Conversion)	You can convert the units of distance, space, weight, Christian/Japanese year, and the like. Enter the value in the unit you want to convert, and the value in each unit will be displayed.

Starting software with One-touch Button

- To start software with One-touch Button, it is necessary to register the software to One-touch Button beforehand. ➡P326

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Which software registered to One-touch Button can be checked. ➡P343

i-appli Shortcut

Starting software with i-appli Shortcut

If you set a software application as an i-mode shortcut, you can quickly start the software from the stand-by display without displaying the software list.

Registering as i-appli Shortcut

- Up to 10 applications can be registered as i-appli shortcuts.

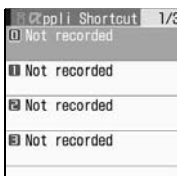
1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to register and press .

■ Canceling i-appli Shortcut

- ① Place the cursor at the software to release and press  .

3 Select the registration destination.



- Number  to  are correspond to the dial key  to  used to start software.

Starting software with i-appli Shortcut

1 Press the dial key (to) on the stand-by display, and hold down for over a second.

Automatically starting software

Collective setting for auto starting is made for all the software which different conditions are set to.

- The date and time setting of FOMA terminal is required to start software automatically. ➡P46

Specifying whether to start automatically [Auto Start]

Default ON

Collectively specify Auto Start for all of the software for which "User" of Auto Start Info Setting is set to "ON".

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

- When set to "ON", Auto Start is enabled for all of the software for which "User" of Auto Start Info Setting is set to "ON".

Setting the date and time of Auto Start [Auto Start Info Setting]

Set the conditions such as start time or method for each application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the software.
- Some software may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to "OFF", this setting is not available.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to set the condition and press .

3 Select each item to set.

User : Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.

- When "OFF" is set, other items cannot be set.

Time : Enter the time to automatically start the software.

Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive automatic starting of the software.

- When "OneTime" is set, set the date for auto starting in Date field.
- When "Daily" is set, the software starts automatically at the time set in Time field.
- When "Weekly" is set, set the day of week for auto starting in Weekly field.

Weekly : Sets the day of week for auto starting when "Weekly" is set for Repeat.

Date : Sets the date for auto starting when "OneTime" is set for Repeat.

Software : Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for the software.

α ppli 1 to 4: Depending on i-α ppliDX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is activated. Specifies whether to enable the settings.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- Even when Auto Start is set, the software is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If the software is not started for the reason other than the ones marked with * of those shown below,  is indicated on the stand-by display and the name of the software, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.
 - When FOMA terminal power is OFF*
 - UIM operation is restricted
 - When UIM cannot be detected
 - When Auto Start is "OFF"*
 - When the interval of auto start is too short
 - During a talk or communication
 - When screen other than the stand-by display is displayed or i-αppli stand-by display operation is in progress
 - When other function is running (except when displaying the My Picture list and merging frames, displaying the i-motion list and playing/editing i-motion, and displaying the Melody list and playing melodies)
 - In All Lock or PIM Lock
 - When Privacy Mode is activated (while i-αppli is set to "Authorized access")
 - During a Schedule alarm or when the time of Alarm Clock has come (including when the set time is the same as the setting for Auto Start)
 - When the software usage is stopped by i-αppli control
- When you specify to start two or more applications automatically at the same date and time, the start failure history of failed software is recorded, but  is not displayed on the stand-by display.
- When only start time before the date and time of FOMA terminal has been set, Auto Start is turned OFF.

Displaying history when Auto Start of software fails [Start Failure History]

When automatic start of the software fails, name of the software, date and time, causes are recorded.

- Latest 20 start failure histories are recorded.
- When you display start failure histories or when the next auto start is successful,  on the stand-by display disappears.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Deleting the history

- ① Press  and select "Yes".

All histories are deleted.

i-αppli To

Starting software from a site or mail

The software starts when link item to activate software contained in a site or i-mode Mail is selected (i-αppli To).

- The software you want to start must have previously been stored in FOMA terminal. Note that some software starts just after downloaded from sites even when it is not stored in FOMA terminal.

1 Select a link item enabled to start software from a site or i-mode Mail.

2 Select "Yes".

The connection to site is terminated and software is started.

INFORMATION

- You can also use infrared communication from an external device to start software.
- Some software starts just after downloaded from sites. At this time, the software is not saved in FOMA terminal. Some software may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal.
- For software that starts just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
- If the specified software is set not to start with i-α ppli To function, a message is displayed and the software is not started. ➡P326
- When no applicable software is saved in the FOMA terminal, "No requested software" is displayed.

i-α ppli Stand-by Display

Operating i-α ppli stand-by display

When the software is set for the stand-by display, you can start the software from the stand-by display to operate.  or  is indicated when the i-α ppli stand-by display is set.

- To use the i-α ppli stand-by display, it is necessary to set the software for the stand-by display beforehand. ➡P137
- Only one application can be set for the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- Some software cannot be set to the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- i-α ppli stand-by display does not operate while activating Privacy Mode ("Authorized access" set for i-α ppli).

Starting software of i-α ppli stand-by display

To operate the software set on the i-α ppli stand-by display, switch the stand-by display to the software screen.

1 Press on the i-α ppli stand-by display.

The screen is changed to the software display and  or  blinks at the top of the screen.

2 Operate the software.

- The procedure to exit software screen and return to the stand-by display depends on the software. For some types of software, pressing  again exits the software screen and returns to the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned ON while setting the i-α ppli stand-by display, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i-α ppli stand-by display. When you select "Yes", the i-α ppli stand-by display starts. When you select "No", the i-α ppli stand-by display settings are canceled. If you do nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen has appeared, the i-α ppli stand-by display starts automatically. Note that when the power is turned ON by Auto power ON, the i-α ppli stand-by display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.
- If you press  during communication of i-α ppli stand-by display, the connection to the network is disconnected.
- When you set software that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.
- If you set All Lock or PIM Lock while the i-α ppli stand-by display is set, the i-α ppli stand-by display is temporarily canceled. When you cancel lock, the i-α ppli stand-by display starts again.
- If the use of software set to the i-α ppli stand-by display is stopped by i-α ppli control, the i-α ppli standby display is canceled.
- While the i-α ppli stand-by display is activated, and if an error occurs that makes it difficult for the i-α ppli stand-by display to continue to appear, a confirmation screen is displayed asking if you will cancel or not. When you select "Yes", the i-α ppli stand-by display settings are canceled. At this time, the software name and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.

Canceling i-α ppli stand-by display

1 Press   on the i-α ppli stand-by display.

2 Select "Terminated".

The i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled and  and  at the top of the screen disappears.

■ Quitting software and returning to the i-α ppli stand-by display

① Select "Ended".

The icon at the top of the screen switches from  to , or from  to .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the software list, select the software set for the i-α ppli stand-by display, press  and select "i-α ppli display".

Displaying end history of i-α ppli stand-by display [Abnormal Exit History]

When an error that the i-α ppli stand-by display cannot continue occurs, the name of the software, date and time are recorded.

- Latest 20 abnormal exit histories are recorded.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

■ Deleting the history

① Press  and select "Yes".

All histories are deleted.

Managing software

FOMA terminal is provided with various management functions such as software upgrade, creating folder and deleting unnecessary software for easier use of software.

Upgrading software [Upgrade]

When the software has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- The software whose usage is stopped by i-a ppli control cannot be upgraded.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Press   after placing the cursor at the software to upgrade and select “Yes”.

Software upgrading starts.

- The following procedure is the same as for downloading software (P322). When upgrading is completed, the upgraded software is replaced by the new software.

INFORMATION

- When you upgrade software, data (game scores, etc.) stored by the software may be erased.
- Some software may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of the software having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out software by the category. Also the order of the folder can be changed, and unnecessary folders can be deleted.

Creating folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .

■ Changing the folder name

- ① Place the cursor at the folder to change the name and press  .

■ Changing the order of the folder

- ① Place the cursor at the folder to change the order, press  and then press  or .

The order of the selected folder changes to one line up or down.

3 Enter a folder name and press .

- You can enter up to 8 two-byte or 16 one-byte characters.

Deleting folders

- Deleting a folder with software stored in it also deletes all the software in that folder. Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains protected software.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press   .

- To delete a folder with any software stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 Select “Yes”.

- If there is any Message i-appli in the folder to delete, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select “Yes” to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select “No” to delete the software only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder or Privacy Mode is activated (“Authorized access” set for Mail), you cannot delete the software or mail folder even when “Yes” is selected.

INFORMATION

- When only the software has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-appli is left undeleted, the message can be viewed from the submenu of the mail list. ➡P278
- When the mail folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is being used (including displaying the list), the software may not be deleted.

Protecting software

- Up to 100 applications can be protected.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to protect and press   .

Protected software is indicated with  or  on the software list.

- Icon definitions ➡P324

■ Canceling the software protection

① Place the cursor at the software to cancel the protection and press   .

■ Switching selected software protection ON/OFF

① Press    to select the software.

- Press  to select or to cancel the software; press  to select all or to cancel all.

② Press .

■ Switching protection of all the software in folder ON/OFF

① Press   .

② Enter the terminal security code.

INFORMATION

- All of the protected software are deleted when Delete All Data is performed. ➡P459

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to delete and press   .

■ Deleting selected software

① Press    to select the software.

• Press  to select or to cancel the software; press  to select all or to cancel all.

② Press .

■ Deleting all the software in folder

① Press   .

② Enter the terminal security code.

③ Select “All” or “w/o protect”.

• All the software or all the unprotected software in the folder is deleted.

3 Select “Yes”.

- When you attempt to delete Message i-α ppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select “Yes” to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select “No” to delete the software only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder or Privacy Mode is activated (“Authorized access” set for Mail), you cannot delete the software or mail folder even when “Yes” is selected.

INFORMATION

- To delete all the software in folder from the folder list, place the cursor at the folder, press  and select “Delete” → “Delete software”.
- When only the software has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-α ppli is left undeleted, the message can be viewed from the submenu of the mail list. ➡P278
- The protected software cannot be deleted by “Delete current” or “Delete select items”. To delete protected software, clear the protection beforehand. Alternatively, select “Delete all items”, enter the terminal security code, and then delete the software by selecting “All”.
- If you delete software preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site “My D-style”. ➡P328

Moving software to another folder

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the folder.

2 Place the cursor at the software to move and press   .

■ Moving selected software

① Press    to select software programs.

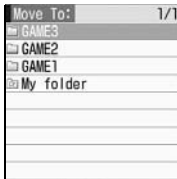
• Press  to select or to cancel the software; press  to select all or to cancel all.

② Press .

■ Moving all the software in folder

① Press   .

3 Select the folder to move to and select “Yes”.

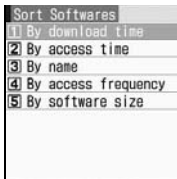


Sorting software [Software Sort]

Default By download time

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .



INFORMATION

- For “By download time” and “By access time”, the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal is recorded.
- When software is sorted “By name”, it may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabets are included in the name.
- “By access frequency” is carried over when the software version is upgraded.
- “By access frequency” does not contain the number of starts as the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- Selecting “By software size” sorts the software by total of the file size of the software and scratchpad to be used from large to small.

Checking number of software in folder [Software in Folder]

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to check the number of software and press .

3 Check the number of software.

- Icon definitions:

: Normal software

: i-α ppli DX software

: Message i-α ppli

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press .
- 3 Check current settings of software.

Storage	: Total size of the software saved is displayed with a bar and value.
Software count	: Number of applications saved is displayed.
 i-appli display	: Name and storage folder of software set as the i-appli stand-by display is displayed.
One-touch button	: Name and storage folder of software set for One-touch Button is displayed.
Auto start	: Name, storage folder and start time of software set for the next auto start is displayed.

Using various functions from software

Some software allows you to make calls, connect to sites or use various functions such as Camera, Bar Code Reader and infrared communication.

- Downloading software that supports individual functions beforehand is required.

Making calls

- 1 Select setting items for Customized Call and set call conditions.
- 2 Press  and select "Yes".

A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, the software is interrupted.

- Some software may need different operation or be unable to make calls.

Connecting to sites

- 1 Select "Yes" when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites.

The software is ended and the site is displayed.

- Connection to a site is unavailable from the i-appli stand-by display.
- Some software may need different operation or be unable to connect to sites.

Using Camera function

1 Operate the software to use Camera.

- Some software activates Camera automatically.

INFORMATION

- When Camera has been activated from software, shot images are not saved in the "Camera" folder of My Picture (Image) or i-motion but saved in the software (in the "📷 mode" folder for some software). Saved images may be automatically sent from software to the server by communication.

Using Bar Code Reader

1 Operate the software to scan bar codes.

- A message that scan results are used and saved in the software is displayed.

Using infrared communication

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate the software to perform infrared communication.

- i-α ppli software can also be executed by receiving i-α ppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while the terminal is connected to a site or sending / receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is automatically disconnected.

i-motion



i-motion 346

Downloading i-motion 346

Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded
..... [i-motion Setting] 349

i-motion

Image and sound can be downloaded from sites and Internet Web pages to FOMA terminal and played/stored. Images or sounds saved can be played on “i-motion” or can be set on Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of singers can be used for a ring alert as well as melodies. (Some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone.)

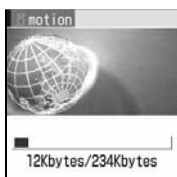
Type		Description
Type	Playing action	
Normal type (can be saved*)	Replay while downloading data (up to 500 Kbytes)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way that the i-motion replayed after downloading all data.
	Replay after downloading data (up to 500 Kbytes)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.
Streaming Type (cannot be saved)	Replay while downloading data (up to 2 Mbytes)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed, and cannot be stored in FOMA terminal.

* Some normal type i-motion may not allow saving.

Downloading i-motion

i-motion is downloaded from a site, played and saved.

1 Display the site with the desired i-motion and select i-motion.



i-motion is downloaded in FOMA terminal. The downloading i-motion completion screen indicates finishing.

- When streaming i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select “Yes” to replay with downloading i-motion. The downloading i-motion completion screen is displayed when the i-motion finishes playing, but streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- When trying to download streaming i-motion if i-motion type setting is “Normal type”, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the i-motion type. Select “Yes” and i-motion type is set to “Norm・Streaming” to download the streaming i-motion. ➡P349

■ For i-motion replayed while the data is being downloaded



Once download is started, i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. The amount of data received/total amount of data is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:

- ⏸ : Pause/restart (Only normal type)
- 🔊 : Adjust volume
- ⏮ : Interrupt (Streaming type)
Stop (Normal type)
(Pressing ⏮ plays back the i-motion from the beginning)
- ⌂ : Display detail information

- When you pause or stop the operation, the play is stopped but the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes" to interrupt.
- When Auto replay setting is set to OFF, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

■ For i-motion replayed after downloading data



During downloading i-motion, the amount of received data and the whole data are displayed at the bottom of the screen. i-motion is replayed automatically when downloading is completed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:

- ⏸ : Pause/restart
- 🔊 : Adjust volume
- ⏮ : Play at fast speed
- ⏮ : Stop (Downloading i-motion completion screen is displayed)
- ⌂ : Display detail information

- When Auto replay setting is set to OFF, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

2 Select "Save".

- Streaming i-motion cannot be saved.

■ Replaying i-motion again

- ① Select "Play".

■ Displaying detail information of i-motion

- ① Select "File property".

■ Not saving i-motion

- ① Select "Back".
 - For streaming i-motion, site screen reappears.
- ② Select "No".

3 Enter a display name and press ⏮.

The downloaded i-motion is saved in "📁 mode" folder of i-motion.

- A display name can contain up to 36 one- or two-byte characters.
- The downloaded i-motion can be set as the stand-by display, ring alert or incoming images by pressing ⌂. ➡P369

■ When link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion

If a link such as a phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To), a mail address (Mail To), or a site (Web To) is set in a ticker, a confirmation screen asking whether to connect to the target item is displayed after playback is finished or interrupted. Select “Yes” to connect to the target item.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing  allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting “Add to phonebook” allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- When i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-motion before connecting to the linked screen. Selecting “Yes”, entering the display name and pressing  allows you to connect to the target after saving i-motion.
- When there are two or more i-motion's link items, only one will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on the i-motion.

■ Setting on the stand-by display

① Press   and select “Yes”.

- For video/i-motion that can be zoomed, same magnification or zoom can be set.
- When i-α ppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel the i-α ppli stand-by display. When “YES” is selected, the i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled and the selected video/i-motion is set on the stand-by display.

■ Setting as Movie ringtone

① Press   and then press  to .

■ Setting as Specific ring/msg alert

① Press   and then press  or .

② Select phonebook data to set Specific ring/msg alert.

③ Confirm the contents and press .

- When a ring alert has been set, it will be replaced with the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook number ➡ Step 4 of “Editing saved phonebook entries” in P116

■ Setting as incoming image (voice or video-phone call)

① Press   and then press  or .

- When an incoming image has been set, it will be replaced with the selected video/i-motion.
- Restrictions for setting video/i-motion ➡ P368

INFORMATION

- The play restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files. ➡ P368
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. However, the replay is automatically resumed when receiving data is started.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, it may become unable to play, stop, or image be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. However, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion may allow reception of data but may not be replayed correctly.
- i-motion in ASF format downloaded may show garbage characters.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When the memory for i-motion is not enough or the number of i-motion exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete video/i-motion saved in the FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving the application is recovered.

Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded

Default Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type

Received normal type i-motion files are specified whether to play automatically or not.
Also the i-motion type to be downloaded is specified.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item and set.

Auto replay setting : Sets whether to automatically play Normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- Even when "Auto Play OFF" is set, i-motion can be played by selecting "Play" on the downloading i-motion completion screen.
- Streaming type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the Auto play settings.

 **i-motion type setting**

: Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- When replaying streaming i-motion, select "Norm・Streaming".

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- When setting from a site display, press  and select "Display" → "i-motion settings".

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of image

Displaying image	[My Picture (Image)] 352
Editing still image	355
Setting operating condition of image	[Settings] 365

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion	366
Editing video/i-motion	370
Settings of video/i-motion	[Settings] 375

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den	376
Displaying Chara-den	376
Recording Chara-den	[Record Chara-den] 379

Making full use of melody

Playing melody	384
Setting operating condition of melody	[Settings] 386

Making full use of the miniSD memory card

Before using the miniSD memory card	387
Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card	390
Exchanging data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card	391
Displaying the data in the miniSD memory card	395
Managing the miniSD memory card	397

Managing various data

Using album	399
Checking/Editing detail information of data	[View/Edit Detail Info] 402
Deleting data	405
Sorting data	[Sort] 406

Making full use of infrared communication

Infrared communication	406
Sending data by infrared communication	[Send Ir data] 408
Receiving data by infrared communication	[Receive Ir data] 410
Using infrared remote control function	413
Setting operations for data transfer	[Data Transfer Setting] 413

Making full use of Sound Recorder

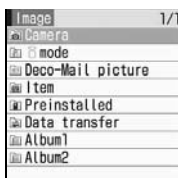
Recording voice with Sound Recorder	[Sound Recorder] 414
Changing record settings	417

Displaying image

Displays images saved in My Picture (Image) of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



The following images are stored in each folder of My Picture (Image):

-  **Camera** : Images shot by Camera or Chara-den
-  **mode** : Images downloaded from a site or i-mode Mail
-  **Deco-Mail picture** : Images preinstalled by default or downloaded from site
-  **Item** : Item images preinstalled by default or downloaded from site
-  **Preinstalled** : Image preset by default
-  **Data transfer** : Images downloaded by bar code reader, images moved/ copied from the miniSD memory card or images received by data communication
-  **My album** : Images moved from another folder
 - Displayed, if album is created. 

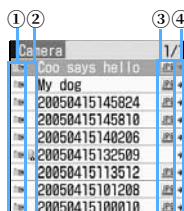
Switching to the Image list of the miniSD memory card

- 1** Press .
 - Operation procedure of the miniSD memory card 

3 Place the cursor at the image to display.



Thumbnail display



Title display

In the image list screen, file display name at the cursor and icon indicating image details are displayed.

• Icon definitions:

① Origination

 : Preinstalled

 : i-mode

 : Camera

 : Frame/Stamp

 : Data Transfer

 : Chara-den

② Type of image

No icon: still image  : Continuous shots, Create animation  : Animation/Flash

③ File format

 : GIF image

 : JPEG image

 : SWF (Flash graphics) 

④ File restriction

- ➡ (in blue) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- ➡ (in gray) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Images with the UIM operation restriction set are displayed with  in thumbnail view.
- Each time you press , the image switches between title display and thumbnail display.
- Display name and others can be changed. ➡P403

■ Sending mail attaching image

① Place the cursor at the image to send and press .

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select “Yes” to paste the image to the mail text.
- Depending on the image size or file size of still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to stand-by or save to Data Box. ➡P261
- Images that can be attached to mail ➡P260

4 Press to check image.



In image display screen, display name and comment of image are displayed.

- Pressing  and then  or  allows you to scroll image in case that the horizontal or vertical size exceeds 240 dots.
- Press  to switch to the previous or next image.

■ Animation, Create animation, continuous shots, Flash graphics

Display them to play back automatically.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:



: Pause/replay



: Slow-down playback (Only in pause for playing Create animation and continuous shots)



: Play from the beginning

INFORMATION

- When displaying a image while activating Privacy mode (when My Picture (Image) is set to “Authorized access”), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Using images as the stand-by display or Phonebook

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the image to set and press  .

3 Select the item to set.

■ Setting as the stand-by display screen

① Press  and select "YES".

- Image of size below 240 x 320 and to zoom-in can be set to Same size or Large size.
- If i-α ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-α ppli stand-by display. If "YES" is selected, i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled and selected image is set to the stand-by display.

■ Adding to phonebook

① Press .

- Adding to phonebook ➡ P104

■ Updating phonebook data saved

① Press .

② Select phonebook data to update.

- If an image has been set already, the image is overwritten to the selected image.

■ Setting on the image for incoming/outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mail or inquiry

① Press  or  to .

- The images set to incoming/outgoing mail image are displayed even if Message R/F or Short Message (SMS) is sent or received.

■ Setting as video-phone substitute image or on-hold image

① Press  and then press  to .

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal cannot be set.

■ Setting to menu icons

① Press  or .

② Press  to .

- The selected image is set to menu icon of "Custom1" or "Custom2" of icon design.
- Create animation, Flash graphics and item image cannot be set to menu icon.

INFORMATION

- If you set from image display screen, press  and select "Use image".
- If images set to the stand-by display or phonebook are deleted, each image returns to default setting.
- Full images may not be displayed depending on image size.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting multiple still images in the same folder.

- You can set up to 6 still images.
- Animation, Create animation, Continuous images, Flash graphics and still image more than 640 x 480 size cannot be saved to Create animation.
- Still images saved in Create animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press   .

■ Canceling Create animation

You can also divide the continuous shots into individual still images.

① Place the cursor at the Create animation to cancel and press   .

The selected Create animation returns to individual still image.

3 Select a image to save to Create animation.



The number of ❶ to ❺ on the image is displayed in selected order.

■ Canceling the selection

- ❶ Press **Menu**.

■ Switching to title display

- ❶ Press **⌂**.
 - Each time you press **⌂**, title display and thumbnail display are switched.

4 Press **⌂** after finishing still image selection.

5 Enter a display name and press **⌂**.

In image list, the first cartoon panel of Create animation is displayed and **⌂** and the display name are displayed.

- Display name can be entered up to 36 characters regardless of two-byte or one-byte characters.

INFORMATION

- To set from image display screen, press **Menu** and select "Animation" → "Create" or "Cancel".
- The method to display Create animation is the same way as for an ordinary image.

Editing still image

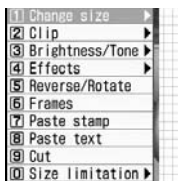
Edit still images saved in My Picture (Image). The editing items and the contents are as follows:

Editing items	Description	Maximum image size editable (dots)*
Change size	Changes still image size.	1224 x 1632 (352 x 288 for enlargement/reduction)
Clip	Clips a still image to any size.	1224 x 1632
Brightness/Tone	Changes brightness and tone of still images.	352 x 288
Effects	Applies special effects to still images.	240 x 320
Reverse/Rotate	Reverses/Rotates still image.	480 x 640
Frames	Adds frame to still image.	352 x 288
Paste stamp	Pastes stamps onto still image.	352 x 288
Paste text	Pastes text onto still image.	352 x 288
Cut	Clips any section in the still images.	240 x 320
Size limitation	Limits file size of still images for saving.	1224 x 1632
Adjust	Adjusts brightness and color balance of still images.	352 x 288

*If the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size by Change size.

- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, Create animation, Continuous image, Flash graphics, image in "Item" folder and image in "Preinstalled" folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach or to output to terminal other than FOMA terminal (excluding still images with File restriction set to "File Restricted" with the same terminal)
 - Still images with a size of more than 1224 x 1632
 - Still images of which either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots
- Areas in an image edited which are transparent on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the still image to edit and press and .
- 3 Select items to edit and edit still images.



Edit menu screen

: Change size ◀P356	: Frames ◀P360
: Clip ◀P357	: Paste stamp ◀P361
: Brightness/ Tone ◀P358	: Paste text ◀P362
: Effects ◀P359	: Cut ◀P362
: Reverse/Rotate ◀P359	: Size limitation ◀P363

- 4 Press and select “Save”.

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select “As frame/stamp” to save as images for frame or stamp.

Images that can be available as frame/stamp ◀P404

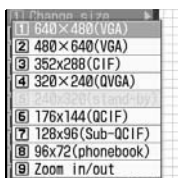
INFORMATION

- Even if Scale down image is set to “Yes” in Settings, images are displayed at same magnification in the case of Paste stamp, Paste text and Cut.
- The result of editing may differ from image depending on the still image or method of editing.
- Repetitive editing and saving may deteriorate the still image quality.
- After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the still image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Delete unnecessary images and save it again.

Changing image size

- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

- 1 Press on the edit menu screen. ◀P356
- 2 Change image size.



Changing still image size into specified size

① Press **[1/8]** to **[8/1]**.

The still image is changed into the selected size and the still image editing screen reappears.

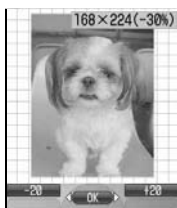


- If the horizontal to vertical ratio of selected size and still image differs, size frame is displayed. When pressing **[↺/↻]**, adjusting the position of size frame and press **[↻]**, the area framed by size frame is changed into the selected size.
- Press **[Menu]** to put the still image in the selected size, ignoring the aspect ratio.
- Press **[□]** to put the still image in the selected size, holding the aspect ratio.

Zooming in/out still image size

① Press **[9/100]**.

② Press **[↻]** to zoom in/out size.



You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size is displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press **[Menu]** to zoom out by 20% and press **[□]** to zoom in by 20%.
- Horizontal and vertical size can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288. Also, images that exceed 288 dots in horizontal and vertical size are reduced and displayed.
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either size of horizontal or vertical.

③ Press **[↻]**.

Still images are zoomed in/out and returns to still image editing screen.

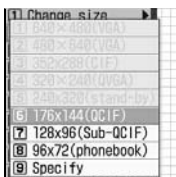
Clipping images to any size

You can clip still images into any size or the specified size.

- When the size of image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 Press **[2/clip]** on the edit menu screen. **➡P356**

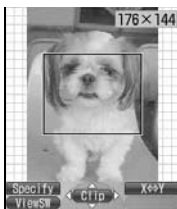
2 Clip images.



■ Clipping a still image to the specified size

① Press to .

② Press to adjust clipping position.



- Every you press , horizontal and vertical of clipping frame are switched.
- Every you press , clipping size is switched.
- To specify clipping range, press .

③ Press .

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image editing screen reappears.

■ Specifying the range and clipping still images

① Press .

Flame specifying the range is displayed in dotted line, is displayed on the upper left of the frame specifying the range.

② Press to adjust the position of and press .



The position of upper left of the frame specifying the range is set and is displayed on lower right of the frame specifying the range.

③ Press to adjust the position of and press .

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line. Press to change the position of upper left.

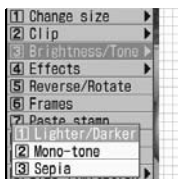
④ Press .

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image editing screen reappears.

Changing brightness or tone

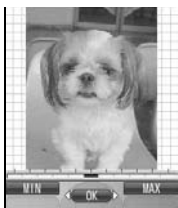
1 Press on the edit menu screen.

2 Change brightness or tone.



■ Adjusting brightness

- ① Press .
- ② Press  to adjust brightness.



Brightness grows/dims by 1 level.

- To maximum the light, press .
- To minimum the light, press .

- ③ Press .

The brightness is adjusted and the still image editing screen reappears.

■ Changing tone to monotone or sepia

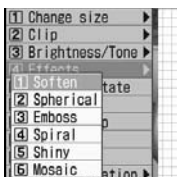
- ① Press  or .

The tone is modified and the still image editing screen reappears.

Applying special effects

- 1 Press  on the edit menu screen. 

- 2 Press  to .



The effect is applied to the still image and the still image editing screen reappears.

Soften : Softens.

Spherical : Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphasizes unevenness.

Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center of the image.

Shiny : Attach a mark as glistening.

Mosaic : Attach a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

- 1 Press  on the edit menu screen. 

- 2 Reverse/rotate a still image.



- Press  to reverse up and down or from right to left.
- Press / to rotate toward 90-degree counterclockwise or clockwise.

- 3 Press .

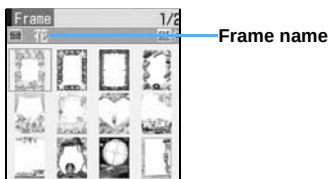
The still image is reversed or rotated and the still image editing screen reappears.

1 Press on the edit menu screen. P355

The same size frame as the still image being edited is displayed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed and can be selected even if their sizes differ from that of the still image edited.

2 Select frame.



3 Check images attached by frame and press .



The frames are merged and the still image editing screen reappears.

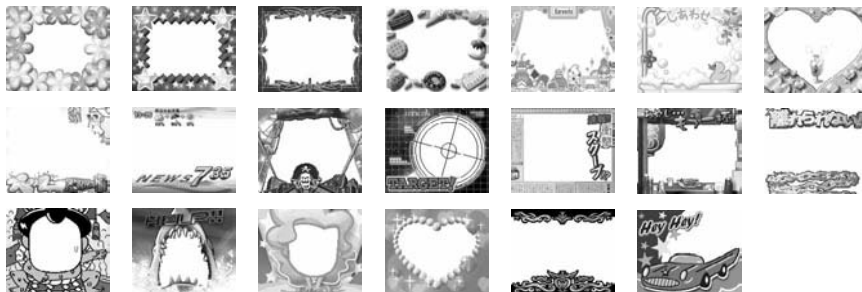
- Press  to switch frames.
- Press  to rotate frame 180 degrees.

Frames set by default

- If the frame registered by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style".
P328

Size for stand-by (240 x 320)





Pasting stamps

1 Press on the edit menu screen.

The smaller size stamp than edited still image is displayed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info are displayed and can be selected even if their sizes are larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp.



The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

Stamp name

3 Press to adjust the position to attach the stamp and press .



A beep sound is heard and stamp is pasted.

- You can paste stamp in another location continuously.
- Press  to delete attached stamp.
- The volume of a beep sound depends on the setting of "Volume".

4 Press .

Attached stamp is synthesized and the still image editing screen reappears.

Stamps set by default



Pasting characters

1 Press  on the edit menu screen. 

2 Select each item and set.

- Text** : Enter the text to paste.
- Up to 20 two-byte or 40 one-byte characters can be entered.
- Font type** : Set the text type to paste.
- Font size** : Set the text size to paste.
- Font color** : Set the text color to paste.
- Font border color** : Set the text bordering color to paste.
- Background color** : Set the text background color to paste.
- Paste method** : Set the way how to paste text.
- If “By block” is set, set text is pasted at the same time.
 - “By character” is set, set text can be pasted on the different position by character.

3 Press .

The set text is displayed in the center of the screen.

- If “By character” is set for Paste method, the first character is displayed in the center of screen.

4 Press  to adjust the position to paste characters and press .



A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

- You can paste text in another location continuously.
- Press  to delete pasted text.
- When you set “By character” for the paste method, the characters are pasted one at a time each you press . When the last character is pasted, the first character reappears.
- The volume of a beep sound depends on the setting of “Volume”.

5 Press .

Attached text is synthesized and the still image editing screen reappears.

Cutting any section out

Select any color and cut the section of the same color.

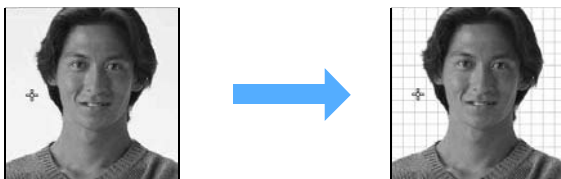
1 Press  on the edit menu screen. 

-  specifying color to cut out is displayed in the center of the screen.

2 Press to place at the color to cut and press .

The section with the same color as the position of  is cut out.

- You can cut another area continuously.



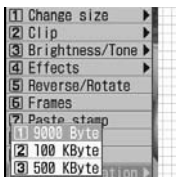
3 Press .

The still image editing screen reappears with specified area cut.

Limiting file size for saving

1 Press on the edit menu screen.

2 Press to .



The still image will be saved as a new still image with a size that is equal to or smaller than the set file size in the same folder.

- Still images more than the size of 352 x 288 cannot be set to "9000 Byte".

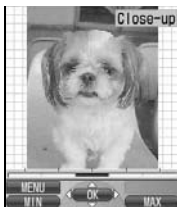
Adjusting brightness and color balance

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to adjust and press twice.

The image adjustment mode is activated and the current adjustment mode is indicated in the upper right of the screen.

3 Press to switch the adjustment mode.



- Close-up** : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.
 - Near view** : Makes appropriate adjustment for images with background.
 - Distant view** : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.
 - Beautiful skin** : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.
 - Tanned** : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.
 - Pale** : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.
 - Drunk** : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.
- The adjustment mode can be selected also by pressing  and then  to .

4 Set the level of the adjustment effect and press .

- Press  to increase or decrease adjustment effect.
- Press  to maximum the adjustment effect.
- Press  to minimum the adjustment effect.

5 Press and select “Save”.

Adjusted still images are saved in the same folder as new still images.

- Select “As frame/stamp” to save as images for frame or stamp.
Images that can be available as frame/stamp ➡P404

INFORMATION

- Adjusting brightness and color balance may not have much effect depending on the still image.

Setting operating condition of image

Default View format: Display 12 icons Display title: Yes Display number: Yes
 Display comments: Yes Scale up image: No Scale down image: Yes
 Sound effect: Yes

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .

3 Select each item and set.

- View format** : Specifies the list display mode.
- Image list is set to 12 thumbnail display by "Display 12 icons" or Display title by "List view".
- Display title** : Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.
- Display number** : Sets whether to display the number of images/all images in the folder or album on the image display screen.
- Display comments** : Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.
- Scale up image** : When smaller images than displayed area are displayed, sets whether to enlarge up to full display area.
- When "Yes" is set, the image is enlarged with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image kept.
- Scale down image** : When larger images than display area are displayed, sets whether to zoom-out in accordance with the display area.
- If "Yes" is set, the image is reduced with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image kept.
- Sound effect** : When the image is displayed, sets whether to play effect sounds set to images.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- If you set from the image list or image display screen, press  and select "Settings".

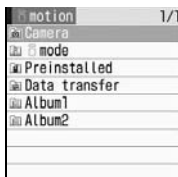
Playing video/i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in i-motion of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- You can play video/i-motion of image size of 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 (MP4 file, ASF file).

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



The following video/i-motion are saved in each folder of i-motion:

 **Camera** : Videos recorded with video-camera or Chara-den, the sound recorded with Sound Recorder

 **mode** : i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion mail

 **Preinstalled**
: Videos preinstalled by default

 **Data transfer**
: Video/i-motion moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by data communication

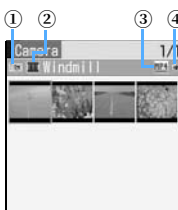
 **My album** : Video/i-motion moved from another folder
• Displayed, if album is created. 

 **Switching to video/i-motion list in the miniSD memory card**

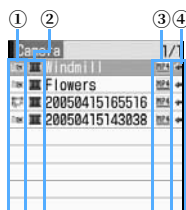
① Press .

- Operation procedure of the miniSD memory card 

3 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to play.



Thumbnail display



Title display

In video/i-motion list, file display name at cursor position and icons for video/i-motion details are displayed.

- Icon definitions:

① **Origination**

 : Preinstalled
 : Data Transfer

 : i-mode
 : Chara-den

 : Camera

② **Restriction**

 : No restriction
 : Restriction on expiration

 : Restriction on the number of times
 : Restriction on period

③ **File types**

 : MP4

 : MP4 with bookmark

④ File restriction

- ➡ (in blue) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- ➡ (in gray) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Sound recorded with Sound Recorder, video only with sound/i-motion (without image such as singer's voices) and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction set are displayed as  in Thumbnail display.
- Each time you press , title display and thumbnail display are switched.
- Display name and others can be changed. ➡P402

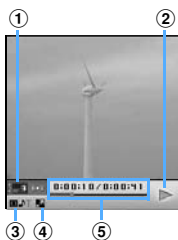
■ Attaching a video/i-motion and sending (i-motion Mail)

① Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to send and press .

Mail composition screen with selected video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ➡P260

4 Press .



In video/i-motion play screen, icons indicating play status and video/i-motion types are displayed under video/i-motion to play.

- When selecting video/i-motion with bookmark set, a confirmation screen asking whether to play from bookmark position is displayed. If you select "Yes", video/i-motion is played from bookmark position. If you select "No", video/i-motion is played from the beginning.

• Icon definitions:

① **Play volume:** Indicates current volume.

② **Playing condition**

 : in play  : in stop  : Paused

③ **File types**

 : only sound  : sound + image
 : only text  : image + text
 : only image  : sound + image + text
 : sound + text

④ **Enlargement/reduction display**

 : in enlargement display  : in reduction display

No icon: in same size display

- Whether video/i-motion is set to enlargement/reduction display or not can be set in Settings. ➡P375

⑤ **Playing duration:** Indicates the current playing time/full duration in value and bar.

- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

 : Pause/Replay
 : Play at fast speed
 : Adjust volume
 : Stop
 (in stop) : Play from the beginning
 /  : Return to the list screen

■ Setting bookmark

① Press and select "Yes".

- If bookmark is set already, bookmark is discarded and set in the new position.
- Press  to replay continuously.
- Stop play and press  to cancel bookmark.
- You cannot set bookmark from an i-motion whose replay restriction is set or when replaying video/i-motion from other functions.

■ Switching horizontal and vertical of images and playing (only the case of image size below 320 x 240)

① Press .

- Each time you press , horizontal and vertical of images are switched.

INFORMATION

- You can play video/i-motion saved in album at the same time. ➡P401
- When video/i-motion has been saved, thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other application. Such video/i-motion is displayed as  in thumbnail display.
- While playing video/i-motion, if the other functions such as incoming call/mail and sounding alarm are activated, play is paused. If you end the other functions and press , a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay from the interrupted position. If you select "Yes", video/i-motion is played from interrupted position. If you select "No", video/i-motion is played from the beginning.
- When video/i-motion is played in i-appli, incoming mail or messenger/F may cause incorrect playback.
- During privacy mode is activated (when "Authorized access" is set for i-motion), when video/i-motion is played, enter terminal security code.
- You cannot play video/i-motion during a voice or a video-phone call.

Setting playback restrictions for i-motion

When playback restrictions have been set for i-motion, a confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Playback restriction types and contents to check are as follows:

Restriction	Status	Description
Restriction on the number of times	Playback counts remain	"Available to play x (x/all) time(s). Play?" is displayed. To play, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No".
	Max. number of plays reached	"This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?" is displayed. To delete, select "Yes"; to cancel, select "No".
Restriction on expiration	Within expiration	"Available to play until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?" is displayed. To play, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No".
	After expiration	"Replay period has expired. Delete?" is displayed. To delete, select "Yes"; to cancel, select "No".
Restriction on period	During period	"Available to play From year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour/minutes. Play?" is displayed. To play, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No".
	Before period	"Replay period has not yet started." is displayed. Press  to return to video/i-motion list.
	After period	"Replay period has expired. Delete?" is displayed. To delete, select "Yes"; to cancel, select "No".

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info. ➡P402
- Even if you change the date and time, term and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for an extended period of time. If this happens, i-motion with replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as stand-by display screen.
- The video/i-motion can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion), incoming call image or Phonebook when the image size is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for incoming call image or Phonebook.
- Only the video/i-motion for which "Available" is set for Ring tone and incoming call image in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. ◀P402

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to set and press  .

3 Select the item to set.

■ Setting as the stand-by display screen

① Press  and select "YES".

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged can be set to Same size or Large size.
- If i-appli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-appli stand-by display. If "YES" is selected, selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display after the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- Operation procedure of video/i-motion set for stand-by display screen ◀P136

■ Adding to phonebook

① Press .

- Adding to Phonebook ◀P104

■ Updating phonebook saved already

① Press .

② Select phonebook data to update.

- If video/i-motion has already been set, it is overwritten to the selected video/i-motion.

■ Setting to Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)

① Press  and then press  to .

■ Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)

① Press  and then press  or .

② Select phonebook data to set memory ring alert.

③ Check the contents and press .

- If any tone has already been set, it is replaced by selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook number ◀ Step 4 of "Editing saved phonebook entries" in P116

■ Setting to incoming images (voice call or video-phone call)

① Press  and then press  or .

- If incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

- You cannot set the recorded video as Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or outgoing/incoming images when the video is sent back to your terminal after transferring the data to a PC or other FOMA terminal using the data link software or infrared communication, or video that is copied/moved to your terminal after directly saved in the miniSD memory card.

Editing video/i-motion

Video/i-motion saved in i-motion is edited by clipping a still image or cutting any range.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restrictions except the video shot with your terminal
- The i-motion whose replay restriction is set or preinstalled video/i-motion cannot be edited.
Besides, some video/i-motion cannot be edited depending on the file format (ex. the video in ASF format).
- Icon definitions and key operations when playing video/i-motion during editing ➡P367

Creating capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image.

- Ticker is not displayed in the capture created.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select video/i-motion to create capture.

The selected video/i-motion is played back.

3 Press   at any position during playback.

It is paused.

4 Check images and press .



The capture is created and saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture (Image).

- To create capture continuously, press , resume a play and repeat Step 3 to 4.

■ Sending mail attaching capture

① Press .

The capture is saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture (Image) and mail composition screen with capture attached is displayed.

- If the file size of capture is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field.
Select "Yes" to paste in the mail message.
- Depending on the image size or file size of capture, it cannot be attached to mail. ➡P261

INFORMATION

- You can create capture even during a pause or after a play is finished.
- The file with a still image created with capture is received as mail with URL (i-shot mail) at the mova terminals.

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press   .

Custom edit mode is activated and  is displayed.

■ **When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion to clip**

A screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select “Yes” to activate Custom edit mode.

- Ticker may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Press , adjust the clipping end position and press .



During clipping, the current file size/maximum file size are displayed.

- Press  or  to retry the operation of clipping.
Press  to stop clipping during playing.
- If you have clipped video/i-motion until the end, the screen of Step 4 appears.

■ **Setting the limit of clipping size**

- Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① Press .

② Select “Msg attach: Small” (290 Kbytes), “Msg attach: Large” (490 Kbytes) or “No settings” (original file size of video/i-motion).

- When video/i-motion file size during clipping has reached the limit of the clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of video/i-motion exceeds 490 Kbytes, “No settings” is unavailable.

4 Enter a display name and press .



The clipped video/i-motion is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

- For a display name, up to 36 characters can be entered regardless of whether one-byte or two-byte.

■ **Playing clipped video/i-motion**

① Press .

■ **Sending mail attaching clipped video/i-motion**

① Press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion and mail composition screen with clipped video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ●P260

INFORMATION

- More than one image can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion.

Clipping video/i-motion specifying file size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to specified file size.

- File size which you can specify is 10 to 490 Kbytes.
- The maximum file size which you can specify varies depending on the clipped video/i-motion.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

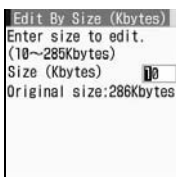
2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press   .

■ When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion to clip

A screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select “Yes” to activate Size clip mode.

- Ticker may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip.



■ Setting the mail attachment size

- Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① Press .

② Select “Msg attach: Small ”(290 Kbytes) or “Msg attach: Large ”(490 Kbytes).

- When “Msg attach: Small” is set, “290” is automatically set and when “Msg attach: Large” is set, “490” is automatically set in the clipping size enter field.

4 Enter a display name and press .



The clipped video/i-motion is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

- For a display name, up to 36 characters can be entered regardless of whether one-byte or two-byte.

■ Playing clipped video/i-motion

① Press .

■ Sending mail attaching clipped video/i-motion

① Press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion and mail composition screen with clipped video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail P260

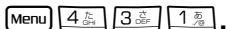
INFORMATION

- More than one image can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion.
- Video/i-motion of which you clipped size may be smaller than the specified file size.

- Up to 10 tickers can be inserted.
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. To insert a new ticker, delete all tickers already inserted.
- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion to insert tickers.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to insert tickers and press



- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and create new tickers is displayed. If “Yes” is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

■ Deleting ticker

① Press     and select “Yes”.

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item and set.

Time interval to show : Sets how to arrange tickers.

- Set to “User specified” to specify any position to arrange a ticker, but the number of tickers cannot be specified.
- Set to “Regular interval” to insert tickers of number specified in “Tickers” at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers : Enters tickers in the range of 1 to 10 tickers set “Time interval to show” to “Regular interval”.

4 Press .

- When Time interval to show is set to “User specified”, press . Ticker insert mode is activated,  is displayed and video/i-motion is played back.
- If “Regular interval” has been set for “Time interval to show”, go to Step 7.

5 Press  on the ticker arrangement position.



The arrangement position of ticker is set, continuously video/i-motion is played back. Each time you press , the arrangement position of tickers is set.

- Press  to end the setting of the arrangement position of tickers.
- When you set up to 9 tickers or end playback of a video/i-motion, the settings of the arrangement position of the tickers are ended.

6 Select “Yes”.

7 Select ticker field and enter characters to display on tickers.

- Up to 20 two-byte or 40 one-byte characters can be entered.

Decorating ticker

- ① Place the cursor at the tickers to decorate and press .
- ② Select each item and set.

Ticker1 to 10 : Displays characters entered on the ticker editing screen. If you select, you can enter characters.

Font color : Sets the text color to paste.

- If it is set to "Default", "White" is set.

Background color : The background color of tickers is set.

- If it is set to "Default", "Black" is set.

Scroll : Sets a text scrolling.

- Setting "Scroll in" gradually brings into view characters that are not visible at first.
- Setting "Scroll out" gradually sends characters out of view that are visible at first.
- Setting "Scroll in & out" brings into view characters that are not visible at first and sends them out of view.
- When setting to "None", characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction : Sets the scroll direction set to other than "None".

Word alignment : Sets the display position of characters.

Font size : Sets size of characters.

Under line : Sets to underline the characters.

Blink : Sets to flash the characters.

- ③ Press .

8 Press .

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning of exceeding the size of "Msg attach: Small". Press  to insert the ticker.

9 Enter a display name and press .



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

- For a display name, up to 36 characters can be entered regardless of one-byte or two-byte.

■ Playing video/i-motion with tickers

- 1 Press .

■ Sending mail attaching video/i-motion with tickers

- 1 Press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved in the same folder as the original video/i-motion and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail 

Settings

Settings of video/i-motion

Default View thumbnails: Yes Size adjustment: Normal Repeat play: ON
Display light: Always on Volume: Level3 Surround: OFF

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.

- 2 Press  .

- 3 Select each item and set.

View thumbnails

: Specifies the video/i-motion list display mode.

- Video/i-motion list is set to 12 thumbnail display (Yes) or Display title (No).

Size adjustment

: Sets whether to enlarge/reduce display when display area and played video/i-motion size are unsuitable.

- Setting "Normal" does not zoom in/out. However, when larger video/i-motion than display area is played, the video/i-motion is reduced with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image kept in accordance with display area.
- If "Zoom" is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image kept.

Repeat play : Specifies whether to repeat play while playing album.

Display light : Specifies lights operation while the i-motion is activated.

- "Always on" is set, the lighting on the display stays ON while i-motion is active.
- If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on Display light .

Volume : Specifies the sound volume during a video/i-motion play.

Surround : Specifies whether to enable the surround effects during a video/i-motion play.

- 4 Press .

INFORMATION

- If you set from video/i-motion list, press  and select "Settings".

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen instead of your own image when you use video-phone. The character can be made to move or casually express a feeling at a given time by pressing dial keys during a video-phone call. Also, you can set Chara-den as the stand-by display and have Chara-den make specific actions on stand-by or for missed calls. The displayed still image and video of Chara-den can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den can be downloaded from sites and stored.



Action: 喜ぶ (Joy)



Action: 愛情
(Affection)



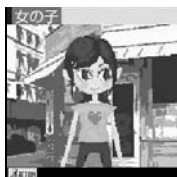
Action of Parts:
足 ジャンプ (Jump)

Displaying Chara-den

The following Chara-den are registered in "Preinstalled" folder by default:



bunbun (Dimo)
©BVIG



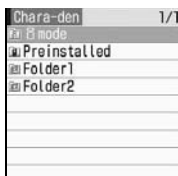
女の子 (Girl)



男の子 (Boy)

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



The following Chara-den is saved in each folder:

 **mode** : Chara-den obtained from sites

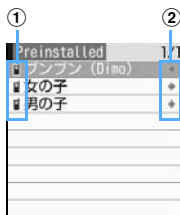
 **Preinstalled**

: Chara-den preset in FOMA terminal by default

 **My folder** : Chara-den moved from another folder

- Displayed if a folder is created.  P399

3 Select Chara-den to display.



In Chara-den list, display name of each Chara-den and the icon indicating the detail are displayed.

- Icon definitions:

① **Origination**

: i-mode : Preinstalled

② **File restriction**

(in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Display name and others can be changed.

■ When making a video-phone call using Chara-den

① Place the cursor at Chara-den to use and press .

② Select the phone number field, enter phone number and press .

- Phone number can also be entered from Phonebook by pressing .
- Pressing changes the settings such as call type or caller ID.
- How to operate Video-phone

■ Setting Chara-den to video-phone substitute images

① Place the cursor at the Chara-den to set substitute images and press .

- You can also set video-phone substitute images by pressing for over one second.

■ Setting Chara-den to the stand-by display

① Place the cursor at the Chara-den to set and press .

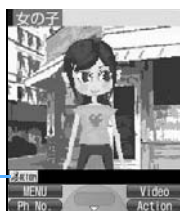
② Select the type of action and the interval of action and press .

- The contents of the setting is the same as the procedure ② to ④ in “When action of Chara-den set as the stand-by is set”

③ Select “YES(Same size)” or “YES(Large size)”.

- If i-α ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the i-α ppli stand-by display. If “YES” is selected, selected Chara-den is set as the stand-by display after the i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled.

4 Operate Chara-den.



Action mode

Chara-den is displayed in “Action (Full motion mode)”. Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.

- Press to stop action.
- Press to enlarge and display in accordance with the display area.
- Press to display at the same magnification.

■ Switching Chara-den

① Press to select a folder.

② Select Chara-den to display.

■ Checking Action

① Press .

The action list for current action type is displayed.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.

■ Switching action type

① Press for over a second.

- Each time you hold down for over one second, between Action and Action of parts are switched.

■ Preinstalled Chara-den actions

ブンブン (bunbun)(Dimo)

Action	1	喜ぶ (Joy)	4	ありがとう (Thank you)	7	ノーリアクション (No reaction)
	2	怒る (Angry)	5	ラブラブ (I love you)	8	バイバイ (Goodbye)
	3	悲しむ (Sorrow)	6	ごめんなさい (I am sorry)	9	びっくり (Surprised)

女の子 (Girl) / 男の子 (Boy)

Action	1	喜ぶ (Joy)	6	ダメ (Refuse)	#1	悩む (Worried)
	2	ガッツポーズ (Victory pose)	7	挨拶 (Greeting)	#2	称える (Praise)
	3	愛情 (Affection)	8	うなずく (Nod)	#3	お願い (Do me a favor)
	4	怒る (Angry)	9	さよなら (Goodbye)	#4	あきれる (Disgust)
	5	泣く (Weep)				

Action of parts

11	頭 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the head right (loop))	21	胴体 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the body right (loop))
12	頭 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the head left (loop))	22	胴体 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the body left (loop))
13	頭 上を向く (ループ) (Turn the head up (loop))	23	胴体 後ろを向く (ループ) (Turn around the body (loop))
14	頭 下を向く (ループ) (Turn the head down (loop))	24	胴体 前に傾く (ループ) (Tilt the body forward (loop))
15	頭 左右に振る (Shake the head right and left)	31	右手 挙げる (ループ) (Right hand up (loop))
16	頭 上下に振る (Shake the head up and down)	41	左手 挙げる (ループ) (Left hand up (loop))
17	頭 回転する (Turn around the head)	51	足 しゃがむ (ループ) (Squat on heels (loop))
		52	足 ジャンプ (Jump)

INFORMATION

- Chara-den cannot be edited or saved by attaching mail or data transfer out of the FOMA terminal.
- When a call is made and received while Chara-den is displayed, Chara-den display will not be returned after the end of the call. When you make a voice call, Chara-den returns to Chara-den list, if you make a video-phone call, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display.
- If Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style".

☛P328

Recording Chara-den

You can shoot still images and videos of Chara-den.

- Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with camera.

Image file saving format ➡ P177

Viewing the Chara-den recording screen



① Shooting mode

: still image shooting mode

: video recording mode

② Memory to save*

: FOMA terminal

: miniSD memory card

③ Recording type

: Image + Voice

: Only image (w/o mic)

: Only image (w/mic)

: Still image

④ Size

: (still image/video fixed)

⑤ Quality*

During shooting still image

: Economy

: Standard

: Fine

During recording video

: LP

: STD

: HQ

: HQ +

⑥ Size restrictions

During shooting still image

: No restriction

During recording video*

: Mail attachment (290 Kbytes)

: high-capacity mail attachment (490 Kbytes)

* You can change settings in still images settings and video settings. ➡ P382

Shooting still images

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the Chara-den to shoot and press .

Chara-den shooting mode is activated.

3 Press repeatedly until is displayed for the type of record.



Switches to the Chara-den still image shooting screen.

- Also on the still image shooting screen, you can have Chara-den make actions and switch between actions. ➡ Step 4 in P377

■ Switching Chara-den

① Press .

② Select a folder.

③ Select Chara-den to shoot.

4 Press .

The shooting confirmation sound (Shutter sound) is heard and the shot images are saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture (Image). ●P352

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in "My picture" folder of the miniSD memory card. ●P395

■ Checking the saved still image immediately

① Press .

② Select the still image to check.

- Press  or  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.

■ When "No" is set for Auto save in the still image setting



The still image confirmation screen is displayed.

- The following operations are available in the still image confirmation screen:

 : Saving still image

 : Switching where to save

 : Cancel (delete the still image without saving)

 : Composing mail

INFORMATION

- If file restriction is already set for "Rec. file restriction" for Chara-den, the still images taken cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to messages.
- When a call is made and received while recording Chara-den, Chara-den display will not be returned after the end of the call. When you make a voice call, Chara-den returns to Chara-den list, if you make a video-phone call, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, Chara-den cannot be shot. Delete some of the stored images, then shoot. ●P395, P405
- Shutter sound is disabled when "Silent" is set for call Ring volume or Silent mode is active.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the Chara-den to shoot and press .

Chara-den shooting mode is activated.

3 Press  and select the Recording type.



Switches to the Chara-den video recording screen.

Video & Voice

: Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone.
For Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone, their mouths move in time with the sounds.

Only video (w/mic)

: Recording only the image of Chara-den. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

Only video (w/o mic)

: Recording only the image of Chara-den. Microphone becomes invalid.

- Also on the video recording screen, you can have Chara-den make actions and switch between actions. ➡ Step 4 in P377

■ Switching Chara-den

① Press   .

② Select a folder.

③ Select Chara-den to shoot.

4 Press .

The shutter sound is heard and recording video is started. When recording is started,  switches to .

- Press  to pause while shooting. When you pause,  switches to . Press  again, the recording restarts.

5 Press .

The shutter sound is heard and the recorded video is saved in "Camera" folder of i-motion. ➡ P366

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in "Movie" folder of the miniSD memory card. ➡ P395
- If the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped and the video recorded up to that point is saved.

■ Checking the saved video immediately

① Press .

② Select a video to check.

- Press  or  twice to return to the video recording screen.

■ When “No” is set for Auto save in video setting



Video confirmation screen is displayed.

- The following operations are available in the video confirmation screen:

- : Saving videos
- : Switching where to save
- : Cancel (delete the video without saving)
- : Playing videos
- : Composing mail

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or charging is started during recording, operation sound may be recorded.
- Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone may not make motions correctly depending on the volume of the sounds from the microphone.
- Recording may end before reaching the file size depending on Chara-den or action operation.
- The time displayed on the video shooting screen shows a rough indication of the remaining time before the set byte size is reached. Some errors may be observed depending on the Chara-den and action operation.
- If the file restriction is already set for “File restricted” for Chara-den, the videos taken cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to messages.
- If there is an incoming call during shooting or in pause, the shooting is stopped. The video recorded before the stop is saved regardless of Auto save set.
- When the battery is almost exhausted during recording, Low battery alert sounds and the video recorded by then is saved automatically. At this time, sounds such as Low battery alert may be recorded at the last of saved video.
- When alarm starts during recording the video, the recording is stopped. The video recorded before the stop is saved automatically when Auto save is set to “Yes”. If Auto save is set to “No”, a confirmation screen appears. At this time, sounds such as alert sound may be recorded at the last of saved video.
- If a call is made or received during video recording stand-by, Chara-den does not return to video recording mode. When you make a voice call, Chara-den returns to Chara-den list, if you make a video-phone call, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the videos, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of videos, chara-den cannot be shot. Delete videos saved before shooting.
 - P395, P405
- The shutter sound is disabled when “Silent” is set for call Ring volume or Silent mode is active.

Setting operation of still image/videos recording [Still Image Setting/Video Setting]

- Default**
- **Still Image settings**
 Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Rec. File Restriction: File unrestricted
 Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal Display size: Large
 - **Video settings**
 Quality: STD Size restriction: Msg attach (s) Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
 Rec. File Restriction: File unrestricted Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal Display size: Large

- 1 Press on the still image shooting screen/the video shooting screen of Chara-den.**
- 2 Select each item and set.**
- 3 Press .**

Item	Still Image Settings	Video Settings	Description
Quality	○	×	Sets quality of shooting still images. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.
Quality	×	○	Sets the quality of shooting video. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.
Size restriction	×	○	Sets the size restrictions of the video to shoot. When the file size of the recording video exceeds to the limit value, recording ends automatically.
Shutter sound	○	○	Sets the shutter sound for shooting. • The sound is played during Shutter sound selection.
Rec.File Restriction	○	○	When you send still image/video to the other mobile phone via mail attachment or data transfer, you can set whether to restrict sending still image/video to the other mobile phone from the received party's mobile phone. • Downloaded Chara-den with "Restricted" preset cannot be set to "Unrestricted".
Auto save	○	○	Specifies whether to automatically save still image/video. • When Auto save is set to "Yes", the image is automatically saved in the specified destination. • Setting "No" displays a confirmation screen after shooting, which allows various operations.
Save to	○	○	Sets the memory to save.
Display size	○	○	Specifies whether to magnify Chara-den to the display range for display or to display at the same magnification at the center of the screen. • The setting takes effect the next time the recording screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If file restriction is set for "Rec. File Restriction" for Chara-den (except for the case with the "File restrictions" set with your terminal), the still image/video taken cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.

Playing melody

Playing melody saved in Melody of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



The following melodies are saved in each folder in Melody:

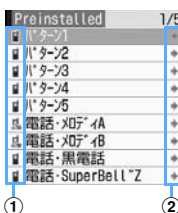
-  **mode** : Melodies downloaded from a site or i-mode Mail
-  **Preinstalled** : Melodies preset in FOMA terminal
-  **Data Transfer** : Melodies downloaded via bar code reader, moved/ copied from the miniSD memory card, Melodies received via data communication
-  **My album** : Melodies moved from another folder
 - Displayed, if album is created 

■ Switching to the miniSD memory card Melody list

① Press .

- Operating the miniSD memory card 

3 Place the cursor at the melody to play.



In Melody list, display name of each melody and the icon indicating the detail are displayed.

• Icon definitions:

① **Origination**

-  : i-mode
-  : i-mode + 3D sound supported
-  : Data Transfer
-  : Data transfer + 3D sound supported
-  : Preinstalled
-  : Preinstalled + 3D sound supported
- 3D sound 

② **File restriction**

- ➡ (in blue): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- ➡ (in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

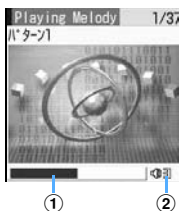
• Display name and others can be changed. 

■ Sending mail attaching melodies

① Place the cursor at the melody to send and press .

- If the receiver is other than FOMA D901i, sent melody may not be correctly played.
- Melody which can be attached to mail 

4 Press to play melody.



In melody playback screen, the display name of melody being played, played position and icon indicating sound volume are displayed.

• Icon definitions:

- ① **Play bar**: Indicates file size and the current played position.
- ② **Play volume**: Indicates the current volume.

• The following operations are available while playing a melody:

-  : Adjust volume
-  : Play previous/next melody
-  : Stop

INFORMATION

- You can play melody saved in album at the same time. 
- You can set that the multi-indicator or FOMA terminal vibrator can be activated while melody is played. 
- You cannot play melody during a voice or a video-phone call.

Setting melody for ring tone/on-hold tone

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the melody to set and press  .
- 3 Select the item to set.



- When a ring tone or on-hold tone for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or video-phone call is set

- ① Press  to .

- Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)

- ① Press  or .
- ② Select phonebook data to set memory ring alert.
- ③ Check the contents and press .
 - If a ring tone has been set already, the ring tone is overwritten to the selected melody.
 - Entering phonebook number  Step 4 of "Editing saved phonebook entries" in P116

INFORMATION

- If you set from melody play screen, press  and select "Use melody".

Setting operating condition of melody

Default Volume: Level3 Lighting pattern: Sync melody Vibrate alert: OFF
 Play position: play all Play background: Standard Stereo/3D sound: ON

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .

3 Select each item and set.

Volume : Sets the volume for playing melody.

Lighting pattern

: Sets the lighting pattern of multi-indicator for playing melody.

Vibrate alert : Sets the vibrator pattern for playing melody.

Play position : Specifies whether to play all or part of the melody in playing melody.

Play background

: Sets image to be displayed on the play of melody.

Stereo/3D sound

: Set to "ON" to play melody with broadening stereophony. Set to "OFF" for monophonic replay.

• 3D sound 

■ When background on the play is selected from "Image"

① Select the play background field and press .

② Select the select image field.

③ Select a folder.

④ Select an image to be set to background.

• Place the cursor at the image and press  to display image.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- When operating from melody list and melody play screen, press  and select "Settings".
- Even if "Sync melody" is set for Lighting pattern or Vibrator, it may not be synchronized for some melodies.
- Even if "Play partial" is set for Play position, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

Before using the miniSD memory card

You can save data such as still image, videos or melodies recorded in the miniSD memory card or make backup of data such as phonebook or schedule. In addition, videos created with external devices (PC, etc.) can be saved in the miniSD memory card for playing with the FOMA terminal (P551) or the data of the miniSD memory card can be operated from a PC. P479

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.
- Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before they can be used. The operation of the miniSD memory card whose format is stopped is not guaranteed. P397
- The miniSD memory card formatted by such as a personal computer may not operate in FOMA terminal correctly.
- Still images in the miniSD memory card cannot be set directly as an icon, background image or the stand-by display. Set after moving/copying to FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminals support miniSD memory cards of up to 128 Mbytes. (as of December, 2004)

Perform the following procedure to see the updated information:

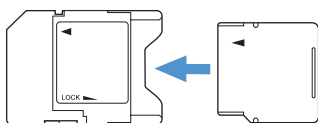
- From FOMA terminal: Menu → “メニューリスト (Menu List)” → “ケータイ 電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer)” → “My D-style” → “クイックマニュアル集” → “D901i クイックマニュアル (D901i Quick Reference Manual)”
- From Personal Computer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's web site at <http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d901i/> → “FAQ” → “miniSD memory card”
- To connect a PC with FOMA terminal, FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required.

Usage precautions of miniSD memory cards

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking card state or formatting. The data may be corrupted.
- Subjecting FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when the miniSD memory card is attached may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the miniSD memory card.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged or soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.
-  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area) while data is being saved, copied, moved, deleted, the miniSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated, the terminal is not available for phone calls, i-mode operation or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The miniSD memory card cannot be used while All lock or PIM lock is ON.
- Data saved from other devices into the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played with FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may not be able to be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on miniSD memory cards you are using, the image of the shot video which is saved in the miniSD memory card may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the miniSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Using with devices supporting SD memory card

The miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use miniSD memory cards with devices which support the SD memory card.

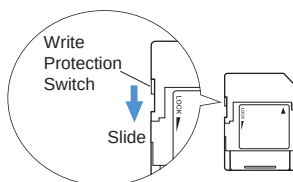


Insert the miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter.

- To remove the card, pull it out.

■ Preventing erroneous deletion

When you use a miniSD memory card with a miniSD memory card adapter, "Write Protection Switch" on the adapter will allow you to prevent erroneous deletion of data on the card.



Slide the "Write Protection Switch" to the "LOCK" side.

- Use something with a fine tip to manipulate the switch.
- Be careful not to give damage to the miniSD memory card.

miniSD memory card folder structure

■ Displaying on FOMA terminal

The miniSD memory card folder structure is as shown below:
(Different types of data are saved into different destinations.)

Item		Saved data
Data Box	My picture	Still image shot with camera, JPEG, GIF of DCF* standard
	Other image	JPEG, animation GIF of DCF* non-standard
	Movie	Video/i-motion recorded with camera
	Melody	Melody
PIM	Phonebook	Phonebook data, phonebook backup data
	Schedule	Schedule data, schedule backup data
	Received message	Received mail data, backup data of received mail
	Unsent message	Unsent mail data, backup data of unsent mail
	Sent message	Sent mail data, backup data of sent mail
	Note	Memo data, backup data of memo
	Bookmark	Bookmark data, backup data of Bookmark

* DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.

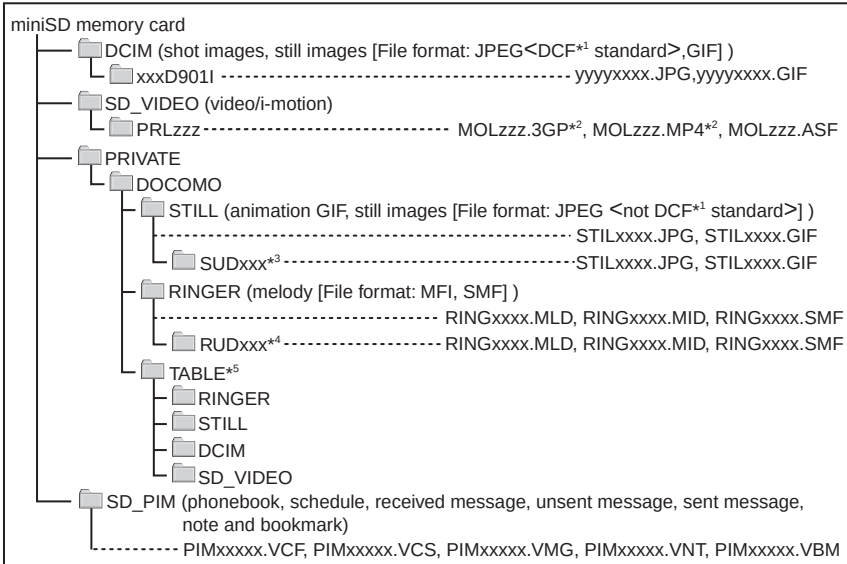
INFORMATION

- If a still image larger than 1224 x 1632 dots is saved in the miniSD memory card, it cannot be displayed on FOMA terminal.

■ Inserting to and displaying on a PC

When data is moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or still image or video recorded with camera is saved directly to the miniSD memory card, the folder compatible with the file is automatically created in the miniSD memory card. When the contents of the miniSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the folders and files are displayed as follows:

When saving data in the miniSD memory card from PC, etc., save in the specified folder with the specified file format. If data is saved in the wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on FOMA terminal.



*1 DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.

*2 Files with extension of 3GP or MP4 are treated as MP4 format.

*3 When the STILL folder becomes full, an SUDxxx folder is automatically created.

*4 When the RINGER folder becomes full, an RUDxxx folder is automatically created.

*5 Folders for data management. If you delete or rename a file in this folder, FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

• Folder and file name are all one-byte characters. Any different numbers 100 to 999 are placed in xxx of folder name "D901I", 001 to 999 in xxx of "SUD" and "RUD", 0001 to 9999 in xxx of file names "yyyy", "STIL" and "RING" and 00001 to 65535 in xxx of "PIM". Any one-byte alphanumeric characters are placed in yyyy. A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF is placed in zzz. (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters 0 to 9 and A to F.)

INFORMATION

- To use data copied to the miniSD memory card with a PC, etc., updating the miniSD memory card may be required on FOMA terminal. ●P398
- If you change or delete a folder name in a miniSD memory card on a PC, etc., FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

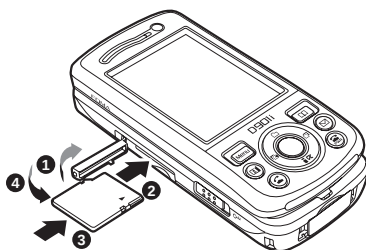
Operation		Copy/move to miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal	Message attach	Content display
File format					
Still image in JPEG format	File size	Unlimited	500 Kbytes	500 Kbytes	1.5 Mbytes
	Image size	Unlimited	1224 x 1632	Unlimited	1224 x 1632
Still image in GIF format	File size	Unlimited	500 Kbytes	10,000 bytes	1.5 Mbytes
	Image size	Unlimited	480 x 640	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4, 3GP format	File size	Unlimited	500 Kbytes	500 Kbytes	Unlimited
	Image size	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
Video/i-motion in ASF format	File size	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Unlimited
	Image size	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Unlimited
Melody in MLD format	File size	Unlimited	100 Kbytes	Not supported	100 Kbytes
Melody in MID, SMF format	File size	Unlimited	100 Kbytes	10,000 bytes	100 Kbytes

Note: For details on Message attach, refer to "Attaching files" (P260).

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

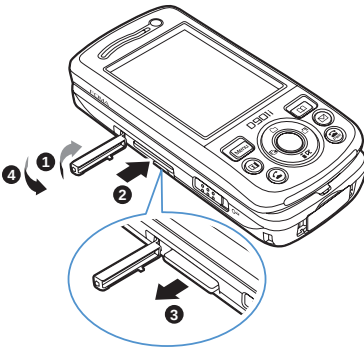
- Turn the power "OFF" before inserting/removing the miniSD memory card.
- In the miniSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the miniSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the miniSD memory card.
- Insert the miniSD memory card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as saving data or making backup if you have not the miniSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the miniSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove the miniSD memory card.
- Do not attach a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged or soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.

Attaching miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- 2 Insert slowly the miniSD memory card properly with its printed surface upward.
- 3 Insert the miniSD memory card further until it clicks.
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Removing miniSD memory card



- ❶ Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- ❷ Push the miniSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger.
The miniSD memory card pops out.
- ❸ Remove the miniSD memory card slowly.
Pull it straight out.
- ❹ Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Exchanging data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

You can copy/move data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card and back up FOMA terminal data into the miniSD memory card.

Data type and operation contents exchangeable are as follows:

Data type		Operation content
Data Box data	Still image	One item, Selected items, All items (copy)
	Video/i-motion	One item, Selected items, All items (move)
	Melody	
PIM data	Phonebook	One item (copy), Backup, Recovery
	Schedule	
	Messages (received/unsent/sent)	
	Bookmark	
	Notes	Backup, Recovery

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Checking free space of the miniSD memory card

Saving capacity and free space are displayed on miniSD card screen. Copy or back up data after checking free space of the miniSD memory card.

- ❶ Press **Menu** **6** **6** on the stand-by display.

miniSD Card	
① Data Box	
② PIM	
Memory status	
■	
Used	: 848 KB
Free	: 13,504 KB
Total	: 14,352 KB

Memory status : The rate of used area to full capacity is indicated.

Used : The current used area is indicated in numeric.

Free : The current free area is indicated in numeric.

Total : Full capacity of the miniSD memory card attaching to FOMA terminal is indicated in numeric.

INFORMATION

- If used area is not "0KB" with no data saved, initialize the miniSD memory card. ●P397
- The miniSD memory card capacity actually available is smaller than the capacity specified on the miniSD memory card.
- If free capacity of the miniSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Save data after deleting unnecessary data or insert another miniSD memory card again.

Copying/moving data from FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

- Continuous images, Create animation, the data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved.
- PIM data cannot be moved.

Example When copying/moving still images to the miniSD memory card

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to copy/move, press   and press  or .

3 Press  to .

■ Copying/Moving Selected items

① Select still images.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing  and press  to Select all/Cancel all.
- Each time you press , title display and thumbnail display are switched.

② Press .

4 Select "Yes".

Still images selected or all still images saved in a folder are copied/moved in the miniSD memory card.

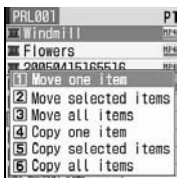
- Press  to stop copy/move.

INFORMATION

- If you operate from video/i-motion list or melody list, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Move to miniSD" or "Copy to miniSD" → "One item", "Selected items" or "All items".
- If you operate from phonebook list, press  and select "IrDA/miniSD/UIM" → "Copy to miniSD card" or "Backup to miniSD".
- If you operate from schedule list, press  and select "IrDA /miniSD" → "Copy to miniSD card" or "Backup to SD card".
- If you operate from received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Copy to miniSD" → "One item" or "All items".
- If you operate from bookmark list, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Copy to miniSD" → "Copy one item" or "Backup".
- If still images are moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal, data size may increase. However, if the images are moved or copied from the miniSD memory card to the terminal, the data sizes remain the same.
- Even when phonebook data is copied, still images and videos saved in the phonebook data are not copied.
- Member list saved in Schedule is not copied.
- When data set to stand-by display or incoming ring alert are moved to the miniSD memory card, stand-by display or incoming ring alert returns to default settings.

Copying/moving Data Box data to FOMA terminal

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** to **4** and select a folder in which data to copy/move is saved.
- 3 Place the cursor at the data to copy/move and press **Menu** **3**.
- 4 Press **1** to **6**.



Copying/Moving Selected items

① Select the data.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing **⏻** and press **Menu** to Select all/Cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items are selected in displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② Press **□**.

5 Select “Yes”.

Data selected or all data saved in folder are copied/moved in each “Data transfer” folder in My Picture (Image), i-motion or melody.

- Press **⏻** to stop copy/move.

INFORMATION

- If you search the data in Data Box and display the list screen, moving/copying all items cannot be performed.

Copy PIM data into FOMA terminal

- Backup data (data with **📁**, **📧**, **📅**, **📞**, **📧**) cannot be copied in FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **2** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** to **7**.
- 3 Place the cursor at the data to copy, press **Menu** **1** **1** and select “Yes”.
Selected data is copied to FOMA terminal.

Backing up data saved in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Making a backup of each PIM data in FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card at once.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

3 Press .

4 Enter the terminal security code and select “Yes”.

The selected PIM data is backed up to the miniSD memory card as one data item.

- Press to stop backup. If terminated, the backup data will be discarded.

Restoring backup data of miniSD memory card

Each PIM data backed up in the miniSD memory card are restored in FOMA terminal.

- Note that when backup data is overwritten and restored, each PIM data in FOMA terminal is overwritten and old data is deleted.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

3 Place the cursor at the backup data, press and press or .

If recovery by adding is performed, the data are saved as another data not data saved in the FOMA terminal. If overwritten recovery is performed, data saved in FOMA terminal are overwritten.

- Definitions of backup data icon

: Phonebook

: Schedule

: Inbox/Unsent mail/Sent mail

: Notes

: Bookmark

4 Enter the terminal security code and select “Yes”.

- Press to stop recovery. Backup data processed until the stopped point are restored in the FOMA terminal.

Displaying the data in the miniSD memory card

- If the data in the miniSD memory card is changed or deleted by PCs, etc., the data in the miniSD memory card is not displayed properly on FOMA terminal. Update the miniSD memory card information. ●P398

Displaying the data in Data Box

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

3 Select a folder.

■ Switching to folder list of FOMA terminal

① Press .

- When the folder list of “My picture”, “Other image” is displayed, the folder list screen of My Picture (Image) in FOMA terminal appears.
- When the folder list of “Movie” is displayed, i-motion folder list screen of FOMA terminal appears.
- When the folder list of “Melody” is displayed, the melody folder list screen of FOMA terminal appears.

4 Place the cursor at the data to check.

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched (except for melody data).

■ Sending mail attaching data

① Place the cursor at the data to send and press .

■ Displaying the data detail information

① Place the cursor at the data to display detail information and press .

■ Deleting one data item

① Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .

② Select “Yes”.

■ Deleting multiple data items

① Press and select data.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing and press to Select/Cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items are selected in displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② Press to select “Yes”.

■ Deleting all data

① Press .

② Enter the terminal security code and select “Yes”.

■ Jumping to specified pages

① Press .

② Enter the number of page to jump.

- When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ Searching for the data in the miniSD memory card

- ① Press .
- ② Enter the date and press .
- Press to stop searching.
- ③ Select the data to display.

■ Continuously playing the video (only video data)

- ① Press .
- You can make the following operations during continuous play:
 - / : Plays previous/next video
 - : Pause/replay
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Ends continuous play

5 Press to check the contents of data.

- Operation while displaying still image ●P353
- Operation while replaying video ●P367
- Operation while playing melody ●P385

■ Switching to non-display title of still images in “My picture” or “Other image”

- ① Press .
- Each time you press , Hide/display are switched.

Displaying PIM data

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

3 Place the cursor at the data to check.

■ Deleting one data item

- ① Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .
- ② Select “Yes”.

■ Deleting multiple data items

- ① Press to select data.
 - Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing and press to Select/Cancel all.
 - Up to 9 data items are selected in displayed page. Selection is available for single page.
- ② Press and select “Yes”.

■ Deleting all data

- ① Press .
- ② Enter the terminal security code and select “Yes”.

■ Jumping to specified pages

- ① Press .
- ② Enter the number of page to jump.
 - When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ Searching for the data in the miniSD memory card

- ① Press **Menu** **3**.
- ② Enter the date and press **OK**.
 - Press **ESC** to stop searching.
- ③ Select the data to display.

4 Press **ESC** to check the contents of data.

- For the detail screen, see the page for each PIM data.
 - Phonebook **☛**P115
 - Schedule **☛**P437
 - Mail **☛**P282
 - Bookmark **☛**P214
- When selecting one PIM data item, detail of selected data is displayed.
- When selecting backup data, all the data contained in backup data are listed as title.

INFORMATION

- You cannot make a call or send mail from phonebook or schedule detail screen saved in miniSD memory card. And in mail detail screen, replying, forwarding, editing, protecting and Phone To (AV Phone To) cannot be executed.
- Schedule saved in the miniSD memory card does not sound alarm for set date and time.
- Place the cursor at the mail address in mail detail screen and press **Menu** **3** **1** to register the mail address to phonebook or press **Menu** **3** **2** to register it to phonebook by overwriting. Also, place the cursor at the image or melody attached and press **Menu** **4** **1** to display/play and press **Menu** **4** **2** to check title. However, the functions of Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To cannot be used by placing the cursor at the phone number, mail address or URL. Besides, still images beyond 10,000 bytes, i-motion and the number of items cannot be displayed.

Managing the miniSD memory card

Formatting miniSD memory card [Initialize]

Initialize it when you empty capacity of the miniSD memory card in which data is saved already or when a new miniSD memory card is used in the FOMA terminal.

1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** on the stand-by display and press **OK**.

2 Select format method.

- Quick format** : Only the data management area in the miniSD memory card is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only when the miniSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.
- Regular format** : Both the data management and data areas in the miniSD memory card are formatted. This method is used to format a new miniSD memory card.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select "Yes".

- Press **ESC** to stop formatting.

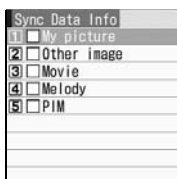
Updating miniSD memory card information [Sync Data Info]

If the data is no longer correctly displayed in FOMA terminal because data in the miniSD memory card are changed, added or deleted using the other devices., update information in the miniSD memory card. Information by data type can be updated.

- If information update is performed, the titles of data saved in "My picture", "Other image" and "Movie" are changed to file name.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[6]** **[6]** on the stand-by display and then press **[F1]**.

2 Select the item to update information.



- Press **[Menu]** to select or to cancel all.

3 Press **[Y]** to select "Yes".

- Press **[STOP]** to stop formatting.

INFORMATION

- When there are many data items saved on the miniSD memory card, updating information will take a time.
- If available space becomes less than required for creating management tables in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a miniSD memory card with a PC, etc., data saved in the miniSD memory card may be no longer correctly displayed in FOMA terminal.

Checking miniSD memory card [Scan Card]

You can check failure of the data saved in the miniSD memory card and restore it.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[6]** **[6]** on the stand-by display and press **[F2]**.

2 Select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the miniSD memory card.

Using album

You can classify data by category using album or play album data at the same time.

- In Chara-den, the album is referred to as "Folder".
- The fixed folder registered by default cannot be changed names or deleted.

Creating album

- Up to 100 albums in My picture and up to 10 albums in i-motion, melody or Chara-den can be created.
- No album by default.

Example Creating the album of My picture

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .

■ Changing album name

① Place the cursor at the album to change and press  .

■ Deleting album

① Place the cursor at the album to delete and press  .

- When the data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② Select "Yes".

3 Enter the album name and press .

- Up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- If you create album from folder list in video/i-motion or melody, press  and select "Create album".
 - If you create album from Chara-den folder list, press  and select "Create folder".
 - An album with the same name as a existing one can be created.
 - If album in which data set stand-by or ring alert is saved is deleted, each setting returns to default setting.
- When data set to phonebook is deleted, the operation follows the settings of ring tone or Mail/Call image.

Moving/copying data to album

Moving data to album

You can move data in a fixed folder to album or data between albums.

- Data cannot be moved between fixed folders except "Deco-Mail picture".
- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data in My picture

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to move and press .

■ Moving selected items

① Press and select data.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing and press to Select/Cancel all.
- Each time you press , title display and thumbnail display are switched.

② Press .

■ Moving all the data in folder

① Press .

3 Select destination album and select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- To operate from video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Move to album” → “One item”, “Selected items” or “All items”.
- To operate from image display screen, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Move to album”.
- To operate from melody play screen, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Move to album” → “Move one item” or “Move all items”.
- To operate from Chara-den list, press and select “Move” → “One item”, “Selected items” or “All items”.
- To operate from Chara-den display screen, press and select “Move”.

Returning album data to original fixed folder

Example Returning album data in My picture to original fixed folder

1 Press on the stand-by display and select album.

2 Place the cursor at the data to return and press .

■ Returning multiple data items

① Press and select data.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing and press to Select/Cancel all.
- Each time you press , title display and thumbnail display are switched.

② Press .

■ Returning all the data in album

① Press .

3 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- To operate from the video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Return to folder” → “One item”, “Selected items” or “All items”.
- To operate from image display screen, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Return to folder”.
- To operate from melody play screen, press and select “Move/Copy” → “Restore to folder” → “One item” or “All items”.
- In “Deco-Mail picture” folder, preinstalled images are moved to “ mode” folder by returning to original fixed folder.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Create animation in My picture, Continuous images, images in "Item" folder, images in "Preinstalled" folder
 - i-motion whose playback restriction is set
 - Melody
 - File restricted data
 - Chara-den character

Example Copying data in My picture

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to copy and press   .

The copied data are saved in the same album as the original data.

INFORMATION

- To operate from the video/i-motion list or image display screen, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Copy".
- Returning copied data in album to fixed folder moves the source data to the fixed folder.

Playback for each album

You can play i-motion or melody data by album.

- A fixed folder cannot be played.

1 Press   on the stand-by display for i-motion, and press   for melody.

2 Place the cursor at the album to play and press  .

3 Play back for each album.



Video/i-motion
album play screen



Melody album
Playback screen

In album playback screen, the playback position and the icon indicating the volume are displayed.

- Icon definitions  P367, P385

■ When video/i-motion album is played

- The following operations are available:



: Pause/replay



: Playing previous/next data

 : Adjust volume

 : Stop

- When album repeat play is set to "ON",  is displayed and the album is played repeatedly.

■ When melody album is played

- The following operations are available:

 : Play previous/next melody

 : Adjust volume

 /  : Stop

INFORMATION

- If you try to play album during Silent Mode, a confirmation screen asking whether to play album is displayed. If you select "Yes", it is replayed according to the sound volume of the setting of i-motion for video/i-motion or the setting of melody for the melody.
- i-motion whose replay restriction is set is not played.

View/Edit Detail Info

Checking/Editing detail information of data

Check detail information such as display name and file size. Also, the contents of some information can be changed.

Check detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor on the images to check detail information and press

  .

Detailed information can be checked on displayed screen.

- Press  to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

- When you check from the image display screen, video/i-motion list screen, Chara-den list screen, Chara-den display screen, melody list screen and melody play screen, press  and select "Detail Info" → "View" ("Reference" for melody).
- To check from video/i-motion display screen, press  and select "Detail information".
- To check from Chara-den recording screen, press  and select "View detail Info".
- You can confirm whether the video/i-motion can be set to Movie ringtone/incoming image in detail information display.
 - Only the video/i-motion whose Ring tone in detail information is set to "Available" can be set for Chaku-motion. Ring tone is always set to "Available" for video with only sound or video with image and sound recorded by your terminal's own camera or recorded and edited by your FOMA terminal.
 - Only the video/i-motion whose incoming screen in detail information is set to "Receive display" can be set for incoming call image. For video containing only images recorded with your FOMA terminal or video containing only images recorded and edited with your FOMA terminal, Receive display is always set to "Available".
- Ring tone setting and Receive display setting of the detail information cannot be changed.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the image to change detail information and press   .
- 3 Select each item and set.
- 4 Press .

INFORMATION

- When you change from the image display screen, video/i-motion list screen, Chara-den list screen, Chara-den display screen, melody list screen and melody play screen, press  and select "Detail Info" → "Edit".
- For video/i-motion, Chara-den and melody, selecting "Back to original" returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed item and Availability List

● : Changeable ○ : Unchangeable — : No display

Displayed item	Image	Video/i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	Description
Display name	●	●	●	●	Title displayed on FOMA terminal • For other than melody, up to 36 characters can be entered regardless of one-byte or two-byte and up to 25 two-byte or 50 one-byte characters for melody.
Title (Original)/Original title	—	○	○	○	Original title preset in data
File name	●	●	○	●	File name displayed when attaching data to mail • A file name can contain up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", or "_". However, "." cannot be used for the first character of file name.
Type	○	—	—	—	Type of image
File restriction/Restriction	●	●	○	●	When you send data to the other mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to the other mobile phone from the received party's mobile phone. • Melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.
Rec. file restriction	—	—	○	—	Whether or not to set file restriction for still image/video with recorded Chara-den

Displayed item	Image	Video/i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	Description
Creator	—	●	—	—	Creator's name - The name registered in Own Number appears in "Creator" when you have captured using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, "Creator" is not set. - Can be entered up to 256 characters regardless of two-byte or one-byte characters.
Copyright	—	●	—	—	The name of the author and the release date of the production. Can be entered up to 256 characters regardless of two-byte or one-byte characters.
Description	—	●	—	—	Description of video/i-motion Can be entered up to 256 characters regardless of two-byte or one-byte characters.
Format/File format	○	○	—	○	File type ("----" for Flash graphics)
Sound	—	○	—	—	Sound data type
Display size	○	○	○	—	Display size (Not displayed for Flash graphics)
File size	○	○	○	○	File size
Duration/Playing time	—	○	—	○	Playing time
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○	Saved date & time
Use as frame	●	—	—	—	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as frame image Images more than the size of 352 x 288 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as stamp image Images more than the size of 210 x 210 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
Comment	●	—	●	—	Description of data Can be entered up to 100 characters regardless of two-byte or one-byte characters.
Ring tone	—	○	—	—	Setting video/i-motion to ring tone (Movie ringtone)
Receive display	—	○	—	—	Setting video/i-motion to incoming image
File restriction	—	○	—	—	Playback restriction of video/i-motion
Originated	○	○	○	○	Origination of data
Transfer for repair (Image/Melody)	○	—	—	○	When your FOMA terminal is repaired, whether your data can be moved at a service center designated by DoCoMo is indicated*

Note: If your data cannot be moved or should be lost/modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

INFORMATION

- Image not permitted to output to terminal other than FOMA terminal (excluding still images with File restriction set to "File Restricted" with the same terminal) cannot be changed for detail information other than display name.
- Melody saved in "Preinstalled" folder cannot be changed for the detail information other than display name.
- Some detail information may not be changed depending on the images, video/i-motion or melodies. Title management method of display name may differ depending on melody.
- Even if "Yes" is set for frame candidate and stamp candidate, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed for "Item" folder.
- Still images/videos recorded with the FOMA terminal, the image or video/i-motion and melody obtained from data transfer or the miniSD memory card can be attached to mail or sent by data transfer, regardless of the File restriction setting.
- Detail information stored in the miniSD memory card differs from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

Deleting data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My picture (Image), i-motion or Melody cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data of My picture (Image)

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press   .

■ Deleting multiple data items

① Press    and select data.

- Switch between Select and Cancel by pressing  and press  to Select/Cancel all.
- Each time you press , title display and thumbnail display are switched.

② Press .

■ Deleting all the data in folder

① Press   .

② Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- To operate from the video/i-motion list, melody list or Chara-den list, press  and select "Delete" → "One item", "Selected items" or "All items".
- To operate from the image display screen or Chara-den display screen, press  and select "Delete".
- To operate from melody play screen, press  and select "Delete" → "One item" or "All items".
- If data set for stand-by display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to default. When data set to phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of ring tone or Mail/Call image.
- If you delete a Create animation, the images composing the Create animation are also deleted.
- If Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style". ➡P328

Sorting data

Default Sort Criteria: Saved date & time Order: Descending

You can change the order of data of list screen.

- The data saved in album of melody cannot be sorted.

Example Sorting data of My picture

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press  .

3 Select each item and set.

Sort criteria : Sets sorting method

Order : Change sort data

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- To operate from the video/i-motion list, melody list or Chara-den list, press  and select "Sort".
- If one-byte and two-byte character are mixed in Title (Displayname), the Japanese syllables may not match the sort result.

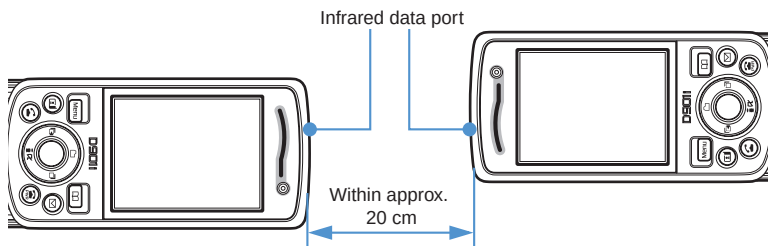
Infrared communication

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs with an infrared communication function. You can expand the range of possible uses by using infrared communication with i-appli to link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is not performed when All lock, PIM lock or Self mode is set.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose File restriction is set to "File Restricted" (P403) with the same terminal and data in "Data transfer" folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication, the terminal is in data transmission mode (same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The infrared communication function of this terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be received/sent depending on the data type.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range for infrared communication is approximately 20 cm. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



Notes of receiving data via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal is not taken over even if you receive all items of message data.
- If you receive message data, usual messages may be stored in the folder for the Message i-appli in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent Message.
- Upon reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- If you receive bookmark data from any terminal other than D901i, the data may be stored in the top folder.
- You cannot receive all items of data about image, video/i-motion and melody.
- If you receive each data in image, video/i-motion or melody from other than D901i, the data may be saved as notes.

Notes in sending the data of D901i to FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save a large size file of images, videos/i-motions or melodies because of the difference in the file size limit.

INFORMATION

- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Sending data by infrared communication

You can send data such as phonebook entries and Own Number to mobile phones or PCs equipped with infrared communication function. You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once.

The following data are available for sending:

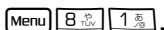
Data type	Remarks
Phonebook	- A phonebook entry set with secret attribute can be sent by Send selected item only when Secret mode is ON. - Own Number is also sent when Send all is performed. - Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad dial is locked.
Schedule	- A schedule data set with secret attribute can be sent by Send selected item only when Secret mode is ON. - Schedule data cannot be sent when date and time are not set.
Received message	
Sent messages	
Unsent messages	
Notes	
Bookmarks	- Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the model of the other party. - When sending all data items, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	- A title of up to 9 two-byte or 18 one-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. - Data of over 500 Kbytes cannot be sent. - Send all is not enabled.
Video/i-motion	- A title of up to 9 two-byte or 18 one-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. - Send all is not enabled.
Melody	- A title of up to 25 two-byte or 50 one-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. - Send all is not enabled.
Own number	Images may not be sent depending on the model of the other party.

- Your party's FOMA terminal needs to wait to receive.
- When data is communicated between terminals other than D901i or to infrared communication device, some data may not be sent/received correctly. Items that cannot be saved by the recipient are destroyed.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the phonebook to send and press



2 Select "Yes".

- Press  to stop infrared communication.

INFORMATION

- To operate from Sent message list, Unsent message list or Received message list, press **[Menu]** and select "Send Ir data" → "Selected item".
- To operate from the Image list, Video/i-motion list or Melody list, press **[Menu]** and select "Send Ir data".
- To operate from schedule list, press **[Menu]** and select "IrDA/miniSD" → "Send Ir data".
- To operate from the Own Number detail screen, press **[Menu]** and select "Send own number".
- To operate from Bookmark list or List of notes, press **[Menu]** and select "Send Ir data" → "Send".

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of selected functions such as phonebook, schedule via infrared communication.

- If you send all the data, the same authentication password between sender and receiver must be entered. Decide 4-digit authentication password among "0000" to "9999" in advance. "#" and "*" cannot be used.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[6 12/12]** **[5 12/12]** **[1 12/12]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[1 12/12]** to **[7 12/12]**.



3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Enter the authentication password (4 digits).

The entered authentication password is masked with "*".

5 Select "Yes".

- Press **[Yes]** to stop infrared communication.

INFORMATION

- To operate from the Bookmark list, Sent message list, Unsent message list, Received message list or List of notes, press **[Menu]** and select "Send Ir data" → "Send all".
- To operate from the folder list of Bookmark, Sent message, Unsent message or Received message, press **[Menu]** and select "Send all Ir data".
- To operate from the Phonebook list, press **[Menu]** and select "IrDA/miniSD/UIM" → "Send all Ir data".
- To operate from Calendar for schedule, press **[Menu]** and select "IrDA/miniSD" → "Send all Ir data".
- When Ph.book image sending is "ON" for Data transfer settings, still image saved in the phonebook data can be sent together. Video/i-motion cannot be sent.
- When all data items are sent, order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

Receiving data by infrared communication

You can receive data such as phonebook, mail from mobile phones or PCs equipped with infrared communication function. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal or is saved in INBOX terminal after received data are saved temporarily in INBOX and checked.

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once.

The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage	Order of saving data
Phonebook	Phonebook - If you perform Receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except the phone number is overwritten. - Receiving cannot be executed when Keypad dial lock is set.	Smallest free memory number
Schedule	Scheduler You need to make date and time settings.	Order by date
Received messages	Received mail	Order by received time
Sent messages	Sent mail	Order by sent time
Unsent messages	Unsent mail	Order by stored time
Notes	Notepad	Order of reception
Bookmarks	Bookmark	Top of the list
Video/i-motion	"Data transfer" folder of i-motion	Top of the list
Melody	"Data transfer" folder of Melody	Top of the list
Image	"Data transfer" folder of My Picture	Top of the list
Own number	Phonebook	Smallest free memory number

Note: When invalid characters and so on are included in the received data, they are replaced by space or cut.

Receiving single data item

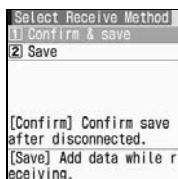
You can receive one data item saved in other party's equipment via infrared communication.

- You cannot receive data that exceed 500 Kbytes.

1 Press **on the stand-by display.**

2 Press **or** .

Receiving stand-by condition is activated and and appear.



Confirm & save : Received data is saved temporarily in INBOX.

After receiving is finished, INBOX data list appears.

Save : Received data is saved in FOMA terminal.

After receiving is finished, Select Receive Method screen reappears without displaying INBOX.

3 Select "Yes".

4 Send single data item on the sender side.

- Press  to stop infrared communication.
- When selecting "Confirm & save" in Step 2, INBOX screen appears after receiving is finished.
Operation to save the data ➡ Step 2 in P412
When selecting "Save", the screen of Step 2 reappears after receiving is finished.

Receiving all data items

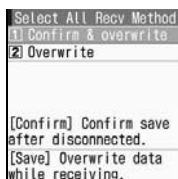
You can receive all the data by function such phonebook, schedule via infrared communication.

- If you receive all the data, the same authentication password between receiver and sender must be entered. Decide 4-digit authentication password among "0000" to "9999" in advance. "#" and "*" cannot be used.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

Receiving stand-by condition is activated and  and  appear.



Confirm & overwrite : Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX.
After receiving is finished, INBOX data list appears.

Overwrite : Received data are overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal.
After receiving is finished, no INBOX appears and Select All Receive Method screen reappears.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.
- If you select "Confirm & overwrite", go to Step 5.

3 Select "Yes".

4 Enter the terminal security code.

5 Enter 4-digit authentication password.

- The entered authentication password is masked with "*".

6 Select "Yes".

7 Send all the data on the sender side.

- Press  to stop infrared communication.
- When selecting "Confirm & overwrite" in Step 2, INBOX screen appears after receiving is finished. Operation to save the data ➡ Step 2 in P412
When selecting "Overwrite", the screen of Step 2 reappears after receiving is finished.

INFORMATION

- Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. If you receive the data of large capacity or many numbers, receiving may take a long time.

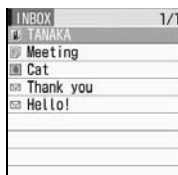
Saving received data

You can save data stored in INBOX to FOMA terminal.

- If “Confirm & save” is selected when receiving one data item, “Confirm & overwrite” is selected when receiving all the data items, INBOX is displayed automatically after infrared communication is finished.

1 Press **on the stand-by display.**

2 Select the data to save.



• **Icon definitions**

- / : a phonebook entry/multiple data
- / : a bookmark/multiple data
- / : a message/multiple data
- : image data
- : video/i-motion data
- : melody data
- / : a schedule/multiple data
- / : a memo/multiple data

■ **Deleting a data item**

- ① Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .

■ **Deleting all data**

- ① Press , enter the terminal security code.

3 Select “Yes”.

■ **Selecting several data**

- ① Enter the terminal security code.
② Select “Add” to add or select “Overwrite” to overwrite.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

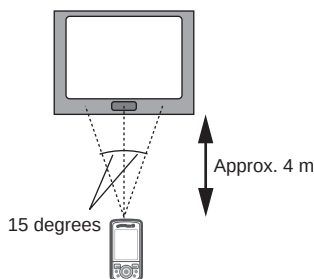
- Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be received and registered may be fewer.
- Message data received from equipment able to save by folder may be saved in Message i-appli folder. Select Message i-appli folder and press to check saved message data.
- Note that when all items of only ToDo (list function to manage business) data is saved, all currently registered schedule data will be deleted.

Using infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote control by downloading the software for i-appli infrared remote control.

- Download the software suited for the individual model. Key operations depend on the software.
- This function is unavailable when Self mode is ON, or during infrared communication.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Even equipment compatible with infrared remote control may not be operated.

Remote control



Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used. Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m. However, the range depends on the operated device or ambient luminance.

INFORMATION

- If preset i-appli software “G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-guide TV show remote control)” is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as infrared remote control. ●P332

Data Transfer Setting

Setting operations for data transfer

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph. book image sending: ON

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

1 Press **Menu** **6** **5** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item and set.

End alert : Specify whether to enable communication end tone at the end of transmission.

Auto Authentication : Specify whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.

- To set “ON”, enter the terminal security code, enter 4 to 8-digit Auth code (FOMA terminal) and Auth code: PC (the other party) and press **OK**.

Ph.book image sending

: Specify whether to send image along with the phonebook data.

3 Press **OK**.

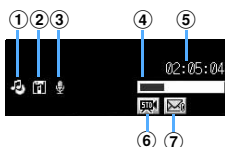
Recording voice with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder screen and sound file

You can record voice with Sound Recorder. Recorded voice can be saved in the miniSD memory card as well as in FOMA terminal and can be attached to i-mode mail to send.

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. ●P387

Reading recording screen



- ① **Shooting mode** : Indicates recording mode for voice.
- ② **Save to** : Indicates the memory to save. ●P187
: FOMA terminal : miniSD memory card
- ③ **Recording Type** : Indicates recording mode for voice.
- ④ **Indicator** : **During stand-by for recording**
 Indicates the usage rate of the memory.
 • The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded voices have been saved.
During recording/pause
 Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in Size restrictions.
- ⑤ **Counter** : During stand-by for recording, indicates the approximate maximum time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card at this time. While recording, indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration up to the recording stop)
- ⑥ **Quality** : Indicates the quality of the sound to be saved. ●P417
- ⑦ **Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions on the file to be saved. ●P418

Sound files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	.3gp
Title	Automatically set by recording date/time. (Example) Recording at 12:34:56 on April 15, 2005. → 20050415123456.3gp • The display name and the file name can be changed after recording sound. ⚙P403 • When the date and time is not set in FOMA terminal, the display name, the title and the file name become "-----".
Mail attachment/output	Sounds can be attached to mail to send and also be sent to PCs and other terminals using a miniSD memory card and dedicated data link software.

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the sound setting of quality and size restriction.

- Quality and size restriction is set in Recording Setting. ⚙P186

■ Recording time of sounds that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Unit: minute

Item	Quality	File size restriction	
		Msg attachment (290 Kbytes)	Attachment of high capacity mail (490 Kbytes)
Recording time for one operation	STD	Approximately 4	Approximately 7
	HQ	Approximately 3	Approximately 5
Maximum recording time in FOMA terminal	STD	Approximately 159	Approximately 159
	HQ	Approximately 104	Approximately 105

■ Recording time of sounds that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: minute

Capacity	Quality	File size restriction		
		Msg attachment (290 Kbytes)	Attachment of high capacity mail (490 Kbytes)	No restriction
16MB	STD	Approximately 230	Approximately 230	Approximately 230
	HQ	Approximately 150	Approximately 151	Approximately 151
32MB	STD	Approximately 475	Approximately 475	Approximately 475
	HQ	Approximately 311	Approximately 312	Approximately 312

- The voice is recorded from the microphone.
- Record the voice in as quiet place as possible where environmental noise is little.
- Even when “Silent” is set for Ring volume or Silent mode is active, the recording confirmation sound (Shutter sound) is heard.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Sound recorder is activated and sound recording mode is started.

- The recording type for Recording Setting is set to “Voice only”, the sound recorder is activated.
- When Sound Recorder is activated, multi-indicator flashes.

2 Press or .



Recording screen of sound

Shutter sound is heard, Compact light flashes in red at 2-second intervals and recording is started. When recording is started,  switches to .

- Press  to pause recording. Compact light is turned on in red and  switches to  while in pause. Press  again, the recording restarts.
- During recording and pause, multi-indicator flashes.

3 Press or .



Shutter sound is heard and recording sound is finished.

The recorded sound is saved in “Camera” folder of i-motion. ●P366

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in “Movie” folder of the miniSD memory card. ●P395
- If the file size exceeds the limit while recording sounds, recording ends automatically and sounds recorded up to that point are saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the sound recorded up to that point is saved.

When Auto save in Recording Setting is set to “No”

After recording sound, a confirmation screen of recorded sound is displayed.

- Functions able to operate on the confirmation screen is the same functions as recording videos. ●P185

■ Saving the recorded sound

- 1 Press .

■ Sending mail attaching recorded sounds

- 1 Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sounds.

Select “Yes” to save the recorded sounds in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the sound cannot be attached to mail.

■ Changing the title

- ① Press **Menu** **3** **1**.

- A title can contain up to 31 two or one byte characters.

■ Creating ticker

- ① Press **Menu** **3** **2** and then select “Yes”.

The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and a ticker creation screen is displayed.

●P373

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, ticker cannot be created.

■ Playing the video

- ① Press **1**.

■ Switching memory to save between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

- ① Press **Menu** **5**.

- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 490 Kbytes , the destination to save cannot be switched.

■ Displaying the list of sounds stored in FOMA terminal

- ① Press **Menu** **6** and press **1** or **2**.

INFORMATION

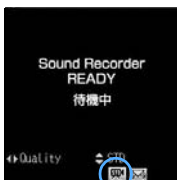
- For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, see INFORMATION in “Recording videos with Movie Camera” ●P184.
- For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, see “Playing video/i-motion” ●P366.

Changing record settings

Sound settings such as quality and size restriction can be changed.

Setting sound quality

- 1 Press **Quality** on the sound recording screen and place the cursor at the quality icon. ●P416



Icon of quality

- You can also press **8** to select the icon of quality.

- 2 Press **8** to select the desired quality and press **Enter**.

STD Standard : Standard quality

HQ High Quality : The sound will be better. The recordable time is shorter than “STD” (standard).

- You can also press **8** to switch quality.

1 Press on the sound recording screen and place the cursor at the size restriction icon.



- You can also press  to select the icon of size restriction.

Icon of size restrictions

2 Press to select size restriction and then press .

 **Msg attach** : Restrict file size to 290 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal of existing type being attached to i-mode Mail.

 **Large capacity message**

: Restrict file size to 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

 **No restriction**

: No restriction for file size.

- You can also press  to switch size restriction.

INFORMATION

- When the destination to save sound is set to the terminal in Recording Setting, "None" cannot be set.

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	[Multiaccess]	420
Multitask	[Multitask]	423
Having edit screens displayed when FOMA terminal is opened	[Edit by Slide]	426
Setting to turn power ON/OFF automatically at specified time	[Auto Power ON/OFF Setting]	427
Ringing alarm at set time	[Alarm Clock]	428
Setting to turn power ON automatically at alarm set time	[Alarm Auto Power ON]	430
Managing schedule	[Scheduler]	430
Registering often-used functions	[Custom Menu]	441
Recording your own name and mail address	[Own Number]	446
Recording other party's or your voice	[Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo]	448
Checking call duration and call cost	[Call Duration/Call Cost]	450
Using Calculator	[Calculator]	451
Composing notes	[Notepad]	452
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch	[Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch]	454
Determining service provider	[NW Search Method]	457
Checking current settings of functions	[Confirm Settings]	457
Resetting functions	[Reset]	458
Deleting registered data collectively	[Delete All Data]	459

Multiaccess

You can use three functions (voice call, packet communication and Short Message (SMS)) simultaneously by Multiaccess.

- Multiaccess supports only voice call and packet communication.
- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on task bar. ●P28
- While executing the function, press  to display New Task menu or screen switching menu and a new function can be activated and the screen can be switched. ●P423
- The following case is available for simultaneously used function:
 - Voice call: one communication
 - i-mode, i-αpli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with connected PC: one communication of these
 - Short Message (SMS): one communication

INFORMATION

- For possible Multiaccess combinations ●P545
- During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.
- If many functions are executed at once, for example, a message arrives while video or animation is playing or camera is operated, the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during play.

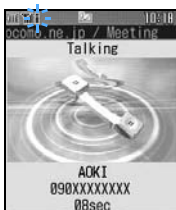
Operations available during Multiaccess

Receiving i-mode mail or voice call during communication

i-mode mail, Short Message (SMS) or voice call can be received during communication.

Example When i-mode mail is received during call

1 Receive i-mode Mail during a voice call.



During receiving mail,  and  are blinking at the top of the display and when receiving is finished,  blinks and  is displayed.

 stops blinking automatically.

Example When call is received during i-mode/packet communication

Receive incoming voice call while viewing sites.

- Similarly, you can receive calls while the terminal is connected to a PC and performing packet communication.

1 A call is received during i-mode/packet communication.



- The screen that is displayed when a call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode. ➡P70

2 Press .

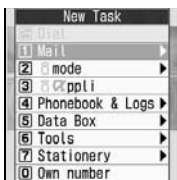
- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ➡P424
- To end site display, press  in the site screen and select "Yes".
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Performing other communication during call

Another communication can be performed at the same time without interruption.

Example When i-mode is connected during call

1 Press during a call.



2 Press .



- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruptions. In this case, you can view the screen while talking by switching to the talking screen and using the speakerphone function. ➡P51
- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ➡P424
- To end site display, press  in the site screen and select "Yes".
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Example When i-mode mail is sent during call

1 Press during a call.

2 Press .



When the i-mode Mail has been sent, the talking screen reappears.

- You can switch between talking and the mail composition screen during operation. ➡P424
- To end message composition, press  on the mail composition screen.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

1 Send data from a PC while talking.

This action starts packet communications.

- The screen that is displayed during packet communication depends on Priority Comm Mode.
 - ➡ P70
- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruptions. If you switch to the talking screen to use the speakerphone function, the screen can be viewed while talking.
 - ➡ P51
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Example When a call is made during i-mode/packet communication

Voice call is made while site is displayed.

- Similarly, you can place calls while the terminal is connected to a PC and performing packet communication.

1 Press during i-mode/packet communication.

New Task menu appears.

2 Press .



- Select "Phonebook & Logs" from New Task menu to call from the phonebook, Received Calls or Redial.

3 Enter the phone number and press .

- To end site display, press  in the site screen and select "Yes".
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on task bar. ➤P28
- While executing the function, New Task menu or screen switching menu can be displayed to start a new function or switch the screen by pressing .
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to two. However, the function of dial calling or Own Number can be activated even when other two functions are being performed.
- The function available using Multitask may be restricted depending on the status of activating or lock setting. ➤P547

Executing new functions

You can execute another function during a call, communication or operation.

- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during talking

1 Press during a call.

New Task menu appears.

2 Press .



2005 / 4						
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
27	28	29	30	31	1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1	2	3	4	5	6	7

- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruptions. In this case, you can view the screen while talking by using the speakerphone function. ➤P51
- Depending on the function being executed, you may not be able to select certain functions.

3 View/Register a schedule.

- To end the Scheduler, press  on the schedule screen.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

- Functions that can be run from New Task menu and details on possible Multitask combinations ➤P547
- During infrared communication or updating software/pattern data (Virus scan function), operation by Multitask is invalid.
- If many functions are executed at once, for example, message arrives while video or animation is playing or camera is operated, the movement displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Switching function to operate

Press  when multiple functions are used to display the screen switching menu. Select from the screen switching menu to go to the desired screen and perform the required operation.

- If you press  in the screen switching menu, the New Task menu will be displayed.

Example Switching from the screen during talking to the site screens

1 Press during a call.



- Screen switching menu lists the functions being run.

2 Select “ mode”.



- To bring back the talking screen, press  again and select “Phone” from the screen switching menu.
- You can start a new function by pressing  in the screen switching menu to display the New Task menu. Press  again to return to the screen switching menu.

Item names displayed on the screen switching menu

The item names displayed in the screen switching menu may differ from menu item names.

Item	Corresponding function or screen
Phone	Voice call
Video-phone	Video-phone
64K data comm.	64K data communication
AV Comm.	Video-phone using external device
Dial input	Enter Phone number
Mail	i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) (list screens, display screens, etc.)
Compose message	i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS) (composition screens)
Chat mail	Chat mail
Message R/F	Message R/F
Check new message	Check new message for i-mode mail, Message R/F and Short Message (SMS)
 mode	Site, Web page, Bookmark, Screen Memo
 ppli	i-appli (software list screen or run screens)
PPP data comm.	Packet communication when connected to a PC
 motion	i-motion
Melody	Melody
Image	My picture
Camera	Camera
Movie Camera	Video Camera
Sound recorder	Sound recorder
Phonebook	Phonebook (record screen, search screen, etc.)
Notepad	Notepad
Scheduler	Scheduler
Calculator	Calculator
Received calls	Received Calls
Redial	Redial
miniSD card	miniSD memory card
Chara-den	Chara-den
Bar code reader	Bar code reader
Software update	Software Update
Update definition	Update definition
Receive SMS	Reception screen of Short Message (SMS)
Receive message	Reception screen for i-mode Mail and message R/F
Notify (Alarm clock)	Alarm screen displayed at the time set in Set alarm
Notify (Scheduler)	Alarm screen displayed at the scheduled date/time
Own number	Own Number
Recorded messages	Recorded messages
Voice memos	Voice memo

INFORMATION

- Screens cannot be switched for combinations other than allowable Multitask combinations ●P547.

Exiting all running operations

All functions are ended in Multitask at a time.

1 Press   during a Multitask and select “Yes”.

Edit by Slide

Having edit screens displayed when FOMA terminal is opened

Default all ON

You can set the received mail reply and schedule edit screen, etc. to be automatically displayed when you open FOMA terminal.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to set and press  or .

- Inbox** : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for reply when opening FOMA terminal with the received mail list screen or the received mail display screen.
- Outbox** : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for edition when opening FOMA terminal with the sent mail list screen or the sent mail display screen.
- Unsent message** : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for edition when opening FOMA terminal with the unsent mail list screen.
- Chat mail** : Sets whether or not to display the screen where you can enter the message when opening the FOMA terminal with the chat mail screen displayed.
- Schedule** : Sets whether or not to display the schedule new screen when opening FOMA terminal with the calendar screen/Day View screen.
- Notepad** : Sets whether or not to display the edit note screen when opening FOMA terminal with the memo list screen or the memo details screen.

3 Press .

Edit by Slide is set.

INFORMATION

- If Schedule is set to ON, the edit screen is displayed when opening FOMA terminal with schedule details screen.

Setting to turn power ON/OFF automatically at specified time

Default OFF

This function turns ON/OFF FOMA terminal automatically at the specified time.

- You need to make date and time settings. ➡P46
- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

■ Setting Auto Power OFF

① Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item and set.

Auto Power ON/OFF

: Sets/cancels Auto Power ON/OFF.

- When setting to OFF, "Time" or "Repeat" cannot be selected.

Time : Sets the time to automatically turn the power ON/OFF.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with a zero (0).

Repeat : Sets Auto Power ON/OFF to repeat.

- When setting to "OFF", FOMA terminal is turned ON/OFF only once at the set time and Auto Power ON/OFF is canceled.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- When Alarm Auto Power ON is set to ON by Settings, if you set the schedule or alarm and Auto Power ON for the same time, an operation set in the schedule or Set Alarm settings takes place after Auto Power ON. ➡P428, P433
- When the PIN code ON/OFF setting is "ON", the PIN code entry screen is displayed after the power is turned ON at the set time by Auto Power ON. After entering the PIN code, the stand-by display appears.
- If you set schedule or alarm and Auto Power OFF to the same time, Auto Power OFF is made after operating a schedule or alarm setting. If a snooze operation is performed after the alarm or Set Alarm sounds, Auto Power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation. ➡P428, P433
- When the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned OFF. The power is turned OFF after the stand-by display reappears by exiting each function. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the stand-by display or the PIN code entry screen displayed when FOMA terminal is turned ON, the power is turned OFF.
- Cancel Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Ringing alarm at set time

Default not set

This function announces the set time with an alarm sound or vibration. You can select the alarm to go on once only or repeat the alarm everyday or on specific days of the week. The alarm sound, the lighting pattern of multi-indicator and vibrator operation can be set.

- You need to make date and time settings. ●P46
- When the power is OFF, alarm is not available even when the specified time arrives. To activate the alarm when the power is OFF, set Alarm Auto Power ON to "ON" by Settings. ●P430
- Default of settings is set as follows; Time: "00:00", Repeat: "None", Alarm sound: "アラーム・アナログ時計" (Alarm/Analogue clock), Volume: "Level4", Vibrate alert: "OFF", Lighting pattern: "Terminal settings".

Setting alarm time and sound

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to .

- Up to nine alarms can be registered. Input title is displayed for registered alarm.

3 Select each item and set.



Time : Enter the time to set an alarm and press .

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with a zero (0).

Repeat : Press to to select for repeating an alarm.

- If " Day of week" is selected, select Day/Week field and press after a day is selected.

Title : Enter a title for Set Alarm and press .

- You can enter up to 7 two-byte or 14 one-byte characters.
- アラーム1(Alarm 1) to アラーム9(Alarm 9) is set by default title.
- If a title is not entered, the alarm cannot be set.

4 Press to switch to the Set sound screen and set necessary items.



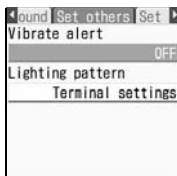
Alarm sound

- : Select motion" or "Melody" and select a video/i-motion or melody as an alarm.

Volume : Select Alarm volume.

- Adjusting the volume ●P67

5 Press to switch to the Set others screen and set necessary items.



Vibrate alert : Sets the vibration at the set alarm time.

Lighting pattern

: Sets the lighting pattern of multi-indicator for the alarm time.

6 Press to save alarm.

- When Alarm clock is set,  or  (when a schedule alarm is also set) is indicated in the standby display.

■ When an alarm is canceled

- ① Place the cursor at the alarm title to cancel in alarm list and press .

- To set canceled alarm again, press .

■ When an alarm is edited

- ① Select the alarm title to edit in alarm list.
- ② Edit the alarm setting. P428

When the set time arrives

When the set time arrives, the screen as shown below or set video/i-motion appears on the display and the alarm sounds at the volume set. If lighting or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.



- Pressing  while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the display before sounding reappears.
- If the terminal is left unoperated for about one minute or a key other than  or  is pressed, the display stays the same when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops and the phone "rings for one minute followed by a 4- minute silent period" (snooze operation) repeatedly for 30 minutes.
- If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
 - Calling
The warning sound but the alarm occurs and the alarm screen appears. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration.
During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
 - Power OFF
Neither the power is ON nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON Setting to ON. P430
 - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call
The Alarm operates after the operation shown above ends.

INFORMATION

- While Silent mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator set for Alarm clock is activated and the multi-indicator flashes.
Alarm setting applies when "ON" is set for Vibrator and Alarm/Schedule sound of Custom Silent Mode.
- If Set alarm screen or alarm list is displayed, no alarm sound is emitted at the time specified.
- When multiple alarms are set for the same time, the alarm set for the smallest item number in the alarm list is activated.
- When alarm and schedule alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies alarm appears at first, but followed by the snooze operation and then schedule alarm is notified. Schedule alarm is finished by pressing , but the snooze operation of alarm is continued.
- Even if the alarm is set, when the Chara-den is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.

Alarm Auto Power ON

Setting to turn power ON automatically at alarm set time

Default OFF

Make settings to automatically turn the power ON and activate Schedule alarm, Advance alarm or Alarm sound if the power is OFF when the date and time specified by schedule or Set Alarm arrives.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- Not to turn the power ON automatically when the time specified for the alarm arrives while the power is OFF, press .

INFORMATION

- If the PIN code ON/OFF setting is "ON", the PIN code entry screen appears after the power is turned ON and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm setting or Schedule alarm. After entering the PIN code, the stand-by display appears.
In this case, the alarm sounds according to the default setting even if downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm.
- Cancel Alarm Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Scheduler

Managing schedule

This function allows you to save various schedules. At the set time, you will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound.

Displaying calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.



Schedule
item icon
Cursor

Current day is displayed in pink, Saturday in blue, and day-off and national holiday in red by default.

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule for the earliest hour of the day is indicated.
A date with repeat schedule setting is marked with ◀ to the upper right.
A date with the date-straddled long-term schedule setting is marked with ▶ to the upper right.
- Press  to move the date. The Day View screen is displayed by pressing .
- Press  to display previous month and  to display next month. The calendar is displayed according to the last setting you set.

■ When a particular day is specified

① Press    on the calendar screen.

② Enter the year, month and day.

- The cursor is moved to the specified date.
- Press    to restore the current date display.
- When operating from Day View screen, press   .

Press    to restore the current date display.

INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.
- The displayed color depends on Color Scheme Setting. 
- Days off or national holiday can be set. 
- Day off setting on the calendar is based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of December, 2004). However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may be different because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.

Setting display style for calendar [Calendar View Mode]

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode Display mode: Normal mode

Change the display format and display style of the calendar.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

3 Select each item and set.

Scroll mode : Sets the calendar display mode.

- Set "Monthly mode" to switch the display every month. The days of the previous and next months are displayed in different color.
- Set "Slide mode" to scroll the display by week. Different background colors are used for adjacent months.

Display mode : Sets the calendar week display mode.

- Set “Normal mode” to be Sunday as the beginning (leftmost position) of the week.
- Set “Business mode” to be Monday as the beginning (leftmost position) of the week.

4 Press .

Calendar is displayed in the set Calendar mode.

Setting day off [Day Off Setting]

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying a date or days of the week.

- When setting Days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting Days off by specifying dates

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place a cursor at the date to set as a day off and press .

- The color of the date specified as a day off changes (for other than the current day).
- Press     to set day off to be repeated yearly.

■ Canceling Day off Setting

- ① Place a cursor at a day off to cancel on the calendar screen and press

   .

- Press     to cancel all days off.

■ Setting Day off by specifying day of week

- ① Press    on the calendar screen.

- ② Press  to  to select a day of week to set as a day off.

- “Reset” is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Press  to restore the default setting.

- ③ Press .

- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, Sunday is automatically set as the day off.

Setting national holiday [Holiday Setting]

Holidays can be changed or registered up to 5 new entries.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

■ Changing Holiday

- ① Select holiday to change and go to Step 4.

■ Deleting holiday

- ① Place the cursor at the holiday to delete, press  and select “Yes”.

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 Press .

4 Select each item and set.

Holiday : Enter holiday name and press .

- Up to 11 two-byte or 22 one-byte characters can be entered.
- You cannot change holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar

: Press  or  to select ON/OFF of set holiday.

Date : Enter a date set for holiday and press .

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select "Change" from Date field and enter the date.

5 Press .

Saving schedules

You can store job appointments, dates and other activities. At the set time, you will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound.

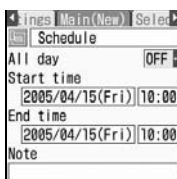
- Up to 300 items can be registered. You can save multiple schedules for the same day.
- You need to make date and time settings. ➡P46

1 Hold down  **for over a second on the stand-by display.**

2 Place a cursor at a day to save a schedule and press .

- When operating from Day View screen, press  as well.
- When schedule is set to ON in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal after selecting the date from Monthly screen or displaying Day View screen to display Save screen.

3 Select each item and set.



(Item icon)

: Select Item icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

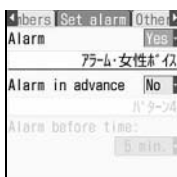
Schedule (contents filed)

: The data equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the data as required before pressing .

- The entered data is not changed by changing the icon after changing the data.
- The contents can contain up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters.

- All day** : To set "All day" schedule without specifying the hour, press .
- Press when not setting "All day".
 - If All day is set, the hour display of the schedule is marked with "AllDay" on Day View screen. If All day is set for the date-straddled long-term schedule, the date display is followed by "AllDay".
- Start time** : Enter a start date and time for the schedule and press .
- Enter the last two digits of the year. When the month or date is 1 to 9, add "0" before the number.
 - Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with a zero (0).
 - You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
 - You cannot set the time if you specify "All day".
- End time** : Enter an end date and time for the schedule and press .
- Note** : Enter schedule details and press .
- You can enter up to 300 two-byte or 600 one-byte characters for the note.

4 Press to switch to the Set alarm screen and set necessary items.



- Alarm** : Press to set an alarm.
Select " motion" or "Melody" from Alarm field and select video or melody for the alarm.
- To disable an alarm at the start time of the schedule, press .
 - When i-motion with image is set to alarm, if image is set "Yes", the alarm will be standard melody.
- Alarm in advance** : Press to enable an alarm before the start time of a schedule.
- The selection method for Alarm in advance is the same as for Alarm.
 - When i-motion with image is set to Alarm in advance, if image is set to "Yes", Alarm in advance will be standard melody.
- Alarm before time** : When Alarm in advance is set to "Yes", set how many minutes ago an advance alarm sounds by pressing to .

5 Press to switch to Other settings screen and set necessary items.



Repeat : Press  to  to select the setting for repeating a schedule.

- The schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or Feb. 28) when you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and “Every month” or “Every year” is selected in the repeat setting.
- If “Day of week” is selected, select Day/Week field and press  after a day is selected.

Image : Press  and select still image from image field to display image in schedule alarm screen.

- Flash graphics cannot be set for images.
- If i-motion with image is set to Alarm or Alarm in advance, Image will be “No”.

6 Press to switch to Select members screen.

7 Select “<Select member list>” and select members to register.

- Up to 5 members can be registered . Such a list allows you to call and send mail.
- Press  to switch between FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL registered in the phonebook data is registered.
- Select other members to register in the same way.

■ When a member is deleted

- ① Place the cursor at the member to delete and press .

8 Press .

- When a schedule set with an alarm or alarm in advance is saved,  or  (when Set Alarm is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.

To register a schedule by simple key operation from the stand-by display

- ① Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule using dial keys on the stand-by display and press .

(Example) For April 15 12:34 : 

- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.

- ② Save a schedule.

INFORMATION

- When Privacy mode is active (“Authorized access” set for schedule), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of the schedule book. Schedule can be saved using the miniSD memory card. P391
Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send the data to the PC. P550
- Even if the alarm is set, when the Chara-den is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.

When Schedule alarm or alarm in advance is set

When the set time arrives, the date/time, schedule description and set image or video/i-motion appears on the display and the alarm sounds at the volume set with phone ring volume.

The lighting or vibrator settings, if any, are used.



- Alarm in advance, when set, sounds before schedule start time.
- Pressing  while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the stand-by display reappears. If the terminal is left unoperated for about one minute or a key other than  or  is pressed, the display stays the same when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops. Press  and the screen as shown on the left disappears. If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
 - Calling

The warning sound but the set alarm occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. At this time, the vibrator does not operate.

During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
 - Power OFF

Neither the power is ON nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON Setting to ON. P430
 - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call

The Alarm operates after the operation shown above. However, if the data schedule is received by data communication, it does not operate.

INFORMATION

- While Silent mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator operates in "Pattern A". When Custom Silent Mode is set, the settings for "Vibrator", "Alarm/Schedule sound" and "Ring volume" are applied.
- When Privacy mode is active ("Need auth. to use" set for schedule), Schedule alarm or alarm in advance is not activated.
- If a Create animation or continuous shots are set, the first image is displayed.
- When multiple schedules are set at the same date/time, after stopping the alarm sound, press  to confirm the data of other schedules set at the same time.
- When schedule alarm and alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies alarm appears at first, but followed by the snooze operation and then schedule alarm is notified. Schedule alarm is finished by pressing , but the snooze operation of alarm is continued.

This function displays recorded schedules. You can add, change and cancel the schedules from the displayed screen.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display to select the recorded schedule day to check.



Day View screen

- Press  to switch dates in the Day View screen.

■ Displaying schedules for specific item only

① Press for over a second on the stand-by display .

② Press .

- Press    to show all items.

③ Select Item icon.

Matched items are displayed.

- When operating from Day View screen, press   .

Press    to restore the all items display.

2 Select a schedule to check.



Details screen for schedule

■ When a schedule is changed

① Press on Details screen for schedule.

- When schedule is set to ON in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal in each Save screen for schedule to display the Edit screen.

② Change the schedule data and press .

③ Select "Yes".

The changed schedule is saved.

- When operating from Day View screen, press  .

INFORMATION

- A schedule for which the secret attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret mode. ◀P166
- If the displayed schedule content contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used. ◀P223
- A schedule with all day set is marked with "AllDay" on the Day View screen.

Copying/Pasting schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another day.

- When a date-straddled schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted.
- The copied schedule is retained in FOMA terminal until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another day any number of times. However, only one item can be retained and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display to select the recorded schedule day to use.

2 Place the cursor at the schedule to copy and press .

The schedule is copied.

3 Press or to display calendar screen.

4 Place the cursor at the day to paste the schedule and press .

The schedule is pasted to the selected day.

- When operating from Day View screen, press .

Composing mail from schedule

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Screen operated Items sent	Calendar screen	Day View screen	Details screen for schedule
1 item	×	○	○
1 day/All*	○	○	×

* Sends all recorded schedules (including past schedules).

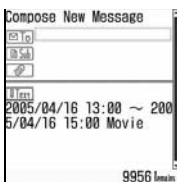
- Schedules are written to a mail message in the Date To format. ➡P453
- If a schedule exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be discarded.
- When schedules are displayed by type, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- To send schedules for which the Secret attribute is set, set the Secret mode. ➡P166

Example Sending a schedule from the Day View screen

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display to select the recorded schedule day to send a mail.

- When operating from Calendar screen, press and select "Compose message" → "Send selected day" or "Send all".
- If you operate from Details screen for schedule, press and select "Compose message", or press to compose i-mode Mail.

2 Place the cursor at the schedule to send by mail and press .



- Press to send all of the schedule registered for the selected day by mail.
- Press to send all of the schedule registered at once.
- Procedure of composing/sending i-mode mail ➡P249

Deleting schedules

You can delete one entry or multiple entries in the schedule as follows:

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Screen operated Items deleting	Calendar screen	Day View screen	Details screen for schedule
1 item	×	○	○
One day/Before date/All	○	○	×

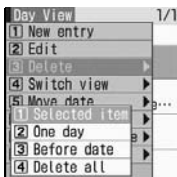
- To delete schedules with Repeat setting, select "Delete all" from Calendar, "Selected item" or "Delete all" from Day View screen or "Delete entry" from the schedule detail screen.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to delete.

- When operating from Calendar screen or Details screen for schedule, press  and select "Delete entry". Go to Step 3 for Calendar screen, or go to Step 4 for Details screen for schedule.

2 Press .

3 Press to .



- Press  to delete all schedules, enter the terminal security code. However, if deleted without setting to Secret mode, schedules belonging to secret attribute will not be deleted.

■ When deleting date-straddled long-term schedule for "One day"

① Select "Delete long term" or "Keep long term".

Schedule is deleted in the selected method.

- To delete the schedule for the selected day and all of the date-straddled long-term schedule including the day, select "Delete long term". To keep date-straddled long-term schedule, select "Keep long term".

■ When deleting date-straddled long-term schedule for "Before date"

① Select "Delete long term" or "Keep long term".

Schedule is deleted in the selected method.

- To delete the schedule before the selected day and all of the date-straddled long-term schedule including the day before the selected day, select "Delete long term". To keep date-straddled long-term schedule, select "Keep long term".

4 Select "Yes".

Using member lists

You make calls or compose i-mode mail by selecting a member list recorded in a schedule. Their sites are also displayed from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member list.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display to select the recorded schedule day to use.

2 Select the schedule to use and press to display the member list screen.



A list of the recorded members is displayed.

The phone number, mail address and URL of the first recorded member are displayed.

- For members with secret attribute set, the name and detail information is masked with "※" unless Secret mode is set. P166

3 Use the Phonebook data.

■ Making a Voice/Video-phone call

- ① Select a member and press  for a voice call or press  for video-phone call.

A voice/video-phone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- When selecting the Caller ID Send Function ON/OFF or specifying the data rate, press

 and select "Customized call". P56

- Select a member and hold down  or  for over a second to hear the voice of the other party over the speaker (speakerphone function).

■ Sending i-mode Mail

- ① Select a member and press .

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is entered in the message in the Date To format.

- Press    to send i-mode Mail to all the members. The addresses of all members are set in the mail composition screen and the schedule is entered in the message in the Date To format.

- ② Edit and send i-mode Mail.

- Procedure of composing/sending i-mode mail P249

■ Displaying a site

- ① Select a member and press  .

You are connected to the site.

INFORMATION

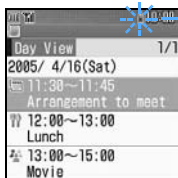
- To use the phone number and mail address of the second or subsequent member registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen (Phone/Mail) and you can make a voice/video-phone call or compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phone number or mail address to use. (P115, P249) Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook detail screen, the schedule is not set in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- Pressing  on the member list screen allows to display member selection screen and member can be saved or deleted.
- When "No setting" is set for Phonebook data Caller ID settings, voice/video-phone calls are made according to Activate/Deactivate setting of Caller ID Notification. P47, P121

Protecting secret schedules [Secret Attribute]

The schedule data that you do not want other people to see is registered as the data having a secret attribute that is used only when you input terminal security code. To set a secret attribute, perform the setting in Secret mode.

- Secret attribute cannot be set ON/OFF when Secret mode is not set.

- 1 **Activate Secret mode.** ➡ P166
- 2 **Hold down**  **for over a second on the stand-by display to select the recorded schedule day to use.** ➡ P431
- 3 **Place the cursor at the schedule to set and press**  .



 **blinks when the secret attribute is set for the selected schedule.**

- Select the schedule set with secret attribute and press   to cancel secrecy.

INFORMATION

- A schedule for which the secret attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret mode.
- Secret attribute is automatically set for schedule made while Secret mode is active.
- For the schedule set with secret attribute, alarm sound or alarm in advance is not activated unless Secret mode is set.

Checking the number of registered schedule items [Check No. of Items]

You can check the number of registered schedule and days off set in the schedule.

- 1 **Hold down**  **for over a second on the stand-by display and press**  .
- Press  to return to the calendar.

Custom Menu

Registering often-used functions

You can create your original menu (custom menu) by freely registering functions or phonebook data of specific persons in addition to the menus that are previously registered (normal menu). Store the functions you often use and the phonebook data of the other party you frequently reach in this menu for quick access and making a call easily. Also, you can create group folders dividing Phonebook data, functions and menus into groups for each purpose.

Read a template sample

[Default](#) [Standard](#)

This section describes how to read the previously registered template samples.

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided for Custom Menu.
- You can also create Custom Menu by importing templates and adding or deleting optional functions.

- 1 **Press**   **on the stand-by display.**

- When "Custom" is set for Default MENU of Menu Settings, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Press and press to .

Standard : Alarm clock, Calculator, Sound recorder, Receive display, Illumination, Open answer, Edit by slide, Change security code, Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification.

Simple menu : Phonebook & Logs, Mail, Set sound, Ring volume, Volume, Data Box, i-mode.

User data : Bookmark, Screen memo, Phonebook, Scheduler, Alarm clock, Notepad, Save word, Save phrase, miniSD card.

Message : Compose message, Chat mail, Mail group, Read templates, Inbox.

- When a template is imported, all custom menu items are replaced.

3 Enter the terminal security code.



A template is imported and set in Custom Menu.

- When Custom Menu is already created, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the new Custom Menu. Selecting "Yes" sets the selected template for Custom Menu.

Creating Custom Menu

Read the template samples and add optional items; so, you can make an original menu.

- Up to 9 icons can be registered in a level of Custom Menu.
- 9 icons have been already registered for Standard, User data in Template. If any of these samples is selected, selected items are overwritten.
- Resetting the sample can delete all the items previously registered and register optional items. ●P445

1 Read a template sample. ●P441

2 Register the item.

■ Registering person

- If the Secret attribute is set for the phonebook, it is not displayed unless the Secret mode is set. ●P166
- When the phonebook data that contains Flash graphics or video/i-motion is registered in the Custom menu, a pre-registered character icon is displayed on the menu screen instead of Flash graphics or video/i-motion.

① Press .

Phonebook list appears.

- To retry to search by another method, press .
- The search screen in the last search method or result of the search by the procedure of the last search is displayed. Perform searching when search screen is displayed.

② Select members to register.



The person is registered.

■ Registering functions

① Press   .



- The selecting functions menu is displayed in the format set in the normal menu (the sample screen is in the Tile display format).

➡P31

② Place the cursor at the entry to set and press .



The menu item is stored.

- A menu item without submenus can also be registered by selecting the item or by a shortcut operation.

When “Edit by slide” is stored

■ Registering groups

① Press    to enter group name.

- Up to 9 two-byte or 18 one-byte characters can be entered.

② Press .

■ Registering in a group

The Custom Menu can have up to 3 levels. When the third level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

① Select the group.

The items in the group are displayed.

- When an empty group is selected, the item selection screen is displayed. When the second level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

② Add or replace item.

■ Registering the stored item

① Place the cursor at the item for replacement and press  .

② Press  to  to select an item to register.

- When replaced, all items in the group are deleted.

INFORMATION

- You can change the order of stored items or icons. ➡P445

Using Custom Menu

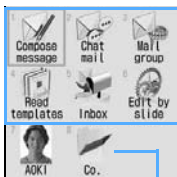
A function or person stored in the Custom Menu can be used.

- Shortcut operations are also available while Custom Menu is displayed. The method of selecting numbers for shortcut operations can be selected between the same method as the normal menu and use of dial keys corresponding to the positions of custom menu items. ➡P31

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

- When “Custom” is set for Default MENU of Menu Settings, press  on the stand-by display.
- The custom menu display style depends on the selected display style in “Custom” of the Menu settings. ➡P31

2 Select items.



- To select a function or person from a group, select the group to display the function or person in the group.
- If a menu is set for the second level of group folder, the second-level menu is displayed in the display style according to the "Custom" setting of Menu settings.

Function

Group

Person

- List menu is displayed and customized call or detailed information can be checked.

■ Executing functions

① Select functions.

- When a menu item that has submenus is selected, the menu items are displayed in the display style according to the "Normal" setting of Menu settings.

■ Making a call

① Place the cursor at a person.

② Press for a voice call and press for video-phone call.

- When two or more phone numbers are stored, select a phone number in the phonebook detail screen (phone number).
- When only one phone number has been registered, hold down (voice call) or (video-phone call) for over a second to make a call. The caller's voice can be heard through the speaker (speakerphone function).

■ Sending i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor at a person.

② Press .

- When two or more mail addresses are stored, place the cursor to a mail address and press or in the phonebook detail screen (mail).
- When no mail address has been stored, the Receiver field is left blank.
- Procedure of composing/sending i-mode mail ➡P249

■ Sending Short Messages (SMS)

① Place the cursor at a person.

② Hold down for over a second.

- When two or more phone numbers are stored, place the cursor at a phone number and press or in the phonebook detail screen (phone number).
- When no phone number has been stored, the Receiver field is left blank.
- Procedure of creating/sending Short Message (SMS) ➡P310

To execute registered functions quickly

Function Menu item registered in Custom Menu can be started by pressing the corresponding dial key (to) for over a second on the stand-by display. However, when a menu item is person or group or the function menu is in the second level and the following, the menu item is not activated by pressing dial key for over a second.

INFORMATION

- If the secret attribute is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as " * * * * " unless the Secret mode is set. The  icon is indicated.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM is locked or Privacy mode is ON ("Authorized access" set for Phonebook & Logs). The  icon is indicated and the name of the person is displayed as " * * * * ".
- When the secret attribute is set and the PIM lock is ON, the phone behaves according to the PIM lock function.

Editing custom menu

The item arrangement and icons are changed and group names can be changed or deleted on Custom Menu.

- Select a group and display the screen to edit items in the group.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When "Custom" is set for Default MENU of Menu Settings, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the item to edit and perform each operation.

■ Replacing items

- ① Press  .
- ② Select the destination item and select "Yes".

■ Changing icons

- ① Press   to select icon.
 - Press  to reset the icon.

■ Changing group names

- ① Press  .
- ② Enter the group name and press .

■ Deleting items

- ① Press   and select "Yes".
 - When the group is deleted, the items in the group are also deleted.

Resetting Custom Menu

Delete all the items for registered contents and samples. This operation is performed when an optional function or phonebook data for all the items in the Custom Menu is registered.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When "Custom" is set for Default MENU of Menu Settings, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

3 Enter the terminal security code.

4 Select “Yes”.

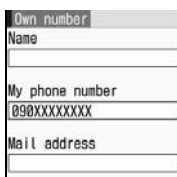
All the items in the Custom Menu are deleted.

- Press  to display the item selection screen. When an item is selected, you can store persons, functions or groups. ➡P442

Own Number

Recording your own name and mail address

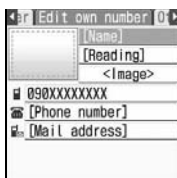
1 Press on the stand-by display.



- As own number, the subscribing terminal phone number is set.

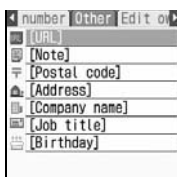
2 Press and enter the terminal security code.

3 Set the name and mail address.



- Items are set in the same way as phonebook items. ➡P104
- When setting has already been made, the setting is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (Own Number) is stored in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4 Press to set the other information.



- None of these are set by default. When setting has already been made, the setting is displayed.
- Items are set in the same way as phonebook items. ➡P106

5 Press .

INFORMATION

- Your Own Number is recorded in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on the FOMA terminal.
- Own number can be stored also when 圏外 (out of service area) is indicated.
- Changing the mail address field in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not automatically change the address field in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode mail address, refer to a separate book “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[Own Number]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[F1]** and enter Terminal security code.



- The data that has already been set is displayed. When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed.
- Press **[F2]** to display name, reading, the first phone number and the first mail address. **☛P115**

■ When Own Number is edited

① Press **[Menu]** **[2]** to edit Own Number.

■ When recorded data are reset

① Press **[Menu]** **[3]** and select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- You can use the information stored in Own Number to perform a number of operations in the same way as the phonebook.
 - To make full use of Phonebook **☛P56, P111, P117**
 - To forward Own Number (Infrared sending) **☛P408**
 - To set various functions **☛P121, P121**

Recording other party's or your voice

Your voice is recorded in stand-by instead of notes (Stand-by Voice Memo) or other party's voice is recorded in voice/video-phone call (Talking Voice Memo).

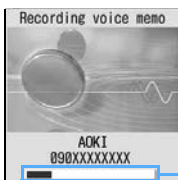
- A record message for Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor. Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.
- It is recommended that the contents of record messages should be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Data may be lost due to failure, repair or modifications, etc. of FOMA terminal. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Recording voice of the other party while talking

A Talking Voice Memo records only the voice of the other party. During a video-phone call, you can record voice but cannot record image.

1 Hold down for over a second during a call.

Recording will start.



Voice memo during voice call

An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

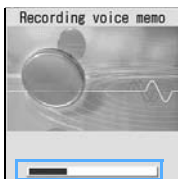


Voice memo during video-phone call

- When about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording).
- To cancel recording, hold down  over a second.
- Pressing    during a call does not record Voice memo.

Recording your own voice during stand-by

1 Press on the stand-by display.



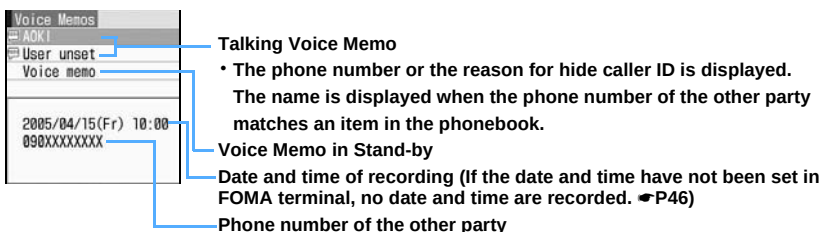
An approximate guide of the remaining time for recording is displayed.

After about 3 seconds, a beep sound occurs and recording starts.

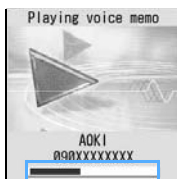
- And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is heard at the end of the recording.
- To cancel recording, press ,  or .

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The voice memo list shows both Talking and Stand-by Voice Memos.



2 Select voice memo to replay.



The voice memo will be played.

- Press  to stop playback of a voice memo.
- Press  to adjust the volume.
- You can hear a voice memo from the speaker by pressing  during playback (a speakerphone function). By pressing  again, you can hear the recorded voice memo from the earpiece.

An approximate guide of the playing time is displayed.

3 Select whether to delete the played voice memo.

- Select "Yes" to delete the voice memo.

■ Deleting voice memo from the voice memo list

- Select a voice memo to cancel and press   .

- Press    to delete all voice memos.

- Select "Yes".

■ Saving phone number in Phonebook from the voice memo list

- Select a voice memo to save and press  .

- When adding in registered phonebook, press   and press  or  and select the phonebook data of registration destination. 

- Press  or  to record a name and mail address. 

INFORMATION

- For voice memos while talking, place the cursor at a party from the list followed by pressing  or  makes a voice call or video-phone call respectively. Customized call in the submenu can be used to make voice or vide-phone calls by specifying Show/Hide caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate.

Checking call duration and call cost

The call duration and call cost of the last and total of voice/video-phone call is checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, video-phone call and 64K data communication and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- Call cost is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party, "0 YEN" or "*****" is displayed.
- Call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.

Note: In FOMA terminal released before 901i series, call cost is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.

- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are approximation and may be different from the actual. And call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking call duration

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Last call : Duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls : Total duration of voice calls made

Total video-phone calls : The total duration of video-phone calls made

Total data sessions : The total duration of data communication established

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the approximate duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

■ When total calls duration is reset

- ① Press  and enter the terminal security code.
- ② Select call duration to reset and select "Yes".
 - To reset total duration of voice/video-phone call and data communication, select "All calls/data reset".
 - Press  to return to call duration screen.

Checking call cost

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Last call cost : Cost of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication.
 • No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".

Total calls cost : Total cost of calls/communication including voice/video-phone call or of the data communication

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the approximate cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Reset: date & time: The date and time of resetting the total cost last

■ When total call cost is reset

- ① Press , enter PIN2 code and select "Yes".
 - PIN2 code ➡ P152

INFORMATION

- The duration for packet communication is not included.
- When the last or total duration of voice calls, video-phone call and 64K data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.
- When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored as it is, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.
- The call duration and call cost are not counted for i-mode/packet communication. For details of usage fees, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Calculator

Using Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+ , - , × , ÷) calculation on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ➡P518

1 Press **[Menu]** **[7 7:OFF]** **[4 4:]** on the stand-by display.

2 Make a calculation.



Calculate using the dial keys (**[0 0:]** to **[9 9:]**) and **[+/-]** (+ , - , × , ÷).

- To delete the last digit entered, press **[C]**.
- To enter a decimal point, press **[.]**.
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative, press **[+/-]**.
- The calculator screen is designed in such a way as to show the function of the corresponding terminal key.

3 Press **[=]**.

The calculation result is displayed.

- Press **[C]** or **[AC]** to delete the calculation result.

INFORMATION

- Press **[Menu]** **[1 1:]** to copy displayed numbers. Press **[Menu]** **[2 2:]** to paste the copied number. Copied numbers are held until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and you can paste them in the entry fields of notes, mail composition screens, etc. any number of times.
- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. Press **[C]** or **[AC]** to clear. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.
- You can copy up to the first eight-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of the notes or mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the Calculator screen. If you have copied the one-byte number of more than eight digits, the exceeded numbers are deleted.
- You cannot enter additional numbers following the pasted numbers. Also, you cannot paste two-byte numbers or a character other than a number.

Composing notes

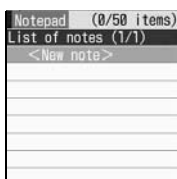
This function allows you to enter important information or notes in Notepad.

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

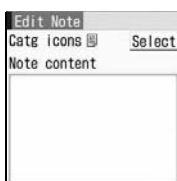
List of notes screen appears.

2 Select “<New note>”.



- When notepad is set to ON in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal pointing “<New note>” with a cursor to display the Edit note screen.

3 Enter the note data in Note content field.



- Up to 300 two-byte or 600 one-byte characters can be entered.

■ Inputting values calculated with Calculator

① Press on the character entry screen.

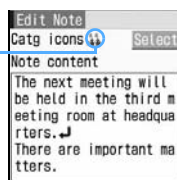
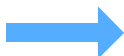
② Make a calculation and press .

- Calculator operation 

4 Select “Select” in the Catg icons field and select an icon from the list.



The name of the selected icon is indicated.



Selected icon is indicated.

5 Press .

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

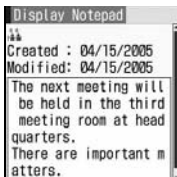
INFORMATION

- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Notepad. Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send the data to the PC.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

List of notes screen appears.

2 Select note to check.



- If the displayed note content contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used. ➡P223
- Press  to edit notes.
- When Notepad is set to ON in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal to display the notepad Edit screen.

■ When deleting a note

- ① Press  .
- ② Select "Yes".

■ Creating mail from note

- ① Press  .
- Procedure of composing/sending i-mode mail ➡P249

INFORMATION

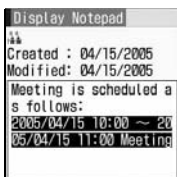
- When deleting single note from List of notes screen, place the cursor at the note to delete, press  and select "Delete note". To delete all items, press , select "Delete all" and enter the terminal security code.
- To compose mail from List of notes, place the cursor at the note for message text, press  and select "Compose message".

Saving schedule from notes [Date To function]

When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select Note written in Date To format.



3 Select Note written in Date To format.



Date To format

Date To is effective when the content of Note has a string in the format below (All items are required):

Example

2005/04/15 10:00 ~ 2005/04/15 11:00 Meeting
 Start date Start time End date End time Contents A line feed is regarded as an entry

Note: □ represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.

- Only one-byte characters can be used for the underlined parts other than the contents.
- Separate the start date, start time, “ ~ ”, end date, end time and contents with half-sized spaces.
- The contents can contain up to 100 two-byte or 200 one-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only one digit for month, day, hour or minute, the preceding 0 can be skipped.

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch**Using the earphone/microphone set with switch**

By connecting the optional earphone/microphone set with switch (including stereo earphone set) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- The earphone/microphone set with switch cannot be used to make video-phone calls.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover and insert the connection plug of the earphone/microphone set with switch. P25

- Do not wrap the cord of the earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making calls by pressing switch

By assigning a phone number to phonebook number 0 of the Phonebook, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on earphone/microphone set with switch instead of dialing the entire number or referring to the Phonebook.

1 Connect the earphone/microphone set with switch.

Insert the connection plug of the earphone/microphone set with switch into the earphone/microphone jack.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps.

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number assigned to phonebook number 0 of the Phonebook.

3 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

- If more than one phone number has been assigned to phonebook number 0, the first phone number will be dialed.
- If secret attribute has been set for phonebook number 0, Secret mode must be activated before making calls by pressing switch.
- If a call is already in progress, it is not possible to make another call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data in the miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing switch

Connect the earphone/microphone set with switch in advance.

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps.

- The ring tone is emitted from the point indicated by the Headset Switch setting. ➡P456

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

- If Auto Answer is set, you can receive an incoming call automatically without pressing the switch.
- Operations when the FOMA terminal is closed during a call by connecting an earphone/microphone with switch ➡P64
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch of the earphone/microphone set with switch for over a second.

Answering call automatically with earphone connected [Auto Answer]

Default Auto answering : OFF

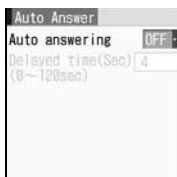
If you receive an incoming call when you connect the earphone/microphone set with switch, you can answer the call automatically after the specified ringing time.

When a voice or video-phone call is received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone set with switch.

- This function is not available for incoming calls while talking.
- This function is not available in Driving mode. ➡P74

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select Auto answering field and press .



- Press  to cancel Auto Answer function and go to Step 4.

3 Enter the delayed time (sec).

- Enter the auto answering time between 0 and 120 seconds.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- The same time period cannot be set for both Delayed time for Auto Answer and Greeting Response Time. ➡P78
- When a video-phone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Substitute Image of Image Settings: V-Phone is sent and a video-phone call is automatically started.
- When this function and the Answer machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- If an incoming call is received from the specified phone number when the Reject/Accept Call or Reject non-reg. Caller is set, this function is not available.

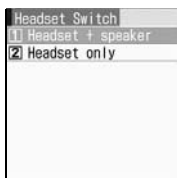
Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone [Headset Switch]

Default Headset + speaker

When connecting an earphone/microphone set (headset) with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker or only through the earphone.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .



Headset Switch is set.

■ Hearing the ring tone through the earphone and the speaker

- ① Press .

INFORMATION

- When an earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of the setting.
- When you set to "Headset only", you will hear the ring tone through "Headset + speaker" 20 seconds after the ring tone begins to sound.

Determining service provider

Default Auto select NW

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to enter the service provider manually or using automatic search. Enter the service provider when automatic search is not to be used.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **9** **5** on the stand-by display.

Search method

: Sets how to retrieve a network.

- If you select "Auto select NW", you cannot set "Manual select".

Manual select

: Determines a service provider.

- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of December 2004)
- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for Pake-Houdai service.

2 Select Search method field and press **1** or **2**.

- Press **1** to set Auto for Search method and go to Step 4.

3 Select Manual select field and press **1**.

4 Press **Enter**.

The service provider is set.

Confirm Settings

Checking current settings of functions

1 Press **Menu** **8** **4** **2** on the stand-by display.

This displays the settings in the "Sound/Vibrator" menu.

2 Press **Left Arrow** to check the current settings.

Current screen



- Each time you press **Left Arrow**, the menus are displayed in the following order: "Sound/Vibrator", "Display", "Security/Other", "Clock", "Send/Receive", "Call", "Video-phone", "Mail", "Mode" and "Appli". Press **Right Arrow** to switch the screen in reverse order.

Resetting functions

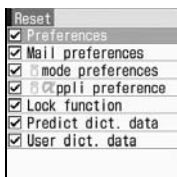
This function resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. ➡P524
In addition, the following functions, though not mentioned in the list of menu, are reset to the default settings:
 - Silent mode (Be reset when Preference is selected)
 - Driving mode (Be reset when Preference is selected)
 - Predict dict. data
 - User dict. data (data recorded using Save Word are deleted)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select the item to reset.



- You can select/cancel all items by pressing (the guide row appears different depending on the selection status).

4 Press .

5 Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- Menu structure cannot be reset by this function, but if “Custom1” or “Custom2” of icon design is changed, they return to the default status.

Deleting registered data collectively

Deletes the saved data and return the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Deleting data collectively should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i-α ppli
 - Chara-den
 - Images in "Deco-Mail picture" and "Item" folder of My Picture (Image) in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Message R/F • i-mode mail • Chat mail (including the chat member setting) • Short Message (SMS)
 - Mail template
 - Signature setting
 - Mail group
 - Bookmark (excluding "Confirm Mail Address")
 - Enter URL
 - URL history
 - Screen memo
 - Last visited URL
 - i-α ppli
 - i-α ppli history display
 - Phonebook data
 - Received call list
 - Redial history
 - Answer machine (including recorded response guidance)
 - Voice memo
 - The data of My Picture (Image)/ motion/Melody in Data Box (except for "Preinstalled" folder)
 - Chara-den
 - Data read by Bar code reader
 - Schedule (including holidays registered or changed)
 - Notepad
 - Call duration
 - Words/Fixed phrase
 - Register USSD
 - Record reply message
 - Own Number (except for your phone number)
 - Folder/Album created
 - Updating software (Reserved update)
- The functions listed in Reset function (P458) and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort criteria
 - i-mode Shortcut Bookmark
 - i-α ppli (functions set from software list)
 - Answer machine
 - Operation settings of My Picture (Image)/ motion/Melody/Chara-den
 - Camera
 - Video camera
 - Sound Recorder
 - Data exchange settings by infrared communication
 - Bilingual
 - PIM lock
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy mode
 - Settling for date& time
 - Setting equipment used for video-phone call
 - NW search method
 - Arrival call act
 - Menu setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom menu

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Select "Yes".

Data are deleted collectively during reloading.

INFORMATION

- The following data are not deleted and cannot be reset to the default:
 - The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card
 - Data communication setting set via a personal computer
- If the data or i-α ppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style". ●P328
Packet communication fee is required separately to download.
- Restore the default setting for each function by executing "Reset". ●P458
- If there are the data of large capacity, about one minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal	[Network Service]	462
Using Voice Mail Service	[Voice Mail]	463
Using Call Waiting Service	[Call Waiting]	465
Using Call Forwarding Service	[Call Forwarding]	466
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	[Nuisance Call Blocking]	468
Using Caller ID Request Service	[Caller ID Request]	469
Using Dual Network Service	[Dual Network]	470
Switching language for the guidance	[English Guidance]	470
Using Service Dialing Number	[Service Dialing Number]	471
Setting Arrival Call Act	[Arrival Call Act]	472
Setting Remote Control	[Remote Control]	472
Using Multi Number	[Multi Number]	(Service not available) 473
Registering new network services	[Added Service (Register USSD)]	473

Network services available using FOMA terminal

The following convenient network services are available:

Service	Description	Monthly fee required	Application required
Voice Mail Service	Stores messages when FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is turned OFF. P463	Charged	Required
Call Waiting Service	You can put the current call on hold and answer a call from a third party. P465	Charged	Required
Call Forwarding Service	Automatically transfers incoming calls when FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is turned OFF. P466	Free	Required
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Allows you to register the phone number of certain parties and then block incoming calls from the registered phone number. In such a case, a guidance automatically plays informing the caller that calls from that number are rejected. P468	Charged	Required
Caller ID Notification Service	Notifies the other party of your phone number. P47	Free	Not required
Caller ID Request Service	Plays a guidance informing the caller that caller ID information is required, then automatically disconnects the call. P469	Free	Not required
Driving Mode	Plays a guidance automatically when an incoming call is received informing the caller that the call cannot be answered because you are driving. P74	Free	Not required
Dual Network Service	Allows you to use a single phone number for both FOMA terminal and the mova. P470	Charged	Required
English Guidance Service	Allows you to hear the guidance in English. P470	Free	Not required
Service Dialing Number	Calls DoCoMo for General Inquiries or DoCoMo for Repairs. P471	Free	Not required
Short Message Service (SMS)	Allows you to exchange text messages between FOMA terminals. P248	Free	Not required
i-mode	Allows you to send and receive i-mode Mail and access Sites (Programs) and Internet web pages. P198	Charged	Required

For further information or subscription, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual listed. This manual shows an overview of each network service. For details of operation or usage precaution, see "Network Services User's Guide".

INFORMATION

- You can stop Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service and Call Forwarding Service from your FOMA terminal after these services are started. Stopping a service does not cancel the contract itself.

Using Voice Mail Service

Callers hear a recording and then leave a message.

- You can access your voice message from anywhere in Japan.
- Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned OFF or is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.
- You must apply to use Voice Mail Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Voice Mail Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

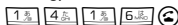
- Up to 20 Voice messages, each 3 minutes long can be recorded and they are stored up to 72 hours.
- Includes a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- When Voice Mail Service is active you are still able to make and receive calls.
- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. An icon indicated on the stand-by display and received calls screen alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.
- Note that, though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Call Forwarding Service OFF, Voice Mail Service is not automatically activated.)
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center (☎P62). You can also forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center while on the phone. ☎P472
- Voice Mail Service can be accessed from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- When a call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is ON, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. No message is recorded.
- When a video-phone call is received, the call is not transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, even if Voice Mail Service is set. The call is received as a normal video-phone call.

- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step1

Register an answering message (initial setting)



Step2

Activate the service

Step3

The caller leaves a message*

Step4

Play back the voice message

* Callers can press on their telephone to skip hearing the answering message and proceed directly to recording mode.

About Voice Mail Service fees

Use of Voice Mail Service requires communication fees for hearing voice messages, in addition to the monthly charge. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Voice Mail Service

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select "Yes".

3 Select "Yes".

- Select "No" to activate Voice Mail Service by the set time (the default ringing time is 10 seconds) without the ringing time setting.

4 Enter the ringing time.

Voice Mail Service is activated.

- Enter the ringing time between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing .

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- From the screen for checking current setting, you can change the setting by selecting from the submenu.
 - Menu** **1** : Activate Voice Mail Service
 - Menu** **2** : Deactivate Voice Mail Service
 - Menu** **3** : Set ringing time of Voice Mail Service
- You can set only the ringing time by pressing **Menu** **9** **1** **2** on the stand-by display.
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to transfer the call to Voice Mail Service Center.
- Forwarding the incoming call manually ➡P62
- Ringing time setting is still retained even after you deactivate Voice Mail Service.

Using voice prompts to set up Voice Mail Service

- 1 Press** **Menu** **9** **1** **6** **5** **on the stand-by display.**
- 2 Select “Yes” and follow the voice prompts.**

Voice Mail Service is set.

- To check if there is a new voice message or listen to a voice message, hang up the phone first.

Hearing voice messages

When there are voice messages, the icon  that indicates the number of voice messages appears on the stand-by display.

- 1 Press** **Menu** **9** **1** **5** **on the stand-by display.**
- 2 Select “Yes” and follow the voice prompts.**

The voice message is played.

INFORMATION

- New voice messages can also be played quickly from the stand-by display (Focus Mode). ➡P35
- The number displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include saved voice messages.

Checking for new voice messages [Check Messages]

- 1 Press** **Menu** **9** **1** **7** **on the stand-by display.**

- 2 Select “Yes”.**

When new voice messages arrive, the existence and the number of voice messages are displayed on the stand-by display.

- If Notification is ON, the notification melody will sound and the terminal will vibrate when a new voice message arrives.

INFORMATION

- Even when Vibrator is set to “OFF”, the vibrator starts according to the setting for Silent Mode if Silent Mode is active and any message is found as a result of Check Messages. ➡P134

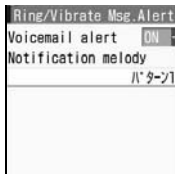
Setting ring tone to sound when a new voice message arrives [Notification]

Default Voicemail alert: ON
Notification melody: パターン 1

You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you access Voice Mail Service Center to check for new messages.

- If any message is found as a result of Check Messages, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- For messages left just after performing Check Messages, the alert tone may not sound.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, Driving Mode or alarm sound is active, the alert tone does not sound and the vibrator is not activated.

- 1 Press** **Menu** **9** **1** **8** **on the stand-by display.**



- 2 Select Voicemail alert field and press** **1**.

- Press **2** and go to Step 5 to disable the alert tone.

3 Select Notification melody field.

4 Select a folder to select a melody from the list.

The melody is set and the Notification setting screen reappears.

- You can play a melody by selecting it and pressing . While a melody is playing, pressing  adjusts the volume and pressing  plays the previous or next melody.
- Press  to set the melody.

5 Press .

Notification is set.

Notifying incoming calls received while you were out of service area [Missed Call Notice]

When the terminal is turned ON or within the service area, this function notifies you of calls received with your FOMA terminal turned OFF or outside the service area using Short Message Service (SMS).

Activating Missed Call Notification

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select "Yes".

3 Select "Yes" or "No".

Missed Call Notification is activated.

- Select "Yes" to notify all incoming calls.
- Select "No" to ignore calls whose caller ID is not notified because of "User unset" or "Payphone".

Deactivating Missed Call Notification

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Call Waiting

Using Call Waiting Service

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

- You can also place the current call on hold and call another party.
- You must apply to use Call Waiting Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Call Waiting Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- When a call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID and Call Waiting Service cannot be used.
- Call Waiting Service does not operate under the following conditions:
 - When you make a call to 104, 110, 117, 118 and 119
 - When you are dialing or calling another party
 - While you are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center as a user of the service, e.g. for replaying messages
 - When you make a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, including 1411 (activating Voice Mail Service) and 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding Service)
 - During a video-phone call (the call is recorded as missed call in Received Calls)
 - When a video-phone call is received during a voice call (the call is recorded as missed call in Received Calls)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- You cannot make a video-phone call during a call.
- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Call Waiting Service

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select "Yes".

Call Waiting Service is activated.

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **5** **over** **2** **7** **over** **3** **8** **over** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival Call Act to "Answer". Call Waiting Service is available regardless of whether you activate or deactivate Arrival Act. ➤P472
- If Arrival Call Act is set to other than "Answer", an incoming call cannot be received even when you activate Call Waiting Service.

Other operations

Putting current call on hold to answer incoming call

- 1 Press **⏸** during a call.
The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.
 - "Multi connecting" appears on the screen.
 - Press **⏸** to switch the other parties.
 - When "Hold" is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing **⏸**. Press **⏸** again to release on hold.
 - To finish a call on hold, Press **Menu** **1** **3** while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).
- 2 Press **⏸** when you finish talking to the other party.
This ends the call and the ring tone sounds.
 - Press **⏸** to switch back to the other party on hold.

Answering incoming call after finishing current call

- 1 Press **⏸** while talking.
A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.
- 2 Press **⏸**.
You are connected to the new party.

Holding current call and making another call

- 1 Press **Menu** **7** **3** while talking and dial the phone number.
 - Press **Menu** **1** **3** to call back from Received Calls or press **Menu** **2** **3** to make a call from Redial. When making a call from the party registered in the phonebook, press **⏸** and place the cursor at the other party to make a call to.

2 Press **⏸**.

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- "Multi connecting" appears on the screen.
- Press **⏸** to switch the other parties.
- When "Hold" is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing **⏸**. Press **⏸** again to release on hold.
- To finish a call on hold, Press **Menu** **1** **3** while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).

3 Press **⏸** when you finish talking to the other party.

The call ends.

- Press **⏸** to switch back to the other party on hold.

INFORMATION

- During multi-connection, you cannot receive incoming calls. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in Received Calls.

Call Forwarding

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, is turned OFF or you cannot answer the call.

- The service is available anywhere within the FOMA service area nationwide.
- You must apply to use Call Forwarding Service. No monthly fee is required.
- Call Forwarding Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

- Only one forwarding destination can be set.
- When Call Forwarding Service is ON, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- You can forward incoming calls (➤P62). You can also forward incoming calls while you are on the phone. ➤P472
- Note that though you can subscribe to both Call Forwarding Service and Voice Mail Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Voice Mail Service OFF, Call Forwarding Service is not automatically activated.)

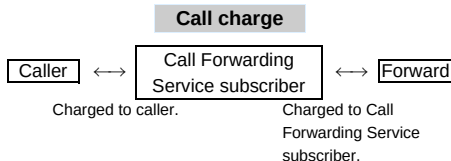
- When a call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is ON, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- Call Forwarding Service can be operated from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard (P82) even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings. The video-phone caller cannot hear the forwarding guidance. (When the other party is a user of FOMA terminal, a message that the call is being forwarded is displayed on the screen).

- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1** Set the forwarding destination phone number
- Step 2** Activate Call Forwarding Service
- Step 3** Call comes in to your FOMA terminal
- Step 4** Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

About Call Forwarding Service fees



Note: There is no call charge for setting the forwarding destination, activating and deactivating the service, and setting the ringing time.

Activating Call Forwarding Service

- 1** Press **Menu** **9** **3** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2** Select "Yes".

3 Select "Yes".

4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number.

- Toll-free and 3-digit numbers such as 110 cannot be specified as forwarding destinations.
- You can enter up to 26 digits.

■ To set forwarding destination phone numbers from the phonebook

- ① Press **Menu** while **Phonebook** is indicated in the guide row.**
 - The search result screen used for the previous call is displayed. Note that, phonebook data for which the secret attribute has been set is displayed only in Secret Mode. P166
 - Press **Menu** to search again by changing the search method.
 - The search screen or the search result screen used for the previous search is displayed. Perform searching when the search screen is displayed.
 - When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, select a phone number where you want to forward to.
- ② Select the forwarding destination phone number.**
The phone number is entered and the forwarding phone number setting screen reappears.

5 Press **OK**.

6 Select "Yes".

- Select "No" to activate Call Forwarding Service by the set time (the default ringing time is 7 seconds) without the ringing time setting.

7 Enter the ringing time.

- Enter the ringing time between 0 and 120 seconds.
- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing **Up/Down**.

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned OFF, calls are automatically transferred without the ring tone sounding. Also in this case, Call Forwarding Service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to destination.

- Transfer may be suspended if the forwarding destination so requests and DoCoMo determines this to be necessary.
- Note that specifying a PBX, beeper* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause misunderstanding by callers.
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to forward the call to the forwarding phone number.
Forwarding the incoming call manually ➡P62
- Ringing time setting is still retained even after you change the forwarding phone number or deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

You check service activation/deactivation and the forwarding destination phone number.

- 1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Changing forwarding destination

- 1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter a phone number and press .
- 3 Select "Yes".

Setting Voice Mail Service to handle calls when forwarding destination is busy [Fwd-Party-Busy Setting]

- A subscription for Voice Mail Services is required.

- 1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select "Yes".

FOMA terminal is set so that Voice Mail Service handles calls when the forwarding destination is busy.

- Select "No" to deactivate Voice Mail Service not to handle calls.

Nuisance Call Blocking

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered.
- You must apply to use Nuisance Call Blocking Service. A monthly fee is required.
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- If a video-phone call is received from the phone number on the nuisance caller list, the video-phone call is disconnected without the call rejection guidance.
- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Registering phone number of last call as nuisance caller

- 1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display after disconnecting a nuisance call.

- 2 Select "Yes".

The phone number of the latest call is registered in the nuisance call list and is rejected in future. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls, etc. cannot be registered.

■ When 30 phone numbers have already been registered

A screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number on the list. Select "Yes" to delete the oldest phone number from the list and allow you to register a new phone number.

Registering specified phone number as nuisance caller

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

The specified phone number is registered.

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service
Voice Mail Service	The call rejection guidance is played. No message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The call rejection guidance is played.
Caller ID Request Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The Caller ID Request Service guidance is not played.
Driving Mode	The call rejection guidance is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

- You can register a "User unset" call on the nuisance call list.
- You cannot check for or inquire about phone numbers registered on the nuisance call list. It is recommended that you make a note of the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers.
- International phone calls cannot be registered on the nuisance call list.
- When there is an incoming call from a number on the nuisance caller list, no ring tone sounds. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.

Deleting phone numbers from nuisance caller list

You can delete phone numbers one-by-one, beginning with the most recently registered. You can also delete all phone numbers at once.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- Press     to delete all phone numbers.

2 Select "Yes".

The most recently registered phone number is deleted.

Caller ID Request

Using Caller ID Request Service

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID information. This helps you avoid problems caused by nuisance calls, etc.

- Caller ID Request Service operates when no caller ID is notified because of "User unset". This service does not operate when no caller ID is notified because of "Not support" or "Payphone".
- The caller is charged for calls while the guidance requesting the caller ID information plays.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Request Service. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Request Service cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select "Yes".

Caller ID Request Service is activated.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

1 Press on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Caller ID Request Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls with caller ID unsent
Voice Mail Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. No message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the call originates from a number on the nuisance caller list, the call rejection guidance is played. The Caller ID Request Service guidance is not played.
Driving Mode	A guidance requesting caller ID information is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

- When there is an incoming voice call with "User unsent" while Caller ID Request Service is activated, no ring tone sounds and the call is not recorded in Received Calls. For the video-phone caller, the guidance is not played and a message that the call could not be connected is displayed on the other party's screen.
- Caller ID Request Service can be activated/deactivated only with FOMA terminal with your own UIM attached. Remote Control is not available. ●P472
Operation for activating/deactivating the service does not require call charge.
- If Anonymous Caller of FOMA terminal is set as well as this service, this service is given priority.

Dual Network

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network Service allows you to use the mova terminal with the same phone number on FOMA terminal.

With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area and inside the mova service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal.

- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- You must apply to use Dual Network Service. A monthly fee is required.

- You cannot use Dual Network Service to switch network from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate the terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- Perform operation to switch network from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not in network condition.
- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating mova terminal

- 1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal.
- 2 Follow the voice prompts.

Activating FOMA terminal

The following procedure explains the method of switching network that is used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **5** **1** on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.
- 2 Select "Yes".
- 3 Enter the network security code.
Switching network takes place.

Checking current setting

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **5** **2** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

INFORMATION

- The mova terminal is available for the current FOMA i-mode service with some exceptions. Moreover, when using i-mode or various network services, FOMA and mova terminals are subject to their respective restrictions and precautions. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

English Guidance

Switching language for the guidance

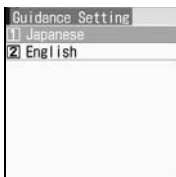
This service allows you and other parties to hear the guidance in English when making or receiving calls, and also allows you to hear it when setting various network services including Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.

- Guidance in “Japanese” and “English” is provided.
- You do not need to apply to use English Guidance. No monthly fee is required.
- You cannot switch the language used for guidance from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- You cannot use English Guidance when you make or receive a video-phone call.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.
- For details of operation, see “Network Services User's Guide”.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 9 9 9]** **[4 4 4 4]** **[1 1 1 1]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select “Yes”.

3 Press **[1 1 1 1]** or **[2 2 2 2]**.



Japanese

: Sets the guidance to Japanese for you to hear at the time of calling.

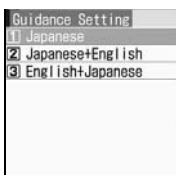
English

: Sets the guidance to English for you to hear at the time of calling.

4 Select “Yes”.

5 Press **[1 1 1 1]** to **[3 3 3 3]**.

English Guidance is switched.



Japanese

: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.

Japanese + English

: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.

English + Japanese

: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.

Checking current setting

1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 9 9 9]** **[4 4 4 4]** **[2 2 2 2]** on the stand-by display and select “Yes”.

Service Dialing Number

Using Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- You do not need to apply to use Service Dialing Number. No monthly fee is required.
- Service Dialing Number cannot be accessed from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ depending on the UIM types. ➡P39
- For details of operation, see “Network Services User's Guide”.

Calling DoCoMo for Repairs

1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 9 9 9]** **[6 6 6 6]** **[1 1 1 1]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select “Yes”.

Call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.

Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries

1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 9 9 9]** **[6 6 6 6]** **[2 2 2 2]** on the stand-by display.

2 Select “Yes”.

Call is made to DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting Arrival Call Act

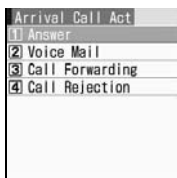
During a voice call or 64K data communications, you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services.
- 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during a call, and 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during 64K data communication are rejected (handled according to "Call Rejection"). For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking

Default Answer

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 Voicemail]** **[8 Call Forwarding]** on the stand-by display.



Answer : You can answer or disconnect the second call received during a call or 64K data communication. Call Waiting Service must be subscribed and activated.

Voice Mail : Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service.

Call Forwarding : The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is forwarded to the set forwarding destination.

Call Rejection : The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is rejected and recorded in Received Calls.

- 2 Press **[1 Yes]** to **[4 Call Rejection]**.

Arrival Call Act is selected.

- To enable Arrival Call Act you selected, turn Arrival Act Setting ON. However, when Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, Arrival Call Act is enabled regardless of Arrival Act Setting.

- If you set this function to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is automatically available with Arrival Act Setting ON even while either of them is deactivated.

Enabling Arrival Call Act [Arrival Act Setting]

You activate or deactivate the response method selected by Arrival Call Act.

- Arrival Act Setting cannot be made from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- The act selected in Arrival Call Act is performed with Call Waiting Service subscribed and activated regardless of settings of this function.

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 Voicemail]** **[7 Call Forwarding]** **[1 Yes]** on the stand-by display.

- 2 Select "Yes".

Arrival Call Act is activated.

Disabling Arrival Call Act

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 Voicemail]** **[7 Call Forwarding]** **[2 No]** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 Voicemail]** **[7 Call Forwarding]** **[3 Call Rejection]** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Remote Control

Setting Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones.

- You cannot set Remote Control from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- For details of operation, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Activating Remote Control

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select "Yes".
Remote Control is activated.

Deactivating Remote Control

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** **2** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Checking current setting

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** **3** on the stand-by display and select "Yes".

Multi Number

Using Multi Number

- Multi Number has not been started as of December, 2004.

Added Service (Register USSD)

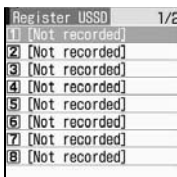
Registering new network services

When a new network service is introduced, you use the service by registering it in the menu.

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

Registering network services

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the number to record and press **Enter**.



- Press **Left Arrow** to switch to the next or previous page.

Changing registered contents

- ① Place the cursor at a number that is already in use and press **Enter**.

- 3 Select USSD code field, enter the USSD code.

Register USSD
USSD code
Name

- Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in USSD code field. Service code is the code used to make settings for the network service. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.

- 4 Select Name field and enter the name (service name).

- The name (service name) can contain up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

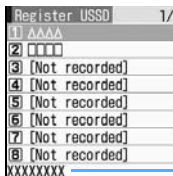
- 5 Press **Enter**.

The service is registered.

Using registered network service

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** to **8**.

The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center.



The selected service code is displayed.

- Press **Left Arrow** to switch to the next or previous page.

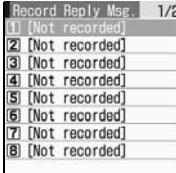
Registering reply message

You can register messages corresponding to a code returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. The reply message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1 Press [Menu] [9] [9] [2] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1] to [8].

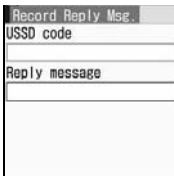


- Press [Left Arrow] to switch to the next or previous page.

Changing registered contents

- ① Select a number that is already in use.

3 Select USSD code field and enter the USSD code.



- Enter the USSD code provided by DoCoMo.

4 Select Reply message field and enter the reply message.

- The reply message can contain up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters.

5 Press [Enter].

The reply message is registered.

Deleting registered service

1 Press [Menu] [9] [9] [1] on the stand-by display.

- Press [Menu] [9] [9] [2] to delete the reply message.

2 Place the cursor at the service to delete and press [Menu] [1].

- Press [Menu] [2] to delete all services.
- Press [Left Arrow] to switch to the next or previous page.

3 Select "Yes".

Data Communication

Data communication	476
Flow of setup for data communication	478
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal	479
Installing communication configuration file (driver)	480
Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software	482
Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software	492
AT command	502

Data communication

The data communication and connection modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "Sigmarion II" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "Sigmarion II" or "musea". For details on update such as method, visit the DoCoMo Web site.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports three communication formats: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible. High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's mopera Internet connection service. Best-effort connection which allows the transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

This type of communication becomes available by installing the related software on a PC from the CD-ROM provided, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing Web pages containing images and downloading will require high charges.

64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transmission/reception at stabled communication rate of 64kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. Use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication

services such as DoCoMo's mopera Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64kbps access points.

This type of communication becomes available by installing the related software on a PC from the CD-ROM provided, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

Data transmission

Data transfer is a form of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via following connection methods.

Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Data transfer can be used by connecting a FOMA terminal with another FOMA terminal, mobile phone or PC terminal. Before exchanging data with a PC, install the related software on the PC from the CD-ROM provided.

Connecting FOMA terminal to other devices

Two types of connection are available. Infrared communication can be used only for data transfer.

Connecting using FOMA USB cable

You can connect FOMA terminal to a PC equipped with a USB port using a FOMA USB connection cable (optional). ➡P479

- Installation of the communication configuration file on a PC is needed before making the connection.

Using infrared communication

You can send or receive data by using infrared to connect a FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal, mobile phone, PC or other device with an infrared communication function. ➡P406

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (herein after called as provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo Internet connection service mopera allows you to access the Internet without subscription to the service. Also, no monthly fee is required. If you would like to make a connection with Internet easily, it is recommended to use mopera.

Setting dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of DoPa.
- You cannot connect to access points of PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate) using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the CD-ROM provided and configure it. See "FirstPassManual" in CD-ROM for details.

To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) See the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site for details.

■ Checking operating environment

The operating environment for the FirstPass PC software is listed below.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard Disk Capacity	10MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version * For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

* Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which support a FOMA USB connection cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64kbps.

Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

● APN (Access Point Name)

String to identify an provider or corporate LAN to connect with by packet communication.

The APN for mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".

● cid (Context Identifier)

A number corresponding to a dialup connection (APN) of packet transmission and registration number assigned to APN to register in FOMA terminal. Ten numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.

● DNS (Domain Name System)

A system used to convert domain names (example: mopera.ne.jp) to IP addresses used on a PC.

● IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

The association that establishes regulations for infrared communications.

● IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

A standard for transferring data between mobile phones and PDA (Personal Digital Assistant-a mobile data device). You can exchange phone numbers and schedule information with mobile phones and PDA that are equipped with infrared terminals that conform to IrMC.

● OBEX (Object Exchange)

An international data communication standard. Mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, printers, etc. that support OBEX can exchange data with each other.

● QoS (Quality of Service)

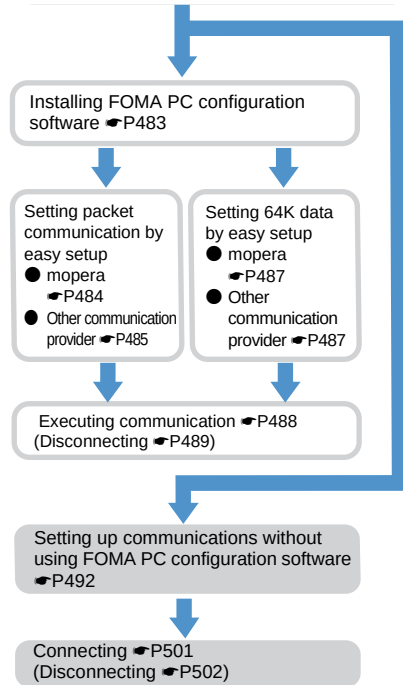
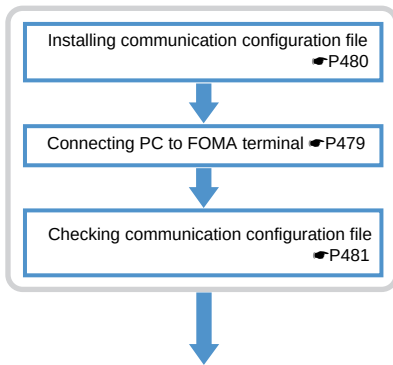
The quality of a provided service. Technology ensuring that lines meet user expectations during communication. The transmission speed of a FOMA terminal can be set.

- **W-CDMA**
W-CDMA is a third generation communication system (IMT-2000) and an international communication standard. FOMA terminal conforms to the W-CDMA standard.
- **W-TCP**
A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.
- **Administrator privilege**
A user level that provides complete access to all operating system functions in Windows XP and Windows 2000. There must be at least one user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install drivers.

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.

An overview of the steps is given as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to PC to perform data communication in the communication mode.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on the PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be set from PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments.

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described below nor DoCoMo assumes responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

Item	Requirements
Computer*	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5MB or more free disk space

* PC with a USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required in case of USB connection.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempting by other user produces an error. For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.
- Also, refer to the instruction of the PC.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched ON.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC in communication mode for the first time. ●P480
- When FOMA terminal is connected with a PC in miniSD mode for the first time, the OS installs the driver automatically. Installation of the communication configuration file on a PC is not required beforehand. However, the OS which support miniSD mode are Windows XP and 2000 only.

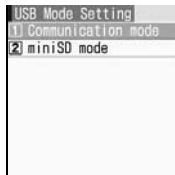
Selecting PC operation during USB connection [USB Mode Setting]

Default Communication mode

Whether to perform data communication via PC or operate the data of the miniSD memory card attached with FOMA terminal from PC at the time of connection of PC and FOMA terminal is specified.

- 1** Press **[Menu]** **[6 USB]** **[5 3.0]** **[4 2.0]** on the stand-by display.

- 2** Press **[1 1.1]** or **[2 2.0]**.



Communication mode

: In this mode, data communication is performed from PC.

miniSD mode

: In this mode, the miniSD memory card attached with FOMA terminal is operated from PC.

- 3** Select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- Even when FOMA terminal is connected with PC, this function setting can be changed.
- MiniSD mode may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when FOMA terminal is connected.
- When the miniSD memory card is being operated from a PC, the mode cannot be set for communication mode. Also, miniSD mode cannot be set during a call or i-mode.
- To edit data such as phonebook entries using PC, the data link software is required. ●P550
- Even when miniSD mode is set, USB Mode Settings are switched automatically to communication mode 90 seconds after the last access to the miniSD memory card without connecting FOMA terminal to PC.
- Communication such as phone call or i-mode can not be used when miniSD mode is set.
- Multi-indicator blinks during miniSD mode.
- Formatting miniSD memory card attached with FOMA terminal from PC may become unable to read or write by FOMA terminal. Format using FOMA terminal. ●P397
- Click on the task tray and click “USB 大容量記憶装置デバイスドライブ (E:) を安全に取り外します (Release safety the USB large memory device-DriveE: *)” to quit operation of the miniSD memory card.

* The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of PC.

- The miniSD memory card folder structure during operation from PC. ●P388

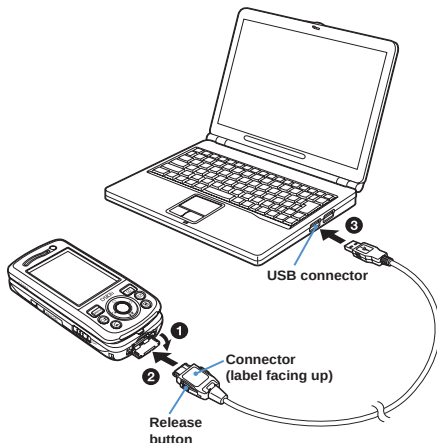
Connecting using FOMA USB cable

- 1** Open the cap on FOMA's external connection terminal.
- 2** Insert one end of the FOMA USB connection cable into FOMA terminal external connection terminal until it clicks.

Next

③ Insert the other end of the FOMA USB connection cable into the PC USB connector.

- When PC and FOMA terminal are connected in communication mode,  appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
- If you connect FOMA terminal to PC in communication mode before installing a communication configuration file, WINDOWS may automatically detect that a FOMA USB connection cable has been inserted, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.



■ Removing FOMA USB connection cable

Press release button on both sides of the connector of FOMA terminal. Pull the connector out from the PC.

■ Connecting while charging

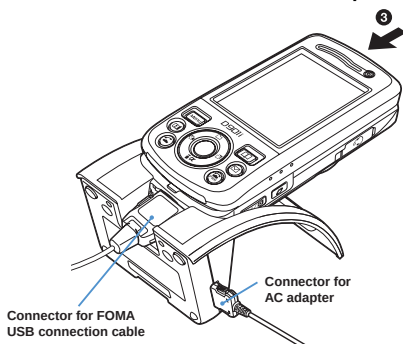
FOMA terminal can be connected using a desktop holder (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

① Connect desktop holder with AC adapter.

- Insert the AC adapter in an outlet.

② Connect FOMA terminal and FOMA USB connection cable.

③ Place desktop holder shown in the figure, and insert FOMA terminal to desktop holder.



INFORMATION

- Do not remove the USB connection cable during data communication.
- To perform data communication while charging your FOMA terminal using desktop holder, close your FOMA terminal. Do not open FOMA terminal or expose FOMA terminal and the desktop holder to shock. The shock may cause disruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or loss of data if FOMA terminal is slipped from the desktop holder.
- When charging FOMA terminal is started during data communication, the charging may not be completed. To ensure completion of recharging, it is recommended that recharging be started after data communication has completed.

Installing communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to PC to perform communication in the communication mode.

- When FOMA terminal is connected with PC in miniSD mode, installation of the communication configuration file is not required.

Installing communication configuration file (driver)

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ◀P479

Example Installing the software under Windows XP

- The screen differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC.

- Make sure to connect FOMA terminal to the PC after performing the Steps from 1 to 3.

2 Click “スタート(Start)” menu and click “ファイル名を指定して実行(Run)”. Enter “<CD-ROM drive>:\USBDRIVE\D901iin.exe” in “名前(Name)” and click “OK”.

3 Click “はい (Yes)”.

A screen informing that FOMA D901i is connecting to PC is displayed.



4 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

Installation in progress screen is displayed and installation is automatically completed.

- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is ON. ●P479
- Check type and name of the device installed. ●P481

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a screen instruct you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If the PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.
- If PC cannot detect FOMA terminal for some reason, uninstall and reinstall the communication configuration file.

Checking communication configuration file (driver)

- When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example To check the driver in Windows XP

1 Click “スタート” menu, “コントロールパネル(Control Panel)”, “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス(Performance and maintenance)” icon and “システム(system)” icon.

“システムのプロパティ (System properties)” screen is displayed.

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- ① Click “スタート” menu, select “設定(setting)” and “コントロールパネル”. Then, double-click “システム” icon.

2 Click “ハードウェア(Hardware)” tab and click “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)”.

“デバイスマネージャ” screen appears.

■ For Windows Me, 98

- ① Click “デバイスマネージャ” tab.

3 Click each device to check the name of the installed device.

Check that the name of all devices installed are shown.

Device type	Device name
Port (COM/LPT) or (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D901i Command Port (COMx) • FOMA D901i OBEX Port (COMx) (COMx varies with PC to be used.)
Modem	FOMA D901i
Universal Serial Bus Controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• FOMA D901i • FOMA D901i Command* • FOMA D901i Modem* • FOMA D901i OBEX*

* Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.

Uninstalling communication configuration file (driver)

- Before operation, read “Before installation/uninstallation” ●P479
- Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example Uninstalling the software under Windows XP

- The screen differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Click “スタート” menu, “コントロールパネル” and “プログラムの追加と削除(Add/delete Programs)” icon.

“プログラムの追加と削除” screen is displayed.

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- ① Click “スタート” menu, select “設定” and “コントロールパネル”. And double-click the “アプリケーションの追加と削除(Add/delete applications)” icon.

2 Select “FOMA D901i USB” and click “変更と削除 (Update/delete)”.



3 Check that you have selected the correct program for removal, and Click “はい”.

The communication configuration file uninstall process starts.

4 Click “OK”.

INFORMATION

- When the installation fails or “FOMA D901i USB” is not displayed on the screen of Step 2, click “スタート” menu, and “ファイル名を指定して実行”. Then specify “<CD-ROM drive name>:\¥USBDRIVE¥D901iin.exe” and click “OK” to execute directly and uninstall communication configuration file.
- When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the environment such as PC configuration. In this case, the FOMA USB cable should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software

The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to perform the packet communication or 64K data communication by simple operation.

FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

Easy setup

“Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication” and “W-TCP setup” can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for “FOMA packet communication”. Optimization of the communication settings using “W-TCP setup” is required to enable full use of communication performance.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs “dialup connection (APN) setup” required for “packet communication”. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number to connect field. “mopera.ne.jp” (APN) is registered in cid 1 by default to connect to “mopera”, but the APN for connections to other providers and company LAN must be set.

All procedures from installing FOMA PC configuration software to Internet connection

Check the operating environment of FOMA PC configuration software. ◀P478

Step 1 Installing FOMA PC configuration software ◀P483

The “FOMA PC configuration software” covers all FOMA terminals supporting data communication.

Step 2 Setup preparations

Check the following before performing settings.

- Installing a communication configuration file ◀P480
- Connecting FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P479
- Verifying that the PC detects FOMA terminal ◀P481

Step 3 Executing easy setup of connecting settings

- Packet communication using mopera ◀P484
- Packet communication using other providers ◀P485
- 64K data communication using mopera ◀P487
- 64K data communication using other providers ◀P487
- For details on other settings, refer to P490 and after.

Step 4 Performing communication and connecting to Internet ◀P488

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is detected as number larger than COM20 during an APN Setting, APN information cannot be obtained or written.

Installing FOMA PC configuration software

- When “W-TCP environment configuration software” (herein after referred to as old “W-TCP configuration software”) and “FOMA data communication configuration software” (herein after referred to as old “FOMA data communication configuration software”) provided with FOMA terminals listed below are installed, uninstall these software in advance. (FOMA N2001, FOMA N2002, FOMA P2401, FOMA P2002, FOMA F2611, FOMA T2101V)
- Before operation, read “Before installation/uninstallation” ●P479

Example Installing the software under Windows XP

- The screen differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC.

2 Click “スタート” menu and click “ファイル名を指定して実行”. Enter “<CD-ROM drive>:\FOMA_PCSET\SETUP.EXE” in “名前” and click “OK”.

3 Click “次へ (Next)”.

A confirmation screen of the product license agreement appears.

4 Read the content of the screen and click “はい” if you agree to the license agreement.

5 Check that “タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray)” is selected and click “次へ”.

The “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)” resides in the task tray after the setup. ●P490

- Residing in task tray is the recommended setting for optimum control of “W-TCP communication” setting and cancellation.
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



6 Check the installation path and click “次へ”.

7 Check the name of the program folder and click “次へ”.



8 Click “完了 (Done)”.

The “FOMA PC configuration software” is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen. ●P484

INFORMATION

- The screen to select how to install FOMA PC configuration software is displayed when it is already installed. Follow the instructions shown on the screen.

- The install of FOMA PC configuration software is canceled when old “W-TCP configuration software” is installed. Uninstall old “W-TCP configuration software”.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to continue installing FOMA PC configuration software when old “FOMA data communication configuration software” is installed. Click “はい” and continue installation.
- When “キャンセル(Cancel)” or “いいえ(No)” is clicked during installation, follow the instruction shown on the screen and click “継続(Continue)” or “中止(Cancel)”.

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Example Setting under Windows XP

- The screen display differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Select “スタート” menu, “プログラム(Programs)” (“すべてのプログラム(All programs)” for Windows XP) and “FOMA PC設定ソフト(FOMA PC configuration software)” then click “FOMA PC設定ソフト”.

The “FOMA PC configuration software” is started up.



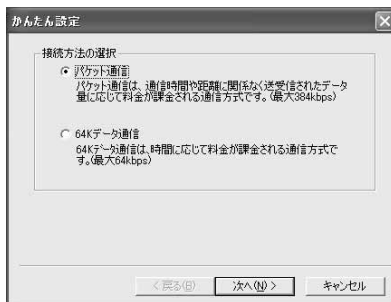
Setting packet communication using mopera

This method allows you to set high-speed packet communication which provides maximum speed of 384 kbps. DoCoMo's mopera is selected as an Internet service provider.

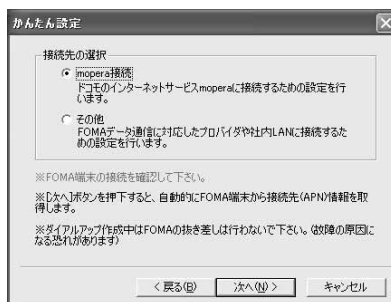
- Using providers other than mopera. ●P485

1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software and click “かんたん設定(Easy setup)”.

2 Select “パケット通信(Packet communication)” and click “次へ”.



3 Select “mopera 接続(mopera connection)” and click “次へ”.



4 Click “OK” on “FOMA 端末設定取得画面 (Get FOMA terminal settings)” screen.

“接続先 (APN)情報 (dialup connection (APN) information)” is obtained from FOMA terminal connected to the PC. Please wait.

5 Enter the connection name and click “次へ”.

Enter a connection name in “接続名 (Connection name)”.

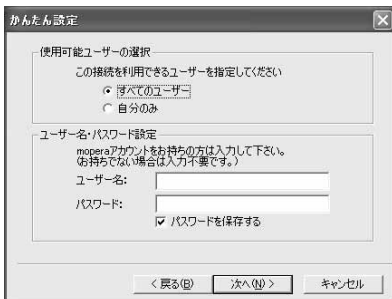
- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”



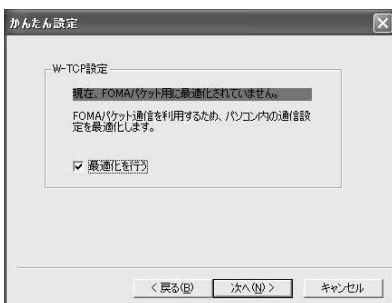
6 Click “次へ”.

- The entry of a “ユーザー名(user name)” or “パスワード(password)” is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.

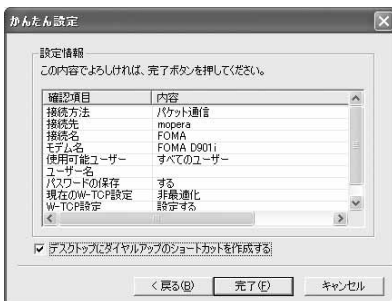


7 Check that “最適化を行う (Optimize)” is selected and click “次へ”.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click “完了”.



9 Click “OK”.

The PC must be restarted for the changes to take effect. Click “はい” when a window prompts you to restart the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, the PC must not be restarted.
- Performing communication ◀P488

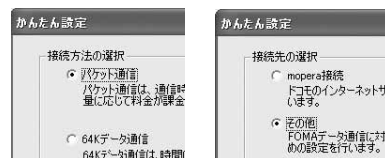
Setting packet communication using other providers

This method allows you to set high-speed packet communication which provides maximum speed of 384 kbps.

- Using mopera ◀P484

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Setting packet communication using mopera”. ◀P484

Select “その他 (Others)” in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter a connection name and click “接続先 (APN)設定(Set dialup connection (APN))”.

Enter a connection name in “接続名”.

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / ; * ? ! < > | ”



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)

Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)” to display “IP アドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (Name server)” setting screens. When the provider you subscribe to, the company LAN and other dialup information are required, register addresses based on the information.

3 Set dialup connection (APN)

APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in number (cid1*) by default to connect to mopera.

① Click "追加 (Add)".

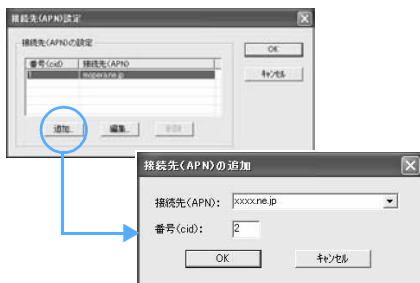
"接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection(APN))" screen is displayed.

② Enter a dialup connection name (APN), which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider, in the "接続先(APN) (Dialup connection (APN))" and click "OK".

The display returns to "接続先 (APN) 設定" screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered in the "接続先 (APN)".

* 1 to 10 can be registered as cid.



4 Click "OK".

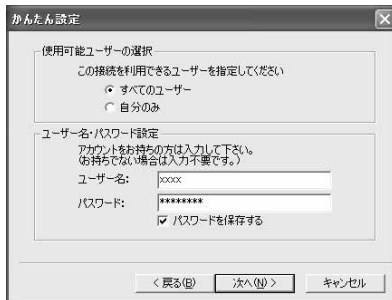
The display returns to the screen in Step 2. "接続先 (APN)" set in Step 3 is displayed in "接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select dialup connection (APN))".

5 Check the connection name in "接続先 (APN) の選択" and click "次へ".

6 Enter "ユーザー名" and "パスワード" and click "次へ".

Enter the "ユーザー名" and "パスワード" given by the provider correctly. Make sure such as the case of each character.

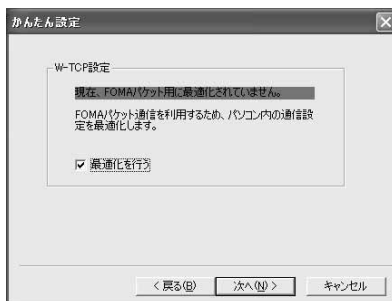
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



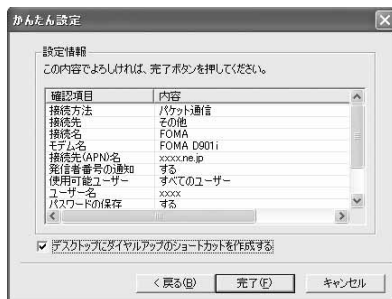
7 Check that "最適化を行う" (Optimize) is selected and click "次へ".

This optimizes the W-TCP setup required for packet communication.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click "完了".



9 Click “OK”.

The PC must be restarted for the changes to take effect. Click “はい” when a window prompts you to restart the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP Setting has already been performed, the PC must not be restarted.
- Performing communication ◀P488

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Example Setting under Windows XP

- The screen display differs under OS other than Windows XP.

Setting 64K data communication using mopera

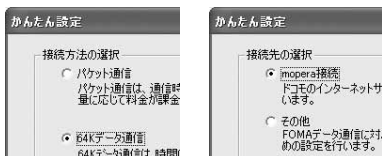
This method allows you to set 64K data communication.

DoCoMo's mopera is selected as a provider.

- Using providers other than mopera ◀P487

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Setting packet communication using mopera”. ◀P484

Select “64Kデータ通信(64K data communication)” in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



2 Enter the connection name and select the modem and click “次へ”.

Enter a connection name in “接続名”.

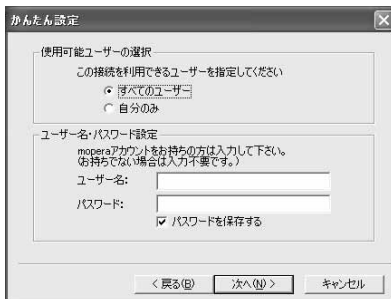
- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”

- Check that “FOMA D901i” is set for “モデムの選択 (Modem selection)”.

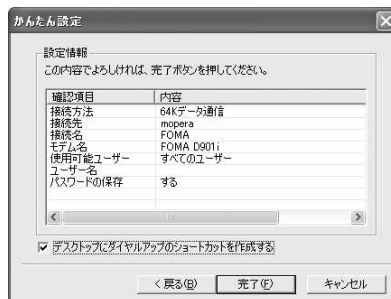


3 Click “次へ”.

- The entry of a “ユーザー名” or “パスワード” is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click “完了”.



5 Click “OK”.

- Performing communication ◀P488

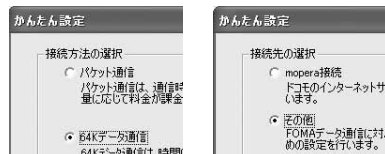
Setting 64K data communication using other providers

This method allows you to set 64K data communication.

- Using mopera ◀P487

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Setting packet communication using mopera”. ◀P484

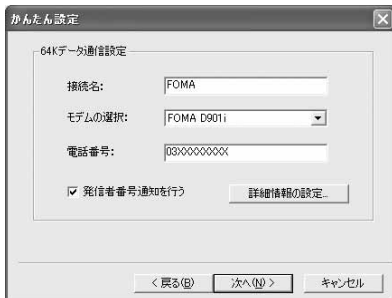
Select “64K データ通信” in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and “その他” in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Set each item and click “次へ”.

Register the following items to create a dialup connection when connecting to a provider with an ISDN synchronized 64Kbps access point.

- 接続名 : Optional
- モデムの選択 (Modem selection):
FOMA D901i
- 電話番号 (Phone number): Enter based on provider information correctly.



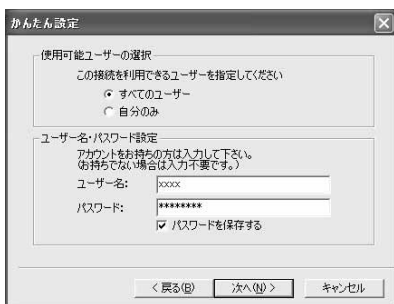
■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)

Click “詳細情報の設定” to display “IP アドレス” and “ネームサーバー” setting screens. When the provider you subscribe to, the company LAN and other dialup information are required, register addresses based on the information.

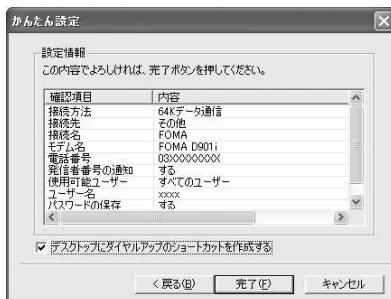
3 Enter “ユーザー名” and “パスワード” and click “次へ”.

Enter the “ユーザー名” and “パスワード” given by the provider correctly. Make sure such as the case of each character.

- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click “完了”.



5 Click “OK”.

- Performing communication ➡ P488

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here. Operations for communications that come in while 64K data communication or voice call is taking place are also explained.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

- Connection procedure ➡ P479

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



Data communication starts.

- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from Start menu.

■ Starting from Start menu of Windows XP

- ① Click “スタート” menu, “すべてのプログラム”, “アクセサリ (Accessories)” and “通信 (Communication)”. Then, click “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)” and double-click the connection icon.

■ Starting from Start menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98

- ① Click “スタート” menu, “プログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then, click “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)” (“ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup network)” for Me/ 98) and double-click the connection icon.

3 Establish a connection.

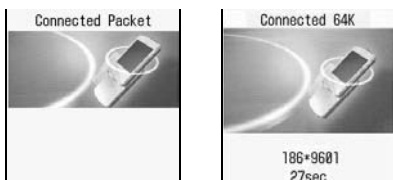
- When mopera is selected, you can click “ダイヤル(Dial)” without having to enter “ユーザー名” and “パスワード”.
- For other providers, enter “ユーザー名” and “パスワード” before clicking “ダイヤル”.
- Connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click “OK”.



Note: The screen varies depending on the OS.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



For packet communication

For 64K data communication

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.
- When connecting FOMA terminal other than D901i, reinstall the communication configuration file (driver).

Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- 1 Double-click  in the task tray.
- 2 Click “切断(Disconnect)”.



Note: The screen varies depending on the OS.

When 64K data communication is received

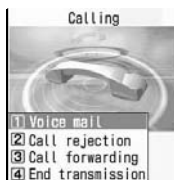
When a 64K data communication is received, the following screen is displayed. Use PC operations to respond to the communication.



- If another 64K data communication is received during 64K data communication, reception is rejected and the call is registered as missed calls in received call list.

When voice call is received during 64K data communication

When a voice call is received during 64K data communication, the following screen is displayed. The following responses can be selected by pressing .



Voice Mail

: Responds to incoming voice call depending on settings of Voice Mail Service.

Call rejection

: Disconnects incoming voice call.

Call Forwarding : Forwards incoming voice call depending on settings of Call Forwarding Service.

End transmission : Disconnect current 64K data communication in progress.

When 64K data communication is received during voice call

When 64K data communication is received during a voice call, the reception is rejected. However, the call is registered as missed calls in received call list.

INFORMATION

- If another 64K data communication or a voice call is received in All lock ON, reception is rejected and the call is registered as missed calls in received call list.
- When the call is received by an unconnected PC, reception is rejected and the call is registered as missed calls in received call list.

Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of “W-TCP setup” and canceling optimization is explained here.

The “W-TCP setup” is a “TCP parameter tuning tool” for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal, this communication set up is required.

Activating and deactivating system optimization under Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection under Windows XP.

1 Start “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” and click “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)”. ◀P484

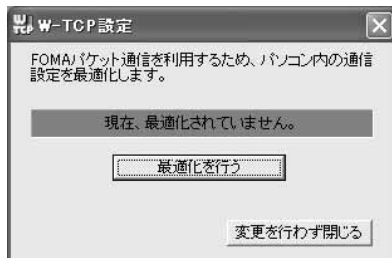
■ Starting W-TCP setup from task tray

- ① Double-click  in the task tray.
W-TCP setup can be started directly.

2 Perform the following.

■ When the system has not been optimized

- ① Click “最適化を行う” on the W-TCP setting screen.
- ② Select the dialup connection to be optimized and click “実行 (Execute)”. Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



■ When the system has been optimized

The following screen is displayed. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



■ Deactivating optimization

- ① Click “システム設定(System setting)” in “W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ) (Set W-TCP (dialup))” screen.
W-TCP setting screen is displayed.
- ② Click “最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)”.

3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

- The settings take effect after restarting the PC.

Activating and deactivating system optimization under Windows 2000, Me or 98

1 Perform Step 1 of “Activating and deactivating system optimization under Windows XP”. ◀P490

2 Perform the following.

- When the system has not been optimized
 - ① Click “最適化を行う”.
- When the system has been optimized
 - ① Click “最適化を解除する”.

3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

- The settings take effect after restarting the PC.

Setting dialup connection (APN)

Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

- Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.
- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P479
- For dialup connection (APN) other than mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

1 Start “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” and click “接続先(APN)設定”.

“FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings)” screen is displayed.

- Starting software ◀P484

2 Click “OK”.

Connected FOMA terminal is automatically accessed for reading the “dialup connection (APN) information” registered.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings.



■ Adding dialup connections (APN)

- ① Click “追加”.

■ Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APN)

- ① Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click “編集(Edit)”.

■ Deleting registered dialup connection (APN)

- ① Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click “削除(Delete)”.
- The dialup connection (APN) registered in number (cid) 1 cannot be deleted.

■ Saving settings as file

- ① From the toolbar, click “ファイル (File)” menu and “名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)” or “上書き保存 (Save)”.
- Save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ Importing settings from file

- ① From the toolbar, click “ファイル” menu and “開く (Open)”.
- Import settings from a file to edit dialup connection (APN) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

■ Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal

- ① From the toolbar, click “ファイル” menu and “FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Import setting from FOMA terminal)”.
- Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

■ Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal

- ① Click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write setting to FOMA terminal)”.
- The dialup connection (APN) setting displayed is written to FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections

- ① Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) and click “ダイヤルアップ作成(Create dialup connection)”.
- “FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal)” screen is displayed.
- ② Click “はい”.
- When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal, “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成(Create dialup connection for packet communication)” screen is displayed.
- ③ Enter a connection name and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定(Set account and password)”.
- Not required for a mopera connection.
- ④ Enter ユーザー名 and パスワード and click “OK”.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection.
- Some providers may require you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click “詳細情報の設定” in “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” screen, register the required information and click “OK”.
- ⑤ Click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む”.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑥ Click “はい”.

INFORMATION

- The dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal. When connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.), re-register the APN.
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN in FOMA terminal.
- By default, "mopera.ne.jp", which is the APN for connection to mopera, is set for cid1.
- When FOMA terminal is detected as number larger than COM20 by checking communication configuration file, APN information cannot be obtained or written during an APN setting. Set the information using "Hyper Terminal" that comes with Windows in that case. ◀P493

Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ◀P479

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click "常駐させない (Do not reside)", to cancel the resident of "W-TCP setup".

Uninstalling

Example Uninstalling the software under Windows XP

- The screen display differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Click "スタート" menu, "コントロールパネル" and "プログラムの追加と削除" icon.

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- ① Click "スタート" menu, select "設定" and "コントロールパネル". Then double-click "アプリケーションの追加と削除" icon.

2 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)" and click "変更と削除".

3 Check that you have selected the correct program for removal and click "はい".

The uninstall process of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ Canceling "W-TCP optimization"

The confirmation screen is displayed when W-TCP is optimized.

Click "はい" to uninstall.

Canceling of "W-TCP optimization" is performed after the system is restarted.

4 Click "OK".

Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Dialup network setting

Followings are dialup network setting procedures:

Installing communication configuration file
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal
◀P480
◀P479



Setting dialup connection (APN) ◀P493
Note: For 64K data communication and packet communication via mopera dialup connection do not require this setting.

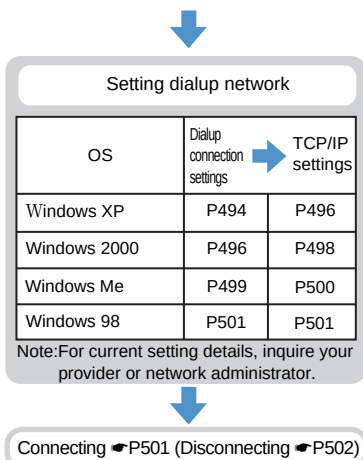


Setting show/hide caller ID
Note: Set as required. ◀P494



Making other settings (AT commands)
Note: Set as required. ◀P502





Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Default cid1 : mopera.ne.jp cid2 to 10 : not set

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using “HyperTerminal” that comes with Windows is explained here.

Example Setting with Windows XP

- The screen display differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

- Connection procedure ▶P479

2 Click “スタート” menu, select “すべてのプログラム”, “アクセサリ”, “通信”. And click “ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)”. (Also double-click “Hypertrm” under Windows 98).

- When an OS other than Windows XP is used, “プログラム” is displayed for “すべてのプログラム”.

3 Enter the dialup connection name in “名前” and click “OK”.



4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for “電話番号”, select “FOMA D901i” from “接続方法(Connection procedure)”, and click “OK”.

- Since area code does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



5 Click “キャンセル”, when the connection screen is displayed.

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) and press .

- Enter the setting in the format “AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,”PPP”, “APN””. ▶P508
- <cid>** : Enter any number between 2 and 10.
- “PPP”** : Enter “PPP”.
- “APN”** : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If “OK” is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings

AT + CGDCONT= :
Reset all cids.

The settings are restored to the default setting for <cid> = 1 (mopera.ne.jp) only, and the settings for <cid> = 2 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid> :
Reset specified cid

- **Checking dialup connection (APN) settings**
AT + CGDCONT? []
• For details ➡P508
- **When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered**
ATE1 []
• For details ➡P505

7 Check that “OK” is displayed and click “ファイル” menu, “ハイパーターミナルの終了(End Hyper Terminal)”.

- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named “XXX”?) is displayed. Click “いいえ”.

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup communication (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to cid10 in FOMA terminal. By default, “mopera.ne.jp”, which is the APN for connection to mopera, is set for cid1. This setting is not required for a mopera. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 to cid10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting Show/Hide caller ID

Default not set

Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID that is important information.

- Settings must be “Show” for using mopera.

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication”. ➡P493

2 Set show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication.

Enter the setting in the format

“AT * DGPIR=<n>”. ➡P504

AT * DGPIR=1 [] :

When packet communication connection is being established, “184” is sent to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2 [] :

When packet communication connection is being established, “186” is sent to the dialup connection (APN).

3 Check that “OK” is displayed and click “ファイル” menu, “ハイパーターミナルの終了”.

- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? is displayed. Click “いいえ”.

■ Setting show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186 (ON)” or “184 (OFF)” to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (ON) or “184” (OFF) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the Show/Hide Caller ID setting is as shown below.

Show/hide caller ID setting made by AT *DGPIR command Dialup network Setting (<cid>=1)	not set	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
* 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the Show/Hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT * DGPIR=0”.

Setting dialup network for Windows XP

For Windows XP, use “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network Connection Wizard)” to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

1 Select “スタート” menu, “すべてのプログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then click “ネットワーク接続”.

“ネットワーク接続” screen is displayed.

2 Click “新しい接続を作成する(Create new connection)” in “ネットワークタスク(Network task)”.

“新しい接続ウィザード(New Connection Wizard)” screen is displayed.

3 Click “次へ”.

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

4 Select “インターネットに接続する(Connect to Internet)” and click “次へ”.

The setup screen is displayed.

5 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする(Set up connection manually)” and click “次へ”.

The Internet connection screen is displayed.

6 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する(Use dialup modem to connect)” and click “次へ”.

The device selection screen is displayed.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 Select “モデム-FOMA D901i (COMx) (Modem: FOMA D901i (COMx))” and click “次へ”.



8 Enter any connection name in “ISP名(ISP name)” and click “次へ”.



9 Enter the number of the dialup connection in “電話番号” and click “次へ”.

Enter a number of the dialup connection in one-byte characters.

■ For packet communication

Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid>#”.

For <cid>, enter the cid number, registered in “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (●P493).

To connect to mopera, it will be “ * 99 * * * 1#”.

■ For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection number.

Enter * 9601 when connecting to mopera.



10 Enter “ユーザー名”, “パスワード”, “パスワードの確認入力(Check and Enter Password)”, and set the other items as shown and click “次へ”.

When the access point is mopera, without any input, set each items as shown and click “次へ”.



11 Click “完了”.

12 Check the settings and click “キャンセル”.

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click “ファイル” menu and “プロパティ (Properties)”.



- 2 Check the setting of each item in “全般 (General)” tab.

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, in “接続方法”, select “モデム-FOMA D901i (COMx)”.
- Uncheck (☐) “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)”.



- 3 Click “ネットワーク (Network)” tab and check the setting of each item.

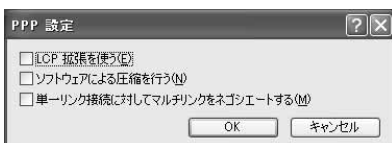
- Set “PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” as “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dialup server to call)”.
- Select only “インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))” in “この接続は次の項目を使用します (This connection uses the following items)” (Use these items for this connection)”. Since “QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)” settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.



- 4 Click “設定”.

- 5 Uncheck (☐) all items and click “OK”.

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



- 6 Click “OK”.

Setting dialup network for Windows 2000

For Windows 2000, use “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

- 1 Select “スタート” menu, “プログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then click “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続”.

“ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” screen is displayed.

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” icon.

“所在地情報 (Location information)” screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed for the first time you double-click “新しい接続の作成” icon. From the second time, go to Step 5.

3 Enter “市外局番(Area code)” and click “OK”.

“電話とモデムのオプション(Phone and modem options)” screen is displayed.

4 Click “OK”.

“ネットワークの接続ウィザード” screen is displayed.

5 Click “次へ”.

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する(Use dialup connection to Internet)” and click “次へ”.

Internet connection Wizard's start screen is displayed.

7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN)を使って接続します(Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))” and click “次へ”.

Internet connection setting selection screen is displayed.

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します(Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)” and click “次へ”.

The modem selection screen is displayed.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

9 Check that “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet)” is set to “FOMA D901i” and click “次へ”.

The Internet account connection information screen is displayed.

- If “FOMA D901i” is not set, set “FOMA D901i”.

10 Enter the number of the dialup connection in “電話番号” and click “詳細設定 (Detailed settings)”.

Enter a number of the dialup connection in one-byte characters.

■ For packet communication

Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid>#”.

For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (P493).

To connect to mopera, it will be “ * 99 * * * 1#”.

■ For 64K data communication

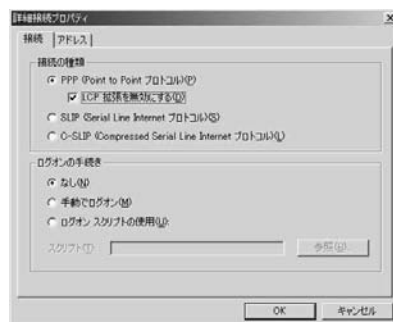
Enter the dialup connection number.

Enter “ * 9601” when connecting to mopera.

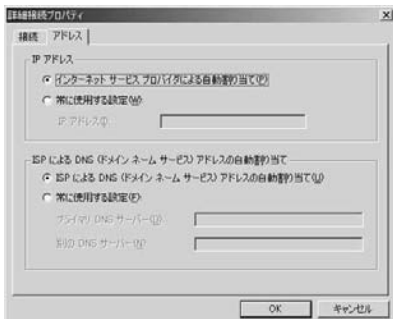
- Uncheck (☐) “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)”.



11 Set each item in “接続(Connection)” tab as shown.



- 12 Click “アドレス (Address)” tab and set each item as shown.



- 13 Click “OK”.

Internet account connection information screen reappears.

- 14 Click “次へ”.

Internet account login information screen is displayed.

- 15 Enter “ユーザー名” and “パスワード” and click “次へ”.

- When the dialup connection is mopera, click “次へ”, without any input. When a confirmation screen for no entry is displayed, click “はい”.

- 16 Enter the dialup connection name in “接続名” and click “次へ”.



- 17 Select “いいえ” and click “次へ”.



- 18 Click “完了”.

“ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click “ファイル” menu and “プロパティ”.



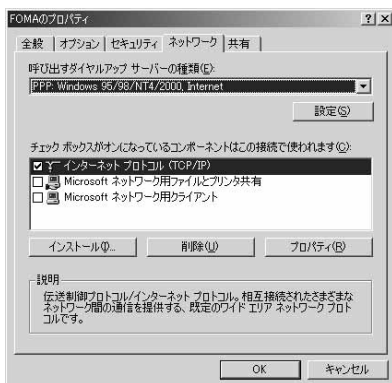
- 2 Check the setting of each item in “全般” tab.

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select “モデム - FOMA D901i (COMx)” in “接続の方法” item. When the modem is changed, all items in “電話番号” is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) “ダイヤル情報を使う”.



3 Click “ネットワーク” tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” as “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類”.
- Select only “インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)” for component.



4 Click “設定”.

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click “OK”.

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click “OK”.

Setting dialup network for Windows Me

Setting dialup connection

1 Select “スタート” menu, “プログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then click “ダイヤルアップネットワーク”.

“ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dialup network)” screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed when “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click “次へ”.

“ダイヤルアップネットワーク” screen is displayed.

3 Double-click “新しい接続(New connection)” icon.

4 Enter the dialup connection name in “接続名” and click “次へ”.

- Check that “FOMA D901i” is set for “モデムの選択”. If it is not set, set “FOMA D901i”.



5 Enter the dialup connection number and click “次へ”.

Enter a number of the dialup connection in one-byte characters.

■ For packet communication

Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid># ”.
For <cid>, enter the cid number, registered in “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication”. (●P493)
To connect to mopera, it will be “ * 99 * * * 1# ”.

■ For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection number.
Enter “ * 9601 ” when connecting to mopera.
• “市外局番” does not need to be entered.



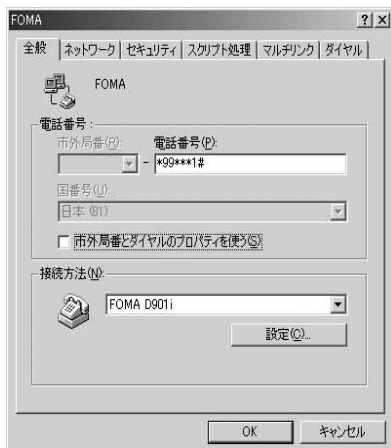
6 Check the name of the dialup connection and click “完了”.

- 1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click “ファイル” menu and “プロパティ”.



- 2 Check the setting of each item in “全般” tab.

- Uncheck (☐) “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う(Use area code and dial properties)”.
- Check that “FOMA D901i” is set for “接続方法”. If it is not set, set “FOMA D901i”.



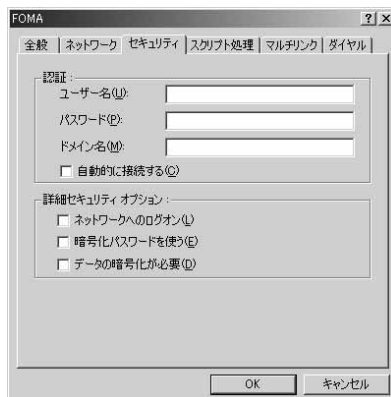
- 3 Click “ネットワーク” tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類(Dialup server type)” to “PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me)”.
- Uncheck (☐) all “詳細オプション”.
- Select only “TCP/IP” for “使用できるネットワーク プロトコル(Available protocol)”.



- 4 Click “セキュリティ (Security)” tab, enter “ユーザー名”, “パスワード” and click “OK” .

When the dialup connection is mopera, click “OK”, without any input.



Setting dialup connection

The operation procedures are as same as the dialup connection setting for Windows Me.

◆P499

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Follow steps 1 to 2 of “Setting TCP/IP protocol” of Windows Me. ◆P500



2 Click “サーバーの種類(Server type)” tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” to “PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98 (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98)”.
- Select only “TCP/IP” for “使用できるネットワーク プロトコル”.



3 Click “OK”.

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example Dialup connection with Windows XP

- The screen display differs under OS other than Windows XP.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

- Connection procedure ◆P479

2 Select “スタート” menu, “すべてのプログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then click “ネットワーク接続”.

“ネットワーク接続” screen is displayed.

- Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click “スタート” menu, select “プログラム”, “アクセサリ” and “通信”. Then click “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (“ダイヤルアップネットワーク” for Me and 98.)

3 Double-click the dialup connection’s icon.

4 Check the settings and click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

- Under the Windows Me, 98, check the items and click “接続”.
- The phone number for the access point set for dialup Network is shown in “ダイヤル (Dial)” or “電話番号”.
- The Mopera dialup connection does not require the entry of a “ユーザー名” or “パスワード”.



Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Double-click in the task tray.

The connection screen is displayed.

2 Click “切断”.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. When the commands are entered on a PC, FOMA terminal operates according to them. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT command.

AT commands

AT command input format

“AT” must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 1# 

Command:	Parameter:	Return character:
Command name	Command's argument	Press Enter key. (Command separator)

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding  must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 160 characters (including “AT”).

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in terminal mode. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
FOMA terminal in stand-by status. FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
FOMA terminal is in communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
Special operations allow you to use AT commands even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

INFORMATION

- Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the “+++” command or code set in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal “OFF” when set in “AT&D1”.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter “ATO ”.

* The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned OFF, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT command that can be used via the FOMA D901i Modem Port is described in this list.

*1 : Indicates that you can format the command setting with the AT&F command.

*2 : Indicates that you can store the command setting into your FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restore it with the ATZ command.

“None”: Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT%V		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Verx.xx”.					
	ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]		Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always ON. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]		Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changed from ON to OFF in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always ON). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from ON to OFF. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from ON to OFF. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]		Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when ATX command is other than 0. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]		Resets all FOMA terminal state to the factory preset. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the factory preset without affecting the call. If you execute &F while talking, the terminal state returns to default after you disconnect the call.					
	ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&S [n]		Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always ON. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns ON when the circuit is connected.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]		Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None
AT * DANTE		Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ * DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside of the service area. m=1, 2, 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DANTE	Display	AT * DANTE=?	Test	AT * DANTE=?
AT * DGANSM=n		Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance to OFF (default). n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection to ON. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance to ON.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DGANSM=0	Display	AT * DGANSM=?	Test	AT * DGANSM=?
AT * DGAPL=n [,cid]		Specifies dialup connection (APN) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all caller IDs (cid's) will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT * DGAPL?	Test	AT * DGAPL=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT * DGARL=n [,cid]		Specifies dialup connection (APN) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all caller IDs (cid's) will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DGARL=0,1	Display	AT * DGARL?	Test	AT * DGARL=?
AT * DGPIR=n		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DGPIR=0	Display	AT * DGPIR?	Test	AT * DGPIR=?
AT * DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of " * DRPW:m", where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT * DRPW=?
+++		Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.					
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None
AT+CEER		Shows a reason of the disconnected communication. ✎P507					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ✎P508					
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for permitting the QoS (Quality of Service) level required by the network when the packet communication is established. ✎P508					
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the desired QoS (Quality of Service) level to be sent to the network when you originates a packet call. ✎P508					
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [n]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG:n,stat". stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer's serial number of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [n]		Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP:n,m". m=0: The network setting that does not show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a call. m=1: The network setting that shows your caller ID to the other party when you originates a call. m=2: Unknown					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted). n=1: Not notified. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR:n,m". m=0: CLIR is not activated (caller ID always notified). m=1: CLIR is activated (caller ID always not notified). m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified"). m=4: CLIR temporary mode (default for "notified").					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?
AT+CMEE= [n]		Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ✎P507 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=characters)					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of your FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM: "number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".					
		ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before "CONNECT" during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?
AT+CRC= [n]		Specifies whether to use extended result codes for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRC=0	Display	AT+CRC?
AT+CREG= [n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of FOMA terminal.					
		ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
		ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
		ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2, 2" is assumed.					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?
AT+WS46= [22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For an incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the Caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the Caller ID displayed					
		ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
		ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. • Packet call: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * * cid#". If you omit cid, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", "184 (to not show the caller ID)" is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid ("186 (show the Caller ID)" is treated in the same manner). • 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone-number". • Redialing: Enter it in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".					
		ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters received from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
		*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None
ATH		Disconnects the packet or 64K data communication.					
		ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test

Command		Description & Parameter				
AT+I [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows FOMA terminal name. n=2: Shows the version of FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+I0	Display	None	Test
ATO		Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.				
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.				
	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or alphanumeric messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with alphanumeric messages. (default)				
	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
	ex.	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.				
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255				
	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: default 0: when parameter omitted 127: to disable the escape processing)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string. It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code. (The setting is not changeable.)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character. It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with alphanumerics. (The setting is not changeable)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command. (The setting is not changeable.)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: default and when parameter omitted)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test
ATS7= [n]		Specifies the waiting time after dialing till connection is established for the packet or 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 seconds (60: default and when parameter omitted).				
	ex.	Enter	ATS7=60	Display	ATS7?	Test
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: when parameter is omitted)				
	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test

Command		Description & Parameter					
ATS10=[n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test	None
ATS30=[n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test	None
ATS103=[n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test	None
ATS104=[n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test	None
AT¥S		Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.					
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]		Specifies whether to use the extended result code for connection. ◀P509 This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is n=1 to 4. n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test	None

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	Communication is impossible because the remote device is busy calling.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

■ Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]

• Outline

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

• Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

• Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

<APN>: Optional

• Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=3).

AT+CGDCONT=3, "PPP", "abc"

• Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current setting values.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]

• Outline

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

• Format

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Parameter description

<cid> : 1 to 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

• Example of execution

(1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2

(2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384kbps download (when <cid>=3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384

(3) Command used to permit 64kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64

(4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384kbps download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384

• Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays the current settings.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

• Outline

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

• Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

• Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

• Example of execution

(when <cid>=3)

AT+CGEQREQ=3

• Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

Extended result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected at 1200bps between FOMA terminal and PC
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected at 2400bps between FOMA terminal and PC
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected at 4800bps between FOMA terminal and PC
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected at 7200bps between FOMA terminal and PC
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected at 9600bps between FOMA terminal and PC
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected at 14400bps between FOMA terminal and PC
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected at 19200bps between FOMA terminal and PC
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected at 38400bps between FOMA terminal and PC
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected at 57600bps between FOMA terminal and PC
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected at 115200bps between FOMA terminal and PC
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected at 230400bps between FOMA terminal and PC
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected at 460800bps between FOMA terminal and PC

INFORMATION

- When ATV [n] command (P506) is set to n=1, the result code is displayed in the character display (default). When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed in the numeric display.
- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB connection cable.

Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connect via PPPOverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	AV (video-phone) connect via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (video-phone) connect via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with PACKET

■ Display example of result code display

When ATX 0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT+V command (P507), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT
Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1

When ATX 1 is set

- When ATX1, AT+V0 is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800
Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21

- When ATX1, AT+V1 is set*1

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format.

CONNECT <speed of FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol> <destination APN>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal → radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal ← radio base station)> *2

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384
(indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp providing a maximum upload speed of 64kbps and a maximum download speed of 384kbps.)
Number display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5

*1 When ATX1 and AT+V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only AT+V0 be used.

*2 When AT+V1 is set, <Dialup connection APN> and the following are displayed only when PACKET is used for connection.

Character Entry

Entering characters	512
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method [5-touch Input Method]	513
Registering fixed phrase [Save Phrase]	518
Copying/cutting and pasting characters [Copy Character]	519
Entering characters using codes [KUTEN Code Input]	519
Registering frequently used words [Save Word]	520
Entering characters using Slot Input Method [Slot Input Method]	521
Setting input method [Input Method Setting]	522

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering character.

- There are two methods for entering characters: "5-touch Input Method" and "Slot Input Method".
In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and the character produced depends on how many times a key is pressed. For details on dial key and character assignment, refer to "List of dial keys and character assignments". P534

In Slot Input Method, use  to select characters from the upper and lower input bar.

P521

- There are two character types: "two-byte characters" and "one-byte characters".
1 two-byte character, line feed, or 1 two-byte space is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as one character. Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know. P519
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- The following character types can be entered for input methods:

○ : Available × : Unavailable — : No character

Input method	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte
Character type				
Hiragana/kanji	○	—	○	—
Katakana	○	○	×	○
Alphabet	○	○	×	○
Numeric	○	○	×	○
Symbols	○	○	○	○
Pictograms	○	—	○	—

- Complex characters may be displayed in a partially changed or simplified form.

Character entry screen

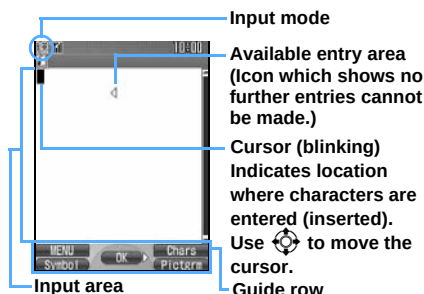
There are two types of character entry methods: full-screen entry mode in which the screen is switched to the entering screen and in-line entry mode in which text can be directly entered into the entry field, by placing the cursor without switching screens.

- Some entry fields may only be able to use one character entry method.

- When fixed phrases pasted or entered exceed the allowable number of input characters, the excessive characters are ignored.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing  is referred to as "enter".

Full-screen entry

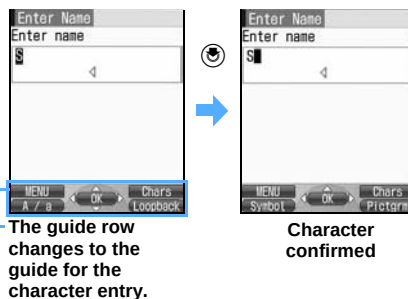
Select the entry field and press  to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Place a cursor at the entry field and press  to , ,  to enable character entry directly into the entry field.

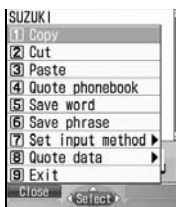
The character is fixed by pressing .



Character entry screen submenu

Press  while entering characters.

- In case of mail text entry field, submenu items can be displayed while characters in entry window appears when any characters entered are confirmed.



When entering by slot input display

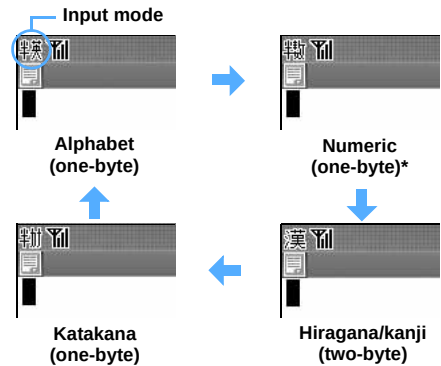
Item	Description
1 Copy	Copies characters P519
2 Cut	Cuts characters P519
3 Paste	Pastes copied/cut characters P519
4 Quote phonebook	Quotes entries of the phonebook data P517
5 Save word	Saves the entered characters as a word P520
6 Save phrase	Saves the entered characters as a phrase P518
7 Set input method	Sets an input method P522
8 Quote data	Quotes own number, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by the Bar Code Reader. (Items displayed depend on the entry field.) P517
9 Exit	Ends character entry. This is displayed only when characters are entered in the Slot Input Method.

Changing input modes

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.

Using to change modes

The input modes change each time  is pressed.



* This is not display by Slot Input Method.

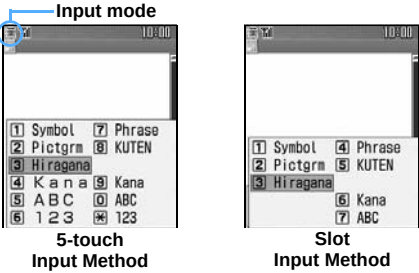
Using input mode list to change modes

You can select the following input mode from the displayed input mode list by pressing  while entering characters.

Item	Input mode	Item	Input mode
Hiragana	Hiragana/kanji characters	123*	Two-byte numbers 全数字
		Kana	One-byte katakana characters 半片
Kana*	Two-byte katakana characters 全片	ABC	One-byte alphabet characters 半英
ABC*	Two-byte alphabet characters 全英	123*	One-byte numbers 半数字

* This is not display by Slot Input Method.

- 全数字 is displayed when only hiragana, other than above, can be entered.



- Press  or supporting dial keys to select input mode.
- The following operations can also be performed by making selections from the input mode list.
 - "Symbol" : enters symbols P517
 - "Pictgrm" : enters pictograms P517
 - "Phrase" : enters phrases P516
 - "KUTEN" : uses code input to enter characters P519

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

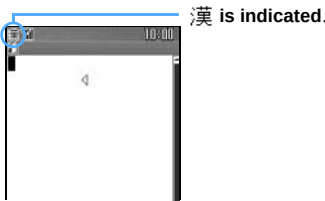
Entering characters [Kana/Kanji Conversion]

Example Entering "鈴木" in the phonebook

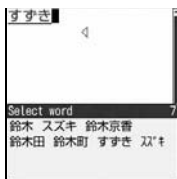
1 Select Enter name and press .

The name entry screen is displayed.

- In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



2 Enter “すすき”.



“す” → Press three times.

Press to move the cursor one position to the right.

“ず” → Press three times and press .

“き” → Press twice.

- Press or to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- Enter the character and press to enter “ ” and “ ”.

For example, after entering “いほ”, each pressing of changes the character as follows: “いほ” “いほ” “いほ”.

For characters that do not accept “ ” or “ ”, they are entered as two-byte characters.

- Pressing changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

Setting hiragana without conversion

Press after entering the hiragana.

3 Press .



- When the desired character is not displayed, press or . A list of conversion options is displayed. Select the desired character.
- Press to convert text to kana/kanji when a predict conversion option is not displayed. Predict conversion .
- Press or to restore the entry before conversion.

Displaying the list of conversion options

When one pressing of fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing or . If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing and , respectively. Press , select conversion options or press the key for the number of each option.



4 Press .

The character is set.

- When Input prediction of Input Method Setting is “ON”, select “Close”.

Inserting characters

Press to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
 - Press or to delete the character at cursor position.
 - Hold down or (half press) for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
 - Press or to delete the character at the left of cursor position.
 - Hold down or (half press) for over a second to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed

Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press .

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press .

Character entry is exited.

- Delete all characters and press or or to discard entered characters and exit character entry.

INFORMATION

- Pressing  immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The order of character switching is reversed every time  is pressed. (Ex.: ...→ 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 →...)
- To successively enter characters assigned to the same key, such as “あい”, press  to enter the first character “あ” and press  to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character “い” by pressing  twice.
To successively enter characters assigned to different keys such as “あか”, press  to enter “あ” followed by  to enter “か”.
- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the Automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right.
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - Two-byte/one-byte katakana
 - Two-byte/one-byte alphabet
- You can perform the following operations after the Automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right by pressing ,  and .
 - : adding voiced sound/semi-voiced sound (Hiragana and two-byte/one-byte katakana)
 - : toggling between upper case/lower case (Hiragana, two-byte/one-byte katakana and two-byte/one-byte alphabet)
 - : return to the previous character
- You can change the time before the cursor moves automatically. You can also disable the Automatic cursor function. ●P522
- On the i-mode Mail text entry screen, icons (, , , , , , ) are indicated at the bottom of the screen and “Deco (Decoration mail)” is displayed in the guide row. Press  to select an icon with  or press   to select an item for composing mail with decorated characters (Deco-mail). ●P253
- List of dial keys and character assignments
●P534

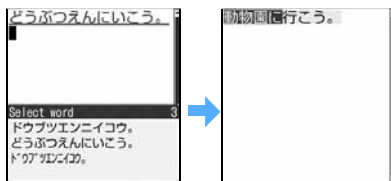
Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be block converted to simplify text entries.

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters and press .



■ Confirm all character

- ① Press .



■ Confirm converted portion

- ① Press .



■ Change conversion range

- ① Press .



When pressing .

INFORMATION

- You can enter symbols, pictograms, alphabetic, Greek characters, etc. by entering the readings in hiragana. For relationships between the readings and characters, see “List of entries and conversion of special symbols” and “List of pictogram entries and conversion” in Appendix. ●P539, P540

Entering characters using input predict function

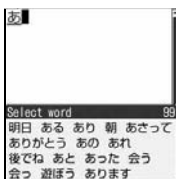
FOMA terminal is provided with the input prediction function displaying a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading, from which you can select the desired characters when characters are entered.

Predict conversion function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Words entered for kana-kanji conversion
 - Character strings registered as words
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
 - During in-line entry (direct insertion of text into entry fields)
 - Slot Input Method
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. ◀P522

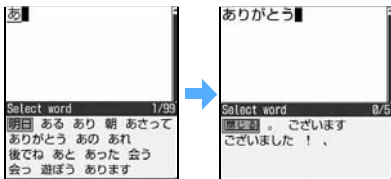
1 Enter characters.

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.



- The options are gradually narrowed down as more characters are entered.

2 Press and , then place the cursor at an option and press .



- While the cursor is placed in predict conversion options, the following operations are enabled:

/◀: switches previous/next page

: kana/kanji Conversion

: sets the character

- When there are no appropriate words, press  to convert text to kana-kanji conversion and predict conversion options vanish.

3 Select “閉じる(Close)”.

The predict conversion options vanish.

INFORMATION

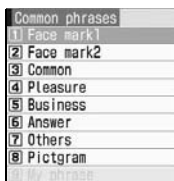
- Words and strings that are registered using the predict conversion function (predict dictionary data) are deleted when “Reset” or “Delete All Data” is executed. ▶P458, P459

Entering fixed phrases

Fixed phrases entered from lists.

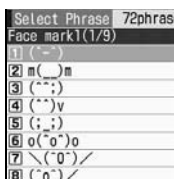
- The selected phrase is inserted at the cursor position.

1 Press on the character entry screen.



- You can also display by pressing  .

2 Press to .



When selecting “Face mark 1”

- When a fixed phrase has been created/registered, you can select a phrase type by pressing .

3 Press to .

The fixed phrase is entered.

- Press  to switch pages.
- Place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press  to check it. Press  to enter the fixed phrase.

INFORMATION

- Mail using face mark may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display number of displayed characters or the fonts of the other terminal.
- List of fixed phrases ➡P535

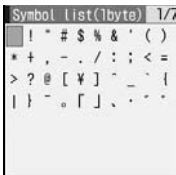
Entering symbols and pictograms

Symbols and pictograms can be entered from lists.

- Only supported characters are listed.
- The part of pictogram can be converted by entering “ えもじ ”. ➡P540

Example Entering symbols

1 Press on the character entry screen.



- Press  to enter pictograms.
- You can also display the symbol list by pressing   and the pictogram list by pressing  .
- There are multiple symbol list, and pictogram list pages. Press  or  to switch the page of lists.

2 Select a symbol.

The symbol is entered.

- When the left element [(] in the following brackets is selected, the right element [)] is also automatically selected.

() [] {} 「」 () [] { } < >
《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】

- If  is pressed on the symbol list or the pictogram list, the continuous input area appears and symbols or a pictograms can be selected continuously. For symbols, up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte character can be entered continuously. Up to 10 pictograms can be entered continuously. Press  to enter the selected symbols or pictograms at the same time. Note that selecting the left element of the above brackets in the continuous input area does not lead inputting the right element.

INFORMATION

- Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 (➡P538) used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter by quoting phonebook data, user information, the result of calculation with the calculator or string information of the data scanned with the barcode reader.

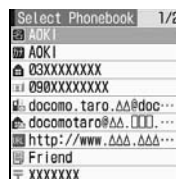
- On character entry screen, which cannot be quoted, operation cannot be made, since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data entry

- Make a switch from the character entry screen to full-screen entry (➡P512).
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Select phonebook data to quote.



3 Select the entry to quote.

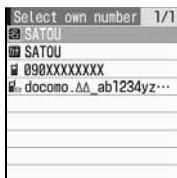
The quoted entry is entered.

Quoting Own Number entry

- The Own Number is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Enter the terminal security code.



3 Select the Own Number Information to quote.

The quoted entry is entered.

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- The result of calculation can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Make calculation.

3 Press .

The result is entered.

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data read by Bar Code Reader can be quoted only on the character entry screen of URL entry and while on the i-mode.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

Camera switches to Macro Mode.

2 Scan JAN code or QR code.

3 Press .

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Save Phrase

Registering fixed phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in "My phrase".

- Up to 50 words can be saved.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select "<New phrase>".

The fixed phrase registration screen is displayed.

- To check the fixed phrase already registered, select it.
- To check the fixed phrase already registered, place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press . You can edit it by pressing .

3 Press and enter fixed phrases.

- You can enter up to 64 two-byte or 128 one-byte characters.

4 Press .

The fixed phrase is registered.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes" to replace or "No" to cancel the operation.

Deleting fixed phrases

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at a fixed phrase to delete and press .

3 Select "Yes".

Registering during character entry

Entered characters are selected and registered as a fixed phrase.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press .

- To select the whole sentence, press and . Go to Step 4.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press .

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning, press and .
- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end, press and .

4 Press .

INFORMATION

- A character string selected above that contains blank spaces is processed as follows (When operating from the character entry screen for message text, the blank spaces are valid):
 - Blank spaces only
: Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
 - Blank spaces before and after a character string
: Only character string is valid
 - Blank spaces between characters
: Blank spaces are also valid
- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also register by pressing .
- When there is no character entered, press to display the fixed phrase edit screen.
- When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of fixed phrase registration screen is displayed. To register a new phrase, you must either delete the data from a list or edit a registered phrase.

Copy Character

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned OFF and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be stored. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

- 1 Press** **on the character entry screen.**
 - Press to cut the characters.
- 2 Place the cursor at the start point and press** .

- To select the whole sentence, press and .

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press



The characters in the selected range is copied.

- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning, press and .
- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end, press and .

INFORMATION

- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing and selecting "Copy"/"Cut".

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, excessive characters are ignored.

1 Place the cursor at the place to paste and press on the character entry screen.

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

INFORMATION

- When operating from the entry screen for message, press and select "Paste".
- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

KUTEN Code Input

Entering characters using codes

Characters, numbers and symbols on the code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering "携" (code number 2340)

- 1 Press** **on the character entry screen.**

2 Enter the 4-digit code (2 3 4 in this case).

“携” is entered.

- The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
- Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

INFORMATION

- Code input list P541

Save Word

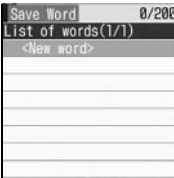
Registering frequently used words

Storing frequently used words makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1 Press [Menu] [8] [9] [1] on the stand-by display.

2 Select “<New word>”.



- To edit the registered word, select a word to edit.
- Place the cursor at a word and press [] to check a registered word. You can edit it by pressing [].

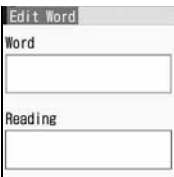
Deleting words

- ① Place the cursor at a word to delete from the list and press [Menu].
- ② Select “Delete”.

The selected word is deleted.

- Select “Delete all” to delete all registered words.

3 Select the Word field, enter the word to register.



- You can enter up to 12 two-byte or 24 one-byte characters.
- The following character types can be registered:
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - Two-byte/one-byte katakana
 - Two-byte/one-byte alphabet
 - Two-byte/one-byte numeric
 - Two-byte/one-byte symbol
 - Pictogram

4 Select the Reading field and enter the reading.

- You can enter up to 16 two-byte characters.
- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press [].

The word is registered.

Editing registered words

- Select “Overwrite” to replace the original word.
- Select “New” to register the edited word as a new word. The original word is left intact.

INFORMATION

- Only words with a reading can be registered.
 - Readings that contain characters other than long vowels, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted after saved.
 - It cannot register, when the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading.
 - Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words.
 - Words that are registered using Save Word (user dictionary data) are deleted when “Reset” or “Delete All Data” is executed.
- P458, P459

Registering during character entry

You can select characters and register them as a word.

1 Press [Menu] [5] on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press [].

- To select the whole sentence, press [Menu] and []. Go to Step 4.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press



The characters in the selected range is displayed on Word field.



- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the beginning, press and .
- To select the part of the sentence from the start point to the end, press and .

4 Enter the reading and press .

INFORMATION

- Readings that contain characters other than long vowels, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.
- When operating from the entry screen for message, you can also register by pressing .
- When there is no character entered, press to display the word edit screen.
- When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this screen or edit a registered word.

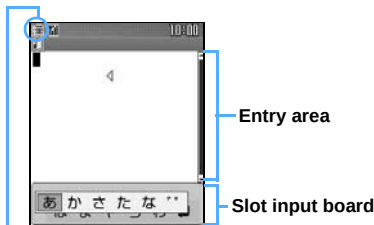
Slot Input Method

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

In the Slot Input Method, you use to select characters displayed in slot input boards.

- The Slot Input Method must be set up before using Slot Input Method.
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in the Slot Input Method.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press . Press again to return to the slot input board.

In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press twice to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



The input mode is displayed.

Example Entering “鈴木” in the phonebook

1 Select Enter name field and press .

The name entry screen is displayed.



2 Enter “すずき”.



“す”→Press twice, press twice and press .

“ず”→Press , press three times and press .

“き”→Press four times, press once and press .

- Press to replace the upper or lower slot of the input bar with each other.
- Press to set the characters and switch to the katakana mode (one-byte).

3 Press .

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in the 5-touch Input Method.

- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion, press  or .
- Press  to set the characters as hiragana. The slot input board becomes active at the same time as set. Go to Step 5.

4 Press .

- The character is set.
- New characters can be added.

5 Press and .

Character entry is exited.

INFORMATION

- List of characters assigned to input bar ➡P535
- Character entry screen submenu ➡P512

Input Method Setting

Setting input method

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Input method

- : Specifies "5-touch" or "slot input" method.
- When "Slot" is set, "Input prediction" and "Auto cursor" are disabled.

Input prediction

- : Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor

- : Sets the time period before the cursor to move to the right automatically.
- Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor.
 - Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
 - Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in about 1 second.
 - Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

3 Press .

The current setting is registered.

Changing settings during character entry

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Press to .

- To switch between "Use 5-touch" and "Use Slot input", press .
- To switch between "Prediction ON" and "Prediction OFF", press .
- To specify the time period before the cursor automatically moves, press  and set the time by pressing  to .
- When the "Use Slot input" input method is set, input prediction and Automatic cursor cannot be selected.
- The setting cannot be changed during in-line entry (procedure for direct insertion of text by placing the cursor at the entry field).
- Changing settings for input method cannot be performed on the mail text entry screen. However, before the character is set, the setting for input method can be changed.

Appendix

Menu list	524
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch input method)	534
List of characters assigned to input bar (Slot input method)	535
List of fixed phrases	535
List of pictograph and symbol	538
List of entries and conversion of special symbols	539
List of pictograph entries and conversion	540
Code input list	541
Combination of functions during Multiaccess	545
Combination of functions during Multitask	547
Services available for FOMA terminal	549
Options and related devices	550
About the data link software	550
Data interchange between FOMA terminal and external device	551
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	553
Example of Error messages	[Error Message] 556
Warranty and After-Sales Service	562
Update Software	[Software Update] 564
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	[Virus Scan Function] 570

Menu list

The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu settings P31).

*1: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by resetting. P458

*2: Message R and Message F can be set individually.

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
1 Mail			
1 Inbox	Menu / 	_____	P278
2 Compose message	Menu / / Hold down for over a second	_____	P249
3 Chat mail	Menu / 	_____	P303
4 Unsent messages	Menu / 	_____	P278
5 Outbox	Menu / 	_____	P278
6 Check new message			
1 mode message	Menu / / 	_____	P270
2 SMS	Menu / 	_____	P314
3 Receive option	Menu / 	_____	P269
4 Message retrieval	Menu / 	all selected	P296
7 SMS			
1 Compose SMS	Menu / 	_____	P310
2 Received SMS	Menu / 	_____	P316
3 Sent SMS	Menu / 	_____	P316
4 SMS settings	Menu / 	Font type: Japanese* ¹ Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days* ¹ SMSC: DoCoMo* ¹ Address: 81903101652* ¹ Type of Number: international* ¹	P314
8 Read templates	Menu / 	_____	P263

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
1 Mail			
9 Mail setting			
1 Incoming message	Menu 1 9 1 / Ⓜ 9 1	Select mail ring tone: Melody/ ハート-1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Pattern8 Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P302
2 Incoming chat mail	Menu 1 9 2 / Ⓜ 9 2	Incoming setting: Same:Msg setting	P309
3 Sort criteria	Menu 1 9 3 / Ⓜ 9 3	got mail criteria: ON* ¹ sent mail criteria: ON* ¹	P293
4 Signature	Menu 1 9 4 / Ⓜ 9 4	Auto insert: Yes	P296
5 Reply format	Menu 1 9 5 / Ⓜ 9 5	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P298
6 Receive option	Menu 1 9 6 / Ⓜ 9 6	OFF	P297
7 Incoming msg attach	Menu 1 9 7 / Ⓜ 9 7	Image: Receive Melody: Receive	P299
8 Mail group	Menu 1 9 8 / Ⓜ 9 8	_____	P297
9 Display settings			
1 Message list	Menu 1 9 9 1 / Ⓜ 9 9 1	Display 2 rows	P299
2 Message attachment	Menu 1 9 9 2 / Ⓜ 9 9 2	Auto play	P300
3 Display priority	Menu 1 9 9 3 / Ⓜ 9 9 3	Show message	P302
2 mode			
1 Menu	Menu 2 1 / Ⓜ 1	_____	P204
2 Bookmark	Menu 2 2 / Ⓜ 2	_____	P214
3 Go to location			
1 Enter URL	Menu 2 3 1 / Ⓜ 3 1	_____	P212
2 URL history	Menu 2 3 2 / Ⓜ 3 2	_____	P212
4 Screen memo	Menu 2 4 / Ⓜ 4	_____	P218
5 Last visited URL	Menu 2 5 / Ⓜ 5	_____	P206
6 mode message	Menu 2 6 / Ⓜ 6	_____	P270

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
2 mode			
7 Message R&F			
1 Message Request	Menu / 	_____	P233
2 Message Free	Menu / 	_____	P233
3 Message settings			
1 Auto display	Menu / 	MessageR preferred	P232
2 Message retrieval	Menu / 	all selected	P296
3 Message attachment	Menu / 	Auto play	P300
4 Incoming msg. alert	Menu *2 / 	Select ring alert: Melody/ ハート1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Pattern8 Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P232
8 mode setting			
1 mode shortcuts	Menu / 	Not recorded*1	P215
2 Connection timeout	Menu / 	60 seconds	P227
3 Host selection	Menu / 	mode (FOMA Card)	P227
4 Set certificate	Menu / 	CA Certificate 1 to 9 and DoCoMo Cert1 checked	P237
5 Certificate download	Menu / 	_____	P238
6 Certificate host	Menu / 	HOST: DoCoMo	P240
9 Display settings			
1 Image/Effect	Menu / 	Image: Display Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON	P228
2 Display color	Menu / 	Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default	P229
3 motion settings	Menu / 	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P349
3 alpha ppli			
1 Software list	Menu / Hold down for over a second	_____	P324

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
3 α ppli			
2 α ppli settings			
1 Software sort	Menu	By download time	P342
2 Auto start	Menu	ON	P335
3 Software info display	Menu	OFF	P324
4 Light settings	Menu	Use phone setting	P327
5 Vibrate settings	Menu	ON	P328
6 α ppli shortcut	Menu	Not recorded*1	P324
3 Display history			
1 Start failure hist.	Menu	_____	P336
2 Abnormal exit hist.	Menu	_____	P338
3 Security error hist.	Menu	_____	P326
4 Phonebook & Logs			
1 Phonebook	Menu /	_____	P110
2 Phonebook new entry	Menu	_____	P104
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	Menu	_____	P108
4 Received calls	Menu /	_____	P65
5 Redial	Menu /	_____	P53
6 Ans. machine/ Voice memo			
1 Answer machine	Menu /	Deactivate*1 Set response time: 8 sec*1 Set greeting: Preinstalled*1	P76, P77, P78
2 Recorded messages	Menu /	_____	P79
3 Record voice memo	Menu /	_____	P448
4 Voice memos	Menu /	_____	P449
7 Own number	Menu /	_____	P48, P446
5 Data Box			
1 Image	Menu /	_____	P352
2 motion	Menu /	_____	P366
3 Melody	Menu /	_____	P384
4 Chara-den	Menu /	_____	P376
6 Tools			
1 Camera	Menu / Hold down for over a second	_____	P179
2 Movie camera	Menu / Hold down for over a second	_____	P184
3 Sound recorder	Menu	_____	P414
4 Bar code reader	Menu	_____	P194

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
6 Tools			
5 Data exchange			
1 Send all Ir data	Menu 6. 5. 1	—————	P409
2 Receive Ir data	Menu 6. 5. 2	—————	P410
3 Data exchange settings	Menu 6. 5. 3	End alert: OFF* ¹ Auto Authentication: OFF* ¹ Ph.book image sending: ON* ¹	P413
4 USB mode settings	Menu 6. 5. 4	Communication mode* ¹	P479
6 miniSD card	Menu 6. 6	—————	P395
7 Stationery			
1 Scheduler	Menu 7. 1 / Hold down [] for over a second	—————	P430
2 Notepad	Menu 7. 2	—————	P452
3 Alarm clock	Menu 7. 3	not set* ¹	P428
4 Calculator	Menu 7. 4	—————	P451
8 Settings			
1 Sounds/Vibrate			
1 Set sound	Menu 8. 1	Phone, Mail: Melody/ ハートン1(Pattern 1), Chat mail: Sync msg alert Message Request, Message Free: Melody/ハートン1(Pattern 1) On-hold tone: On-hold tone (Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice) Video-phone: Melody/ 電話・ メロディA(Phone melody A) Open slide: Melody/ スライド・オープン音1(Slide opening sound 1) Close slide: Melody/ スライド・クロス音1(Slide closing sound 1)	P128
2 Ring volume			
1 Ring alert volume	Menu 8. 2. 1	Level4	P68
2 Msg. alert volume	Menu 8. 2. 2	Level4	P68
3 Volume	Menu 8. 3	Level4	P67
4 Keypad sound	Menu 8. 4	Keypad sound 1	P132
5 Low battery alert	Menu 8. 5	ON	P45
6 Silent mode	Menu 8. 6	General	P134
7 Vibrator	Menu 8. 7	all OFF	P131
8 Ring alert delay	Menu 8. 8	OFF	P169
9 Charge alert	Menu 8. 9	ON	P132

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
2 Display			
1 Stand-by		街角(Street corner)	P135
2 Mail/Call image			
1 Call image		Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image	P142
2 Outgoing msg. image		Standard image	P143
3 Incoming msg. image		Standard image	P143
4 Retrieving image		Standard image	P143
5 Receive display		Phone number: Display Name: Standard	P144
3 Color scheme		DiamondBlue	P145
4 Battery icon		→ →	P146
5 Display light		Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P144
6 Illumination		Indicator light: OFF Talking: OFF Video-phone rcv call, Incoming call: Pattern4 Mail receipt, Message R receipt, Message F receipt, Chat mail receipt: Pattern8 Alarm clock, Schedule: Pattern11 Play melody: Sync melody Open slide: Pattern14 Close slide: Pattern15	P147
7 Font		Standard	P148
8 Select language		use UIM settings* ¹	P46
3 Security			
1 Lock			
1 All lock		not set	P158
2 PIM lock		OFF* ¹	P160
3 Remote lock		Remote lock: OFF Monitoring period: 3 minutes Received calls: 5 Sender1 to 3: Not recorded	P164
2 Secret mode		not set	P166
3 Keypad dial lock		OFF	P161
4 UIM			
1 Change PIN code		0000* ¹	P155
2 Change PIN2 code		0000* ¹	P155
3 PIN code ON/OFF		OFF* ¹	P154
5 Change security code		0000* ¹	P153

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
3 Security			
6 Privacy mode	Menu 8 3 3 6	Phonebook & Logs: Show all* ¹ Mail: Show all* ¹ My picture: Show all* ¹ motion: Show all* ¹ Schedule: Show all* ¹ appli: Show all* ¹ Auto start: OFF* ¹	P161
7 Scanning function			
1 Update definition	Menu 8 3 7 1	_____	P571
2 Scanning settings	Menu 8 3 7 2	ON	P570
3 Scan version	Menu 8 3 7 3	_____	P572
4 Info/Reset			
1 Call duration	Menu 8 4 1	_____	P450
2 Confirm	Menu 8 4 2	_____	P457
3 Battery level	Menu 8 4 3	_____	P44
4 Call cost	Menu 8 4 4	_____	P450
5 Reset	Menu 8 4 5	_____	P458
6 Delete all data	Menu 8 4 6	_____	P459
5 Clock			
1 Date & time	Menu 8 5 1	*1	P46
2 Auto power ON	Menu 8 5 2	OFF	P427
3 Auto power OFF	Menu 8 5 3	OFF	P427
4 Clock display format	Menu 8 5 4	Clock size: Large Time format: 24 hour Clock design: Type1 Clock layout: Up Day: Terminal settings	P149
5 Alarm auto power ON	Menu 8 5 5	OFF	P430
6 Call/Answer			
1 Incoming & outgoing	Menu 8 6 1	Ring alert: Melody/ ハート1(Pattern 1) Show portrait: ON Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Pattern4	P69
2 Anonymous caller	Menu 8 6 2	all Disable settings	P168
3 Headset switch	Menu 8 6 3	Headset + speaker	P456
4 Auto answer	Menu 8 6 4	OFF	P455
5 Reject/Accept call	Menu 8 6 5	Cancel settings	P166
6 Memory reject call	Menu 8 6 6	OFF	P170
7 Status message	Menu 8 6 7	Standard	P72
8 Any key answer	Menu 8 6 8	ON	P63
9 Priority comm mode	Menu 8 6 9	No Set Up	P70

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
8 Settings			
7 Call			
1 Noise reduction	Menu   	ON	P60
2 Reconnect alarm	Menu   	High alarm	P59
3 On-hold tone	Menu   	On-hold tone (Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice)	P73
4 Quality alarm	Menu   	High alarm	P133
5 Prefix dialing	Menu   	009130010	P58
6 Auto assist setting	Menu   	Auto	P57
7 Sub address	Menu   	ON	P59
8 Close settings	Menu   	Continue	P64
9 Open answer	Menu   	OFF	P64
8 Video-phone			
1 Incoming & outgoing	Menu   	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・ メロディ A (Phone melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Pattern4	P99
2 Operation	Menu   	Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size: Large Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)	P98
3 Image	Menu   	Substitutive image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image: Standard image Response hold image: Standard image On-hold image: Standard image	P92
4 External device	Menu   	Terminal* ¹	P100
9 Others			
1 Save word	Menu   	—————	P520
2 Save phrase	Menu   	—————	P518
3 Text input method	Menu   	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P522
4 Self mode	Menu    / Hold down  for over a second	OFF	P159
5 NW search method	Menu   	Auto select NW* ¹	P457
6 Software Update	Menu   	—————	P564
7 Edit by slide	Menu   	all ON	P426

Menu item	Shortcut	Default	Page
9 NW Services			
1 Voice mail			
1 Activate Voice mail	Menu 9. 9. 1. 1.	_____	P463
2 Set ringing time	Menu 9. 9. 1. 2.	_____	P463
3 Deactivate Voice mail	Menu 9. 9. 1. 3.	_____	P463
4 Voice mail Status Request	Menu 9. 9. 1. 4.	_____	P463
5 Play messages	Menu 9. 9. 1. 5.	_____	P464
6 Voice mail settings	Menu 9. 9. 1. 6.	_____	P464
7 Check messages	Menu 9. 9. 1. 7.	_____	P464
8 Notification	Menu 9. 9. 1. 8.	Voicemail alert: ON Notification melody: ハート音1 (Pattern 1)	P464
9 Notify missed call			
1 Activate Missed Call Notification	Menu 9. 9. 1. 9. 1.	_____	P465
2 Deactivate Missed Call Notification	Menu 9. 9. 1. 9. 2.	_____	P465
3 Missed Call Notification Status Request	Menu 9. 9. 1. 9. 3.	_____	P465
2 Call waiting			
1 Activate Call Waiting	Menu 9. 9. 2. 1.	_____	P465
2 Deactive Call Waiting	Menu 9. 9. 2. 2.	_____	P465
3 Call Waiting Status Request	Menu 9. 9. 2. 3.	_____	P466
3 Call forwarding			
1 Activate Call Forwarding	Menu 9. 9. 3. 1.	_____	P467
2 Deactivate Call Forwarding	Menu 9. 9. 3. 2.	_____	P468
3 Register The Forwarding Number	Menu 9. 9. 3. 3.	_____	P468
4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy	Menu 9. 9. 3. 4.	_____	P468
5 Call Forwarding Status Request	Menu 9. 9. 3. 5.	_____	P468
4 Nuisance call barring			
1 Register Nuisance Caller	Menu 9. 9. 4. 1.	_____	P468
2 Delete all entries	Menu 9. 9. 4. 2.	_____	P469
3 Delete Most Recent Entry	Menu 9. 9. 4. 3.	_____	P469
5 Caller ID notification			
1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification	Menu 9. 9. 5. 1.	_____	P47
2 Caller ID Notification Status Request	Menu 9. 9. 5. 2.	_____	P47

Menu item		Shortcut	Default	Page
9 NW Services				
6 Caller ID request				
1 Activate Call ID Request	Menu 9 9 6 1			P469
2 Deactivate Caller ID Request	Menu 9 9 6 2			P469
3 Caller ID Request Status Request	Menu 9 9 6 3			P469
7 Set arrival act				
1 Activate Arrival Act	Menu 9 9 7 1			P472
2 Deactivate Arrival Act	Menu 9 9 7 2			P472
3 Arrival Act Status Request	Menu 9 9 7 3			P472
8 Arrival call act	Menu 9 9 8	Answer*1		P472
9 Others				
1 Register USSD	Menu 9 9 9 1			P473
2 Record reply message	Menu 9 9 9 2			P474
3 Remote control				
1 Activate Remote Control	Menu 9 9 9 3 1			P473
2 Deactivate Remote Control	Menu 9 9 9 3 2			P473
3 Remote Control Status Request	Menu 9 9 9 3 3			P473
4 English guidance				
1 Guidance Setting	Menu 9 9 9 4 1			P470
2 Guidance Status Request	Menu 9 9 9 4 2			P471
5 Dual network				
1 Dual Network Switching	Menu 9 9 9 5 1			P470
2 Dual Network Status Request	Menu 9 9 9 5 2			P470
6 Service Dialing Number				
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	Menu 9 9 9 6 1			P471
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	Menu 9 9 9 6 2			P471
7 Multi number				P473
8 Call barring		Unavailable on this terminal.		
0 Own number		Menu 0 0 / Menu 4 7		P48, P446

INFORMATION

- Two-byte and one-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those above.

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch input method)

In 5-touch input method, characters are assigned to the dial keys as shown in the table below:
In the kana, alphabet and numeric modes, one-byte or two-byte characters are entered according to the selected input mode.

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)* ¹	Kana mode (two-byte or one-byte)	Alphabet mode (two-byte or one-byte)	Numeric mode (two-byte or one-byte)* ³
	あ い う え お 1	アイウエオ 1	. / @ ~* ² - : _ [¥] ^ ` { } 1	1
	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
	わ を ん ー、。・ ? ! 「 」 □ 0	ワ ラ ン ー、。・ ? ! 「 」 □ 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? □ 0	0 +* ⁴
	* °	* °	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P* ⁴
	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed # T* ⁴
	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	
	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	

□: Indicates blank space.

■: Press  (A/a) after entering a character to toggle between upper and lower case.

*¹ Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*² This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

³ In numeric mode, “”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “+” can only be entered in an entry field that supports them.

*⁴ Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*⁵ Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of characters assigned to input bar (Slot input method)

Input bar		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)	Input bar		Katakana (one-byte)
Upper slot	あ	あいうえお あいうえお 1	Upper slot	ア	アイウエオアイウエオ 1
	か	かきくけこ 2		カ	カキクケコ 2
	さ	さしすせそ 3		サ	サシスセソ 3
	た	たちつてとっ 4		タ	タチツテトッ 4
	な	なにぬねの 5		ナ	ナニヌネノ 5
Lower slot	ハ	はひふへほ 6	Lower slot	ハ	ハヒフヘホ 6
	マ	まみむめも 7		マ	マミムメモ 7
	ヤ	やゆよ やゆよ 8		ヤ	ヤユヨ ヤユヨ 8
	ラ	らりるれろ 9		ラ	ラリルレロ 9
	ワ	わをんー、。?!「」 two-byte space 0		ワ	ワヲソー、。?!「」 one-byte space 0
	↵	Line feed		↵	Line feed

Note1: “*” and “” are switched with every press of  in Hiragana/kanji mode.

Note2: Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

Input bar		Alphanumeric (one-byte)
Upper slot	.	. / @ ~ - : _ [¥] ^ ` { } 1
	A	A B C a b c 2
	D	D E F d e f 3
	G	G H I g h i 4
	J	J K L j k l 5
	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	M	M N O m n o 6
	P	P Q R S p q r s 7
	T	T U V t u v 8
	W	W X Y Z w x y z 9
	!	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? one-byte space 0
	↵	Line feed

List of fixed phrases

• Face mark 1 (72 items)

(^~^)	m(~~)m	(^^;)	(^^)v
(;~;)	o(^o^o	\(^0^)/	(^o^)/
d=(^o^)=b	(*~*~)	(^^ s	(^o^;)
σ(^~;	(ToT)	(^^)/^^	(ToT)/^^
(>_<)	(*_*)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(=.=)	(^~)	(^~^)
(~_~)	w(^o^w	(^3^)/~☆	(☆o☆)
(~_~)zzz	☆≡	(^▽^)	v(^o^)
(^◇^)	(^~)/	o(^~)o	(^~')b
(^~)-☆	(o~'o)/	(^~' s-☆	~(m~^~)m

\(^o^)/	(#3)	(~(I)~)	(^_^)_目
\(^▽^)/	\(*^▽^*)/	~(▽~)	^~^人(^~^
ε=└(・・)┘	(^▽^σ)^0"	(^▽@)♪♪♪	▽(◇)ノ))
ε=▽(*^▽^)/	(^_~;	(. _.)	(. _.)、
(^A^);	(^~^)	(>_<")	(。 _)
(-_-#)	(-_-)	_(. _.)_	{^□^}
(^ー)	(^ー)	(^ω^)	(. _.)?
(。 _)	o(T T)o	Σ(□□);	・・(>_<)・・

• Face mark 2 (28 items)

_.)ソオツ	(^'*)IA	(-☆)キヲ	(. _.)\^チ
(^~>了解	[壁]_)チヲ	(^~)A~	(;_~)アツイ
(-ズ)シ	(;_-)=3 フ	{{(>_<)}}サムイ	Σ(^□^);ナニ!!
(^▽^)] モシ	▽(*'-*)マタ-	(≧▽≦)/ ムム	φ(..)モモ
(. _.)ノ^°ホイ	チカ-ウ(-_-)ノノ	o(^~^)☆パンチ	d(>◇<)アウト!
__(-_-)セフ!	(>_<)(>_<)作-	\(o▽~o)ハ-イ	(^~);▽(-_-)オイ
(~)モグモグ	<(^0")> ナデコッタ!	凸、(^~)タイパン	(. _.)、▽(^~)ヨヨ

• General (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は〇〇の日です。早く帰って来てね。
〇〇まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	〇〇について知っている人は〇〇までに〇〇に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
〇〇で待ってます。	ただいま電話にすることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は〇〇、集合場所は〇〇です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
〇〇の写真送ります。	最近の〇〇の写真です。

• Play (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は〇〇です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？〇〇に〇〇。	今日〇〇に、〇〇へ行きませんか？
〇〇の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	〇〇に行かない？
〇〇のメンバー募集！詳しくは〇〇まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで〇〇へ行きましょう。〇〇までで、都合の良い日を教えてください。	
今度みんなで〇〇へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
〇〇しませんか？日時：〇〇、場所：〇〇。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	〇〇の時の写真だよ。

• Business (20 items)

本日の〇〇会議は、〇〇となりました。	本日の〇〇訪問は、〇〇となりました。
〇〇へ直行します。	〇〇へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、〇〇遅れます。	至急 TEL 下さい。
予定変更！TEL 下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！場所：〇〇、時間：〇〇
〇〇頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：〇〇銀行〇〇支店、口座番号〇〇、名義人
〇〇の件、よろしくお願い致します。	名〇〇です。
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX 確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
〇〇での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

• Response (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OK です。
NG です。	いいよ。	行きます。
了解。	ダメ！	ごめんネ・・・
スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。
反対。	賛成。	待ってました！
それは残念。	写真届きました。	

• Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。
おめでとう。	まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！
キャンセル。	いってきます。	頑張って！
ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp
.net	.com	.org
.html	http://	

• Pictograph & Words (20 items)

Pictograph & Words	Meaning	Pictograph & Words	Meaning
👋👋	ハロー！ / またね (Hello! / See you.)	👋👊	ごきげん (High spirits)
☺☺	ピース (Peace)	👋🎵	るんるん (Cheerful)
😓👉	落ち込む (Depressed)	😓👉	どうしよう (At a loss)
✖️👊	ぶんぶん (Huff)	😡✖️	怒ってるぞ (Fury)
🌀💕	メロメロ (Crazy about)	🌀👤	パニック (Panic)
😴zzz	寝ます (Sleep)	💋💋💋	チュッ！ (Kissing)
💕💕💕	ラブラブ (Love)	🏃🏃🏃	ダッシュ (Dash)
🤔👋	えっ何？ (What?)	📷📷📷	写真を撮る (Take a picture)
🍀🍀🍀	がんばれ！ (Good luck!)	👤👤👤	独りぼっち (Alone)
🎤👋🎵	カラオケ (Karaoke)	⚽⚽⚽	サッカー (Soccer)

Note: Pictograph and Words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

• My phrase (up to 50 items)

The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of pictograph and symbol

■ Symbol list

[illegible]

Note: Some of the symbols in the list may be different from the displayed ones.

■ Pictograph list

[illegible]

INFORMATION

- Pictographs may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictograph 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Appendix

Reading	Symbol
あーる	ㇵー Rr
あい	I i
あるふあ	α A
あんだーばー	—
あんど	&
いー	E e
いーた	H η
いこーる	=
いおた	I ı
いち	① I
いぶしろん	E ε
えっくす	X x
えっち	Hh
えー	A a
えい	A a
えいち	Hh
えす	S s
えぬ	N n
えふ	F f
えむ	M m
える	L l
えん	¥
おー	O o
おう	O o
おす	♂
おみくろん	O o
おめが	Ω ω
おんぐすとりーむ	♂
おんぷ	♪
かっこ	「」 【】 『』 《》 ◇ {} □ ▢ ()
かっぱ	K κ
かい	X χ
かける	×
かぶ	(株)
かぶしきがいしゃ	(株) KK
から	〜
かりー	ㇵー
がんま	γ Γ
きゅー	Q q
きゅう	⑨ IX

Reading	Symbol
きごう	“々@× ÷∴∕ ∞∈≡⊂ ≧⊃⊇⊃ ∩∠Σ\$ “”∟≥ √∞∞∞∴ ∫∫∫∫ ‰†‡√ ¶§≤≥ <≠≪∧ ∩∪∩∠ ⊥∩∇ ≡±
きろ	キロ
きろぐらむ	kg
きろめーとる	km
く	⑨ IX
くさい	Ξ ξ
ぐらむ	グラム
けー	Kk
けい	Kk
こめ	※
こめじるし	※
ころん	:
ご	⑤ V
さん	③ III
さんかく	△▲▽▼
し	④ IV
しゃーぷ	#
しょうわ	昭和
しー	c
しーしー	cc
しーた	θ Θ
しかく	□◆◇◆■
しぐま	Σ σ
しち	⑦ VII
しめ	め
じえー	J j
じえい	J j
じゅう	⑩ X
じゅういち	⑪
じゅうく	⑪

Reading	Symbol
じゅうご	⑮
じゅうさん	⑬
じゅうし	⑭
じゅうしち	⑰
じゅうに	⑫
じゅうはち	⑱
じゅうよん	⑭
じゅうろく	⑯
ジー	G g
すらっしゅ	∧
せくしょん	§
せみころん	;
せんち	センチ cm
せんちめーとる	cm
せんと	セント ¢
ぜーた	Z z
ぜっと	Z z
たいしょう	烰
たう	T t
たす	+
だい	(代)
だいひょう	(代)
だぶりゅ	Ww
だぶりゅー	Ww
ていー	T t
てん	… …、 ’ ’ “ ” 、 ァ ャ ゥ ズ
てんてん	… …
でいー	D d
でるた	Δ δ
でんわ	TEL
とん	トン
どう	々 //
どしー	°C
どる	ドル \$
なな	⑦ VII
なみ	～
なんばー	No
に	② II
にゅー	N v
にじゅう	⑳

Reading	Symbol
のま	々
はいふん	ー
はち	⑧ VIII
はてな	?
ばい	Π π
ばつ	×
ぱーせんと	% パーセント
ひく	ー
ひしがた	◇◆
びっくり	!
びー	B b
ピー	P p
ふあい	Φ φ
ふらっと	ト
ぶい	V v
ぶさい	Ψ ψ
ぶらす	+
へいせい	平成
へいほうめーとる	m ³

Reading	Symbol
へくたー	ヘクタール
べーた	β B
ページ	ページ
ほし	☆★
まいなす	ー
まる	① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ ㊤ ㊦ ㊨ ㊩ ㊪ ㊬ ㊭ ㊮ ○ 。
みゅー	M μ
みり	mm ミリ
みりぐらむ	mg
みりばー	ミリバール
みりめーとる	mm
めーとる	メートル
めいじ	明治

Reading	Symbol
めす	♀
やじるし	↑ ↓ → ← ⇄ ⇒
ゆー	U u
ゆう	(有)
ゆうげんがいしゃ	(有)
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆぶしろん	v Y
よん	④ IV
らむだ	λ Λ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ VI
わっと	ワット
わい	Y y
わる	÷

Note 1: The special symbols may look different.
 Note 2: Special symbols consist of either one-byte characters only, two-byte characters only or of both two-byte and one-byte characters.

List of pictograph entries and conversion

Enter the readings ("Entry" below) in hiragana/kanji mode and convert character. ➡P513
 • Only the following pictographs can be converted in the kanji mode. Input methods ➡P517

Entry	Conversion
えもじ	☎ 📧 📠 📡 📢 📣 📤 📥 📦 📧 📨 📩 📪 📫 📬 📭 📮 📯 📰 📱 📲 📳 📴 📵 📶 📷 📸 📹 📺 📻 📼 📽 📾 📿 📠 📡 📢 📣 📤 📥 📦 📧 📨 📩 📪 📫 📬 📭 📮 📯 📰 📱 📲 📳 📴 📵 📶 📷 📸 📹 📺 📻 📼 📽 📾 📿

Code input list

- For details on how to enter codes ➡P519
- Note that the characters in the code input list may look different.

1st to 3rd digit of the JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit of the JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit of the JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
010	0	083	0	207	0
011	1	130	1	207	1
012	2	131	2	208	2
013	3	132	3	209	3
014	4	133	4	210	4
015	5	134	5	211	5
016	6	135	6	212	6
017	7	136	7	213	7
018	8	137	8	214	8
019	9	138	9	215	9
020		139		216	
021		160		217	
022		161		218	
023		162		219	
024		163		220	
026		164		221	
027		165		222	
028		166		223	
029		167		224	
031		168		225	
032		169		226	
033		170		227	
034		171		228	
035		172		229	
036		173		230	
037		174		231	
038		175		232	
039		176		233	
040		177		234	
041		178		235	
042		179		236	
043		180		237	
044		181		238	
045		182		239	
046		183		240	
047		184		241	
048		185		242	
050		186		243	
051		187		244	
052		188		245	
053		189		246	
054		190		247	
055		191		248	
056		192		249	
057		193		250	
058		194		251	
060		195		252	
061		196		253	
062		197		254	
063		198		255	
064		199		256	
065		200		257	
070		201		258	
071		202		259	
072		203		260	
073		204		261	
074		205		262	
075		206		263	
076		207		264	
077		208		265	
078		209		266	
080		210		267	
081		211		268	
082		212		269	

Appendix

Appendix

Appendix

Combination of functions during Multiaccess

Availability of operations of processes generated or to be performed for each operation currently in progress is as shown below:

Processes that occur or are performed Current status	While voice call		Video-phone call		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	①	②	×	× *6	○	○	○ *1
During a video-phone call	×	× *6	×	× *6	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	○ *4	× *7	—	○	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	○ *4	× *7	○	○ *5	○ *5
During Short Message (SMS) reception/transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○ *5	○ *5
During 64K data communication	×	③	×	× *6	×	×	×
During packet communication	○	○	×	× *7	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	—	×	—	×	×	—
During i-appli operation	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	×	○	○
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	—	×	—	×	×	—
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Updating software	×	○	×	× *7	×	×	×
While switching to miniSD mode	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

Processes that occur or are performed	Short Message (SMS)		64K data communication		Packet communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○ *1	×	×	○	○	×	×
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○ *5	○ *5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Short Message (SMS) reception/transmission	○ *5	○ *5	○	○	○ *3	○ *3	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○ *1	×	×	×	×	×	×
During packet communication	○ *8	○ *1	×	×	×	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	—	×	—	×	—	×	×
During i-appli operation	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	—	×	—	×	×	—	×	×
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Updating software	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
While switching to miniSD mode	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

○: New data can be sent while maintaining current communications.

×: Sending, receiving and connecting are unavailable.

—: Combination of the status and the process is not possible.

①: Subscribers to Call Waiting can make a call to another party during a call.

②: Subscribers to Call Waiting can receive a call from another party during a call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

③: Voice call (Receive) and 64K data communication cannot be used simultaneously. If you subscribe to Call Waiting, you can select either exiting current communication to answer the phone or rejecting the call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

*1 The ring tone does not sound.

*2 Melody of i-appli is stopped. When i-appli is using i-mode communication, the followings occur:

- i-mode communication is disconnected when a video-phone call is made.
- Incoming video-phone calls are rejected.

*3 Reception and sending cannot be performed while Short Messages (SMS) are sent.

*4 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.

*5 Sending or receiving by both operations cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.

*6 When the Call Waiting is subscribed, the call is stored as missed call in the received call list. However, in case a call of video-phone or data communication is received during updating the software, it will be registered as missed calls regardless of the contract of Call Waiting.

*7 It will be registered as missed calls regardless of the contract of Call Waiting.

*8 You can create and send Short Messages (SMS) from the Phonebook while talking on the incoming voice call.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in the New Task menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

○ : selection possible × : cannot be selected

New start menu item	Dial	1 Mail											2 i mode											
		1 Inbox	2 Compose message	3 Chat Mail	4 Unsent messages	5 Outbox	6 Check new message			7 SMS			8 Read templates	1 iMenu	2 Bookmark	3 go to location		4 Screen Memo	5 Last visited URL	6 Message retrieval	7 Message R&F			
							1 i-mode message	2 SMS	3 Receive option	1 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS (UIM)	3 Sent SMS (UIM)				1 Enter URL	2 URL history				1 Message Request	2 Message Free		
Executing functions																								
Phone/Dial input	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	
64K data comm.	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Outbox/ Unsent messages/Inbox	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Compose message/SMS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Chat mail	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
Read templates	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Message Request/ Message Free	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×		
Check new message (Mail)	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
Check new message (SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
iMenu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×		
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Screen Memo/ Last visited URL	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○		
Software list	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○		
i-motion/Melody/ Image/Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Camera/Video camera/ Sound recorder	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Phonebook/Notepad/ Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Received calls/Redial	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
i appli/i appli download	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○		
Received i-mode Mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
Received SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
PPP data comm.	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×		
bar code reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Record message/ Voice memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
miniSD memory card	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×		
Video-phone by external device	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	○		
Not inserted UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	○	○		
PUK is blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	○	○		
Self mode is set	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	○	○		
In PIM lock ON	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×		
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
In Keypad dial lock ON	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		

New start menu item	3 i appli	4 Phonebook & Logs						5 Data Box				6 Tools				7 Stationery			0 Own number	
		1 Phonebook	2 Received calls	3 Redial	4 Answer machine/ Voice memo		5 Own number	1 Image	2 i-motion	3 Melody	4 Chara-den	1 Camera	2 Movie	3 Sound recorder	4 bar code reader	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad	3 Calculator		
					1 Recorded messages	2 Voice memo														3 Voice memos
Executing functions																				
Phone	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	
Dial input	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Video-phone	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○	
64K data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	
Outbox/ Unsent messages/Inbox	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Compose message/ Compose SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Chat mail	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Read templates	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Message Request/ Message Free	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Check new message (Mail)/(SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
iMenu	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Screen Memo/ Last visited URL	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Software list	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
i-motion	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Image	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Video camera/ Sound recorder	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Phonebook	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	
Received calls/Redial	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	
i appli/i appli download	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Received i-mode Mail/ SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
PPP data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
bar code reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Record message/ Voice memo	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
miniSD memory card	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Video-phone by external device	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	
Not inserted UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
PUK is blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Self mode is set/ In Keypad dial lock ON	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
In PIM lock ON	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	

Services available for FOMA terminal

The following services are available

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of December 2004)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of December 2004)
- Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- Customers who use "Call Forwarding" and "Voice Warp" from a general subscriber phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy due to a setting, is outside the service area or the phone is turned OFF.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to a FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional devices supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D03
- Desktop holder D03
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- In-car holder D02
- Stereo earphone set with flat switch P01
- Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*/P002*
- Earphone terminal P001*
- Rear cover D03
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with a switch P01/P02
- Earphone jack converter adapter P001
- Stereo earphone set with switch P001*
- FOMA USB cable

* The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can download the FOMA D series data link software from the attached CD-ROM or the following web sites:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d901i/>

- For details on installation of data link software, see “README_DL.TXT” of “DataLink” folder in the attached CD-ROM.
- For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the indicated web site or refer to the data link software help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for data transfers.
- Downloaded information to the FOMA terminal cannot be forwarded outside by copyright laws even using the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminals.

Supported OS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition

Note: PC/AT compatible in which the above OS are operating

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws

Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.

- Liability

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and faulty operation and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific customers purposes.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

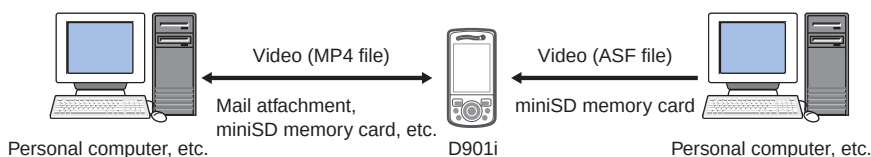
Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center: 03-5319-3762

Business hours: weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (Closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year's holidays and company holidays)

Note: To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Data interchange between FOMA terminal and external device

This section describes video data interchange between FOMA terminals and external devices.



Playing video including sound data created with external device on FOMA terminal

You can play videos (MP4 and ASF files) created with external devices such as a PC on FOMA terminals by storing in miniSD memory cards.

- Playing video in the miniSD memory card ◀P395
- Playable MP4 files ◀P177
- The specifications of playable ASF files are as follows:

File format	SD-Video (ASF)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: G.726

Note: Some ASF files may not be playable.

- To play a video stored in a miniSD memory card, you need to save the video data to fixed folders and update the information.
miniSD memory card folder structure ◀P388
Updating miniSD memory card information ◀P398

Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on PC

You can play videos (MP4 files) recorded with FOMA terminals on PCs by storing in miniSD memory cards or sending by data transfer via mail attachment.

- Video files supported by FOMA terminals ●P177

About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime™ Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer, Inc.

QuickTime can be downloaded from the Web page below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

If you experience any problems, first check the following before contacting our service station:

Power supply and charging

- **FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON (the terminal cannot be used).**
 - Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡P40
 - Is the battery depleted? ➡P44
 - When the mova terminal is ON in a dual network service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is ON. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".
- **FOMA terminal cannot be charged.**
 - Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡P40
 - Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
 - Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ➡P42
 - Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ➡P43
- **The multi-indicator flashes in red during charging.**
 - End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) from FOMA terminal and DC adapter. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ➡P42, P43
If the problem still persists, contact DoCoMo for Repairs listed on the back of this manual.
- **The top of the display blinks and a rapid beep alarm is heard.**
 - The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ➡P41

Phone

- **"Please wait." is displayed and does not go out.**

 - The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- **Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.**
 - Is All lock ON? ➡P158
 - Is Keypad dial lock ON? ➡P161
 - Is Remote lock ON? ➡P164
 - Have you set Self mode to ON? ➡P159

- **After dialing a number, you hear a busy tone and cannot establish your call.**
 - Have you dialed the area code? ➡P50
 - Did you hear the dial tone before dialing?
 - Is "圏外" indicated? ➡P45
- **"圏外" (outside area) is indicated on the display and you hear a busy tone.**
 - Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ➡P45
- **The ring alert does not sound.**
 - Is Ring volume set to Silent? ➡P68
 - Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept call ➡P167
 - Anonymous caller ➡P168
 - Delayed ring alert ➡P169
 - Reject/Accept call ➡P170
 - Have you set Silent mode to ON? ➡P134
 - Have you set Driving mode to ON? ➡P74
 - Have you set All lock? ➡P158
 - Have you set Self mode? ➡P159
 - Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to "0 second"? ➡P463, P467
- **An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any key answering function.**
 - Is Any Key Answer set to "OFF"? ➡P63
- **During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.**
 - Has the volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ➡P67
- **The redial/received calls are erased unexpectedly.**
 - Is Keypad dial lock set ON? ➡P161
 - Is PIM lock set ON? ➡P160
- **When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.**
 - Ring tones set in multiple functions sound as follows:
 - ① Settings of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting, Incoming & Outgoing (for phone) or Incoming & Outgoing (for video-phone)
- **When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.**
 - When video/i-motion containing sound and video is set as "Ring alert" for Incoming/Outgoing call settings, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
 - When incoming/outgoing image is set for multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Mail/Call Image, Incoming & Outgoing (for phone) or Incoming & Outgoing (for video-phone)

- When there is an incoming call, the multi indicator operates in a lighting pattern not set.
 - If a lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the multi-indicator flashes depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings of groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Illumination Settings/Incoming & Outgoing (for phone) or Incoming & Outgoing (for video-phone)

Settings and operations

- Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.
 - In case function cannot be activated because of various lock functions or UIM not inserted,  is displayed and icon cannot be selected.
- The Keypad sound is not generated.
 - Is Keypad sound set to "OFF"? ➡P132
 - Have you set Silent mode to ON? ➡P134
- A message "Insert UIM." is displayed when the FOMA terminal is powered on.
 - The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ➡P37
- "Card not recognized." appears on the display.
 - The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ➡P37
- "All locked." appears on the display.
 - All lock is set. Cancel the All lock. ➡P158
- "Remote locked." is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.
 - Remote lock is set. Cancel Remote lock. ➡P164
-  is indicated on the display.
 - The keys cannot be used because Key lock is ON. Cancel the Key lock. ➡P163
- With FOMA terminal closed, pressing keys has no effect.
 - Is Key lock is ON? ➡P163
- The date appears in English.
 - Is Select Language set to English? ➡P46
 - Is Clock Display set to "English"? ➡P149
- The display is dim.
 - Is the brightness for Display Light set to "Low"? ➡P144
- The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go ON.
 - Is Lighting method for Display Light set to "Turn light OFF"? ➡P144
- When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON at the specified time.
 - If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.

- Even if Alarm Clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified time when the power is turned OFF.
 - If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.
 - Set Alarm Auto Power ON to "ON". ➡P430
- Call cost has not been charged.
 - The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx.16,770,000 yen). You can reset to 0 yen. ➡P450

Mail and data

- Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.
 - When shooting an object nearby, use Auto Focus function or Macro mode. ➡P189
- Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.
 - Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. ➡P38
- Mail reception is announced by other than the set ring tone.
 - When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring tone sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting
 - When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
 - Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the mail ring alert been set?
- Names or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the Phonebook.
 - The number or mail address of the other party does not match that in registered in the Phonebook. Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the Phonebook. ➡P103
- When mail is received, the multi-indicator blinks in other lighting pattern than those set for incoming mail.
 - When the incoming mail lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the multi-indicator blinks depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Illumination Setting
 - When multiple mails are received at the same time, the multi-indicator blinks in the incoming mail lighting pattern depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
 - Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the incoming mail lighting pattern been set?

- The image and video is displayed as  and



- If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

- The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

- While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Example of Error messages

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “XXX” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

● Address invalid. Unable to send.(451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or the Short Message (SMS). Make sure that the address is correct.

● Attached file space is not available.

The still image or i-motion is too large. Check the size of the file to be attached. ●P260, P402

● Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication in the “basic authentication” screen.

● Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified site or internet Web page is disabled.

● Cannot execute because of other tasks.

Stop all other functions running before updating the definition file.

● Cannot save to a miniSD card. Saving to phone memory.

The downloaded Chara-den for which Rec.file restriction has already been set to “File restricted” cannot be saved to a miniSD memory card. File restriction cannot be changed after downloading. ●P382

● Card error

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check that UIM is inserted correctly. ●P37

● Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

● Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of Chat mail contains error. Select “Yes” to return to the default setting. Select “No” to quit Chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Check address.

Failed to transmit the Short Message (SMS). Make sure that the address is correct. ●P297

● Check address.

The mail address contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

● Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at “SMSC” is incorrect. Check the setting. ●P314

● Connection failed.

- Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.
- Because Caller ID Request Service is ON for outgoing video-phone, connection is unavailable. Please call back after setting to send your caller ID.

● Connection failed.(403)

Connection to the specified site or Internet Web page was rejected.

● Connection failed.(562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

● Contains bad data.

Software cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar code reader.

● Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 2 Mbytes while downloading streaming type i-motion data.

● Content length exceeds playable size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeds 500 Kbytes while downloading normal type i-motion data.

● Could not check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

● Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of the mail contains error. Select “Yes” to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

● Data exceeded maximum size. Unable to download. (452)

Reception is disabled because the site or internet Web page size is too large.

● Data or miniSD card damaged.

The miniSD memory card cannot be accessed because it has a problem. Initialize the miniSD memory card or insert a new miniSD memory card. ●P387, P397

● Data or miniSD card damaged. Saving to phone memory.

When “miniSD” has been specified as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera or Chara-den but the miniSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to “Phone”.

● Date and time not set. Unable to start.

Activating i-α ppliDX requires the date and time setting. Set the time and date correctly before start. ●P46

● Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad dial lock ON. ●P161

● Download impossible.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● **Error in image.**
Does not work correctly.

It does not operate correctly because an error occurs during playing Flash graphic on Site.

● **Error occurred. Unable to save.**

Save failed because an error occurred during saving attachment.

● **Failed to clear call cost information.**

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ◀P37

● **Failed to connect.(400)**

Cannot be connected because of the error in the site or Internet Web page. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.

● **Failed to copy.**

- When copying Selected items or All items of Data Box, all data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopyable format.

● **Failed to display version.**

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ◀P571

● **Failed to move.**

When moving Selected items or All items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

● **Failed to read call cost information.**

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ◀P37

● **Failed to receive message.**

Reception failed because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the same error occurs, wait for a while and then operate again.

● **Failed to restore.**

An attempt was made to restore data in unrestorable format.

● **Failed to save.**

Cannot be saved because the still image above 10,000 byte to be saved contains an error.

● **Failed to update.**

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

● **Failed to view message data.**

- When deleting received mail, Unsent messages or folder, the mail data to be deleted cannot be referenced. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

● **Folder is full.**

Unable to receive i-mode Mail and Message R/F because the memory space for the Inbox and Message R/F is insufficient. Please read unread i-mode Mail and Message R/F, release protection of i-mode Mail and Message R/F or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and Message R/F. ◀P233, P235, P278, P287, P288

● **Folder is full.**

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail. ◀P278, P287, P288

● **i-mode Mail service is busy. Please try again later.(555)**

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● **Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.**

Unable to receive Short Messages (SMS) because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail. ◀P278, P287, P288, P314, P318

● **Inbox is full.**

Unable to receive Short Messages (SMS) because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail. ◀P278, P287, P288, P318

● **Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The received data of Chat mail contains error. Select "Yes" to return to the default setting. Select "No" to quit Chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Infrared**
Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other party's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ◀P407

● **Infrared**
No response. Initiate data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, five or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20cm or less and select "Yes". ◀P407

● **Infrared**
Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. ◀P409

● **Infrared**
No UIM inserted, Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified software cannot be started even when i-appli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

● **Input error.(205)**

Input data for the site or Internet Web page is in error. Check the input data for errors.

● **Insufficient memory. Return to main menu?**

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. The main menu reappears.

● **Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change now?**

You tried to download streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting to "Normal type". Select "Yes" to change the i-motion type setting. Select "No" if you don't change the setting. ◀P349

● **Invalid data**

The downloaded Chara-den, Deco-mail template or still image above 10,000 byte is invalid.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

The downloaded Chara-den cannot be saved because the Chara-den is invalid.

● **Invalid data.(XXX)**

- The specified site or Internet Web page does not support i-mode.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.

● **Invalid information. Unable to play.**

A play was impossible because attached data of melodies or videos/i-motion is incorrect.

● **Invalid UIM, requested service not available.**

You tried to display/play back data downloaded from sites or Internet Web pages, attachments of a mail or Message R/F using a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored the data. Insert the same UIM when downloaded the software to use it.

● **Invalid UIM, requested software can't start.**

The software to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site,etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM when downloaded the software to use it.

● **Invalid URL**

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

● **i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error.**

i-appli standby display has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

● **Mail address not recorded.**

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. ●P297

● **Memory is full. Unable to save.**

FOMA terminal or UIM does not have enough memory space and the i-mode Mail or the Short Message (SMS) cannot be saved. Move Short Messages (SMS) to UIM or FOMA terminal or delete i-mode Mail. ●P288, P315, P317

● **Memory shortage.**

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

● **Message kept in center.**

The Short Messages (SMS) have already been sent.

● **Message rejected by recipient.**

The Short Message (SMS) is rejected by SMS center.

● **Message rejected by recipient.**

Transmitting the Short Message (SMS) is rejected.

● **miniSD card full. Saving to phone memory.**

When the miniSD memory card becomes full with "miniSD card" set as the destination in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting for the camera, the destination is automatically switched to "Phone".

● **miniSD card memory full.**

Copying/moving selected items, moving all items, back-up of data and Sync data info is not allowed because the memory in miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ●P395

● **Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.**

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

● **No content is available.(204)**

Could not find data at the specified site.

● **No miniSD card found.**

Unless a miniSD memory card is inserted to FOMA terminal, still images or videos recorded with the camera cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card or data saved in FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved to the miniSD memory card. Insert the miniSD memory card before saving or copying/moving data. ●P387

● **No requested software.**

The software specified by the site, mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

● **No response.(408)**

Unable to receive a response from a site or Internet Web page within the specified time. Retry later.

● **No UIM. Unable to start requested software.**

The software to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site,etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM when downloaded the software to use it.

● **Not exist in phonebook.**

The entered phone number is not saved in the phonebook. Add the number to the phonebook.

● **Now calling. Unable to record video.**

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

● **Number of characters exceeds limit.**

i-mode Mail with a message including more than 5,000 two-byte or 10,000 one-byte characters cannot be replied with the message quoted. Reply without quote. ●P298

● **Number of saved data reached limit in My picture/ Other images/Video/Melody/ PIM folder.**

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back up and Sync Data Info is unavailable because the number of saved item in folders of the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ●P395

● **Out of service area.**

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● **Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The send data of Chat mail contains error. Select "Yes" to return to the default setting. Select "No" to quit Chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Page is not found.(404)**

Unable to find the site or Internet Web page. Make sure that the URL is correct.

● **Password is not correct. (401)**

The user name or password entered on sites or Internet Web page is incorrect. Please try again.

● **PIM locked.**

This prohibited operation is unavailable in PIM lock ON. ◀P160

● **Please set the clock to obtain data.**

Unable to receive because the time and date are not set. Please set the time and date correctly. ◀P46

● **Please wait.**

- The circuit is overloaded. Please try again later.
- Use of i-mode is restricted. Retry later.

● **PUK blocked.**

Inquir at DoCoMo Shops.

● **Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion.**

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 2 Mbytes during downloading streaming type i-motion data.

● **Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes while downloading normal type i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

● **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**

Unable to receive all Short Messages (SMS) because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute the Check new message function for SMS again. ◀P314

● **Registration is in progress.(554)**

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

● **Remotely Controllable Services Denied**

Voice mail service or Call forwarding service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice mail service or Call forwarding service.

● **Replay period has not yet started.**

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ◀P368

● **Requested software unavailable.**

The software cannot be started because of an error in i-α ppli. Starting specified software by i-α ppli function from a site, mail or a external device is disabled if there is a problem in software information settings or start-up conditions.

● **Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?**

The term of validity of the certificate in FOMA terminal is premature or overdue. To connect, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No".

● **Root certificate is not valid.**

The certificate in FOMA terminal is "OFF". To establish a connection, change the setting. ◀P237

● **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**

Infrared communications cannot end, leaving data saved in Inbox for infrared communications. Save the data from Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ◀P412

● **Self mode activated.**

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self mode. ◀P159

● **Service is not registered.**

- Unable to run because not an i-mode subscriber. You need to apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power OFF and then turn ON.

● **Service unavailable.**

The Short Message Service (SMS) is not available.

● **Signature space is not available.**

- When i-mode Mail with a message and a signature includes more than 5,000 two-byte or 10,000 one-byte characters, the signature cannot be attached. Send by reducing the number of characters of the message or without attaching a signature.
- The signature cannot be attached when "English" is set for Font type in SMS settings. Change Font type to "Japanese". ◀P314

● **Size of this page is not supported.**

- Reception has stopped because the site or internet Web page size was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already received normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading Chara-den, Deco-mail template or a still image above 10,000 byte.

● **Software terminated due to security error.**

i-α ppli has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

● **Software updated.**

The software cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

● **Specified file not found.(492)**

The specified file couldn't be found during download of a still image above 10,000 byte.

● **SSL session cannot be established.**

Communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

● **SSL session failed.**

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

● **SSL session was terminated.**

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication. The message is displayed when you select "No" in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

● **Terminal memory full.**

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items and restoration of data is unavailable because the number of saved item in FOMA terminal is full. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

● **The client certificate has expired. Do you connect?**

The client certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No". ➡P237

● **The data cannot be saved. Download?**

This i-motion cannot be saved. Select "Yes" to download; select "No" to not download.

● **The data may not be replayed.**

i-motion or video file format not supported. They may not be played in some cases.

● **This certificate has expired. Do you connect?**

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No". ➡P237

● **This certificate has expired. Do you connect?**

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. ➡P235 Select "Yes" to connect or "No" to not connect. This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the time and date correctly. ➡P46

● **This site is not certified. Do you connect?**

The site certification is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select "Yes" to connect or "No" to not connect.

● **This software contains an error.**

Unable to import because the software data contains an error.

● **This software contains an error. Unable to download.**

Unable to import because the software data contains an error.

● **This software is not supported by this phone.**

The software cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● **This UIM cannot be recognized.**

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check UIM. ➡P37

● **Time out.**

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● **Too much data was entered.**

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of the site or Internet Web page. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

● **Transmission failed**

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or the Short Message (SMS). Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

● **Transmission failed (552)**

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or the Short Message(SMS) due to the error of i-mode Center or SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

● **Transmission failed to some addresses.(561)**

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing  displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

● **UIM full.**

UIM does not have enough storage space and Short Message (SMS) cannot be saved. Move to FOMA terminal or delete Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM. ➡P317, P318

● **UIM not inserted. Unable to use.**

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ➡P37

● **Unable to call.**

A voice/video-phone call cannot be made during voice/video-phone calls or 64K data communication.

● **Unable to display data.**

Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

● **Unable to display image.**

Unable to display because original file cannot be found for the image to be attached or the image contains error. Check the image.

● **Unable to display message.**

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

● **Unable to display this Chara-den.**

Chara-den containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

● **Unable to input anymore text.**

The number of characters exceeds the maximum limit. Reduce the number of characters.

● **Unable to move specified page.**

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading has been stopped, the linked page cannot be displayed.

● **Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.**

Cannot receive because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

● **Unable to play.**

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

● **Unable to quote all text.**

Short Message with a message including more than 70 characters (160 characters for the transmission type of English) cannot be replied with the message quoted. Reply without quote. ➡P298

● **Unable to retrieve the requested URL.(504)**

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● **Unable to save specified image.**

The image cannot be saved because the image in the Site, Screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

● **Unable to save.**

Cannot be saved because the data to be saved as a mail template contained an error.

● **Unable to shoot serially.**

You cannot shoot serially because memory and the number of items to be saved in My Picture is full. Continuous shoot is cancelled automatically.

● **Unable to use data type.**

Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

● **Unable to use this software.**

Using the software is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

● **Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited.(491)**

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 byte.

● **Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The unsent data of Chat mail contains error. Select "Yes" to return to the default setting. Select "No" to quit Chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Unsupported content.**

Code containing contents not compatible with FOMA terminal cannot be read with Bar code reader.

● **URL address changed.(301)**

The URL for site or Internet Web page was changed. Check the correct URL.

● **URL is too long to register.**

Unable to register as a Bookmark or a Screen memo because the URL is too long.

● **You have no certificate. Do you connect?**

The client certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select "Yes"; to stop, select "No".

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or modifications, etc. of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. If you have a PC (Window 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition), you can use the specified data link software to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i - a ppli (except some data) are not forwarded to new FOMA terminal by copyright laws.

After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ➡P553

If the problem still persists, contact “DoCoMo for Repairs” on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a service center designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the service center before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

■ In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact the service center listed on the back of this manual.
- For details, see “List of service stations”.

■ Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal, the UIM or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.

- In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
- If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to the FOMA terminal.
The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The ON/OFF function settings and stored data may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted during a repair or inspection. DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a FOMA terminal by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible, to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability whatsoever for changes of data, loss of data or failure to transfer data.
- If the handset becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the handset to our repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the handset.

■ Phonebook, downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility.

Update Software

This function checks for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet transmission* to update the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted in “お知らせ&ヘルプ (Notice & Help)” on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

* Packet transmission for software update is free of charge.

• Software may be updated in the following two methods:

- Immediate update : update on the spot as desired. ●P566
- Advanced update : specify the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot. ●P567

• Software cannot be updated in the following cases:

- During All lock
- During PIM lock
- When PIN1 code is being entered
- When date and time are not set
- In Self mode ON
- When 圏外 is indicated
- When the battery is not fully charged
- While using other functions
- The power is OFF
- During PIN1 code lock
- When UIM is not inserted
- While talking

• At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for updating software operated by the company). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

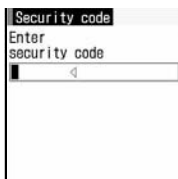
INFORMATION

- If software has already been updated, the message of “No update is needed. Please continue to use as before.” appears when checking software updating.
- Software update is available even if the Host selection setting is other than i-mode.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when “ON” is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- If “Movie ringtone” has been set for phone as a ring tone, a melody sounds for an incoming call in downloading software. If you set video/i-motion as an calling/incoming image, the first image is displayed.
- Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in Received calls.
- Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate for “Certificate Setting”. Configured as valid by default. ●P237
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, three bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
- * If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
- A displayed icon of the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.
- If Receive option is set to “ON” and e-mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of e-mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed. ●P297
- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail.

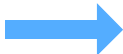
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in the FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends to back up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)
- When software update has failed, the message of “Failed to update.” appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to the service center designated by DoCoMo.

Starting Software Update

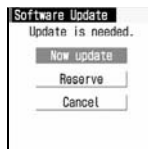
- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **9** **6** on the stand-by display.



- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press .



- 3 Confirm whether software update is required by pressing  twice.



- Pressing  on the terminal ID send screen makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ When updating is not necessary



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press  to use FOMA terminal as it is.

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure. ●P565

2 Select “Now update” and press .

Downloading is started and the multi-indicator flashes.



- To cancel downloading, press . If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.

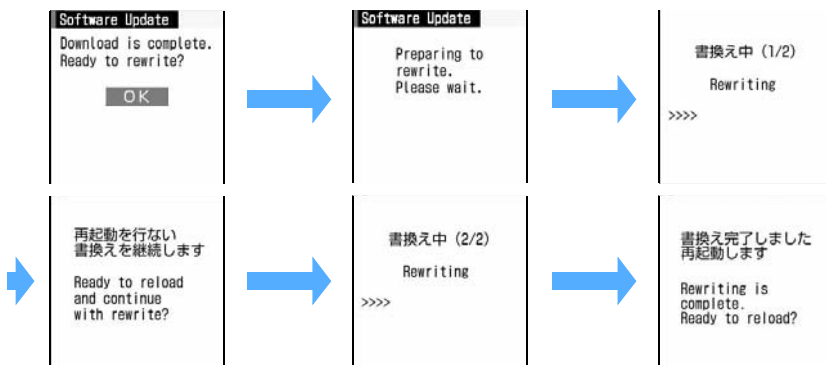
■ When the server is busy



- Select “Reserve” and reserve a date for update. ●P567

3 After completion of downloading, software is updated automatically.

As downloading completes, software updating is automatically started. During updating, the multi-indicator flashes.



- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update.

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



5 Press .

Update is completed and the stand-by display appears.

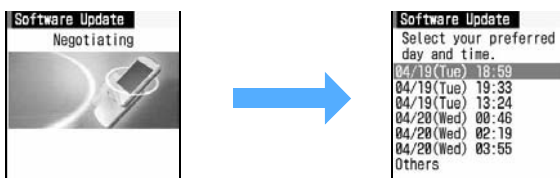
Updating software at pre-specified time [Reserved Update]

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

2 Select “Reserve”.

Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



- Available dates for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time-slot.

■ Selecting from the options displayed

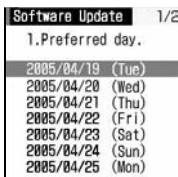
① Select preferred day and time-slot and select “Yes”.



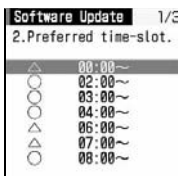
- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press  to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

■ Selecting from other than options displayed

① Select “Others”.



② Select preferred day and time-slot.



Availability for reservation at each time period will be shown:

○ : available △ : barely available

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day, press to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

③ Select preferred day and time-slot.

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, press to switch to the next or previous page respectively.
- Press to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Select preferred day and time-slot and select “Yes”.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press to switch to the next or previous page respectively.

4 Press .

Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

When the reserved time arrives, the handset automatically starts software update. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

- is shown on the stand-by display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

The day and time-slot reserved for software update can be checked.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.



3 Check the contents.

- Select “OK” to stop checking.

■ Changing reservation

① Select “Change” and press .

Option selection screen is displayed.

- The operations to follow are the same as Step 2 and following steps for reserved update.
 - ➡ P567
- Pressing  on the screen for sending the information of a mobile phone makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ Canceling reservation

① Select “Cancel” and select “Yes”.

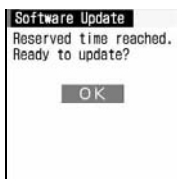
The screen for sending the information of a mobile phone is displayed.

② Press twice.

The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing  on the screen for sending the information of a mobile phone makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives



- When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown on the left is displayed and downloading is automatically started. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.
- To cancel the software update, press  and select “Yes”.

INFORMATION

- Please note that update may not be started while other functions are used even if the reserved time arrives.
- If software update is executed when “ON” is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If alarm, etc. is set for the same time, alarm, etc. take precedence and the software update may not be activated.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Update pattern definition first then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a Web site or received mail, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

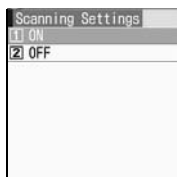
- Virus scan used for checking needs to be upgraded, because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected. ●P571
- Virus scan function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing Web pages or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for three years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than scanning.

Setting scan function [Scanning Setting]

Default ON

If virus scan function is set to ON, data or program is checked automatically when it is executed.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **3** **7** **2** on the stand-by display.



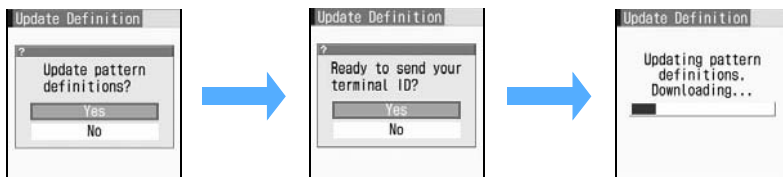
2 Press **1** and select "Yes".

- When the virus scan function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of five warning levels. ●P572

To cancel scan function

① Press **2** and select "Yes".

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **や** **YUV** **3** **お** **OFF** **7** **お** **OFF** **1** **お** **OFF** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select “Yes” twice to update the pattern definition.



- 3 Press **⏏**.

Pattern definition is updated.

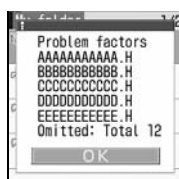
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is updated is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a video-phone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.
- The screen for notifying the time set in alarm or for a schedule alarm is displayed during updating pattern definition and the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.
- Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly. ➡P46

Displaying Scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements

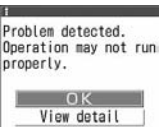
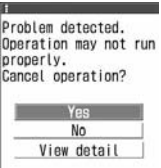
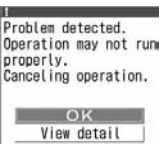


- ① Select “View detail” while a warning message is being displayed.

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When six or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the sixth and subsequent problem names are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of scan result

Warning level	Message	Handling method
Level 0		“OK” : Continues processing of the started application. “View detail” : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Level 1		“Yes” : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. “No” : Continues processing of the started application. “View detail” : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Level 2		“OK” : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. “View detail” : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Level 3		“Yes” : Deletes data that may cause troubles. “No” : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. “View detail” : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Level 4		“OK” : Deletes data that may cause troubles. “View detail” : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

- In case some problem is detected through scan in the software set as the i-α ppli stand-by display and the software is stopped to be activated, the i-α ppli stand-by display is canceled.

Checking pattern definition version [Scan Version]

1 Press      on the stand-by display.



- Press  after checking.

[illegible]

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings present.

[illegible]

[illegible]

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings present.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual



INDEX	580
Quick Reference Manual	588

INDEX

A

AC adapter	42
Add Address	251
Add to Phonebook	
Mail	291
Site	224
URL	226
Added Service (Register USSD)	473
Adjusting volume	
Ring volume	68
Volume of caller's voice	67
After-Sales Service	562
Alarm Auto Power ON	430
Alarm Clock	428
Album	
Creating	399
Deleting	399
Moving/copying data	399
Playback	401
All Lock	158
Anonymous Caller	168
Answer Machine	
Canceling	76
Deleting messages	80
Greeting Response Time	78
Greeting Setting	78
Message list	80
Playing messages	79
Quick Record Message	76
Registering to phonebook	80
Setting	76
Arrival Act Setting	472
Arrival Call Act	472
AT command	502
Disconnection reason list	507
Error messages list	507
Input format	502
Input mode	502
List	503
Result codes	509
Supplement to AT command	508
Attaching/removing battery pack	40
Attachment	
Attaching	260
Changing/removing	262
Checking title (Melody)	276
Checking title (Still image)	273
Data display	276
Deleting	277
Displaying still image	273
Incoming Msg. Attach.	299
Playing melody	276

Saving (Melody)	277
Saving (Still image)	274
Auto Answer	455
Auto Assist Setting	57
Auto Display	232
Auto Focus	181
Auto start of software	335
Auto Start	335
Auto Start Info Setting	335
Start Failure History	336
Auto Timer	189
AV Phone To	
Mail	290
Site	223

B

Bar Code Reader	194
Devided QR code	195
JAN code	194
QR code	194
Scanning code	194
Using scanned data	195
Battery	44
Battery Icon	146
Battery Level Check	44
Charging	41
Low Battery Alert	45
When battery is almost exhausted	44
Block conversion	515
Bookmark	
Deleting	215
Displaying	214
Display i-mode Shortcut	215
i-mode Shortcut	215
Moving/copying	216
Registering (Mail)	292
Registering (Site)	213
Renaming folder	214
Renaming title	214
Sort	217

C

CA certificate	237
Cache	209
Calculator	451
Calendar	430
Calendar Mode Setting	431
Day Off Setting	432
Holiday Setting	432
Call cost	
Last call cost	450
Total call cost	450
Call duration	
Last call duration	450
Total calls duration	450

Call Forwarding Service	466
Call rejection	
Deleting	469
Registering	468
Call Waiting Service	465
Caller ID Notification	47
Checking current setting	47
Custom Call	56
Setting	47
Setting (Phonebook)	121
186/184	55
Caller ID Request Service	469
Camera	
Adjustment	180
Auto Focus	181
Auto Timer	189
Brightness	190
Camera effect	190
Color density	190
Compact light	179
Composing mail with shot image	180
Continuous Mode	182
Frame	190
Image size	190
Macro Mode	189
Number of saved still images	177
One-shot Message	193
Quality	190
Resetting camera settings	193
Saving as mirror image	180
Shooting screen	176
Shutter sound	187
Size restrictions	190
Still Camera	179
Still image file details	177
Still Image Setting	186
Switching cameras	179
Switching normal/mirror	180
Switching screen modes	179
Switching shooting modes	179
White balance	190
Zoom	188
Certificate	
Certificate Host	240
Certificate Setting	237
Downloading	239
Requesting issue	238
Change i-mode Password	211
Character Encode	213
Characters entry	512
Changing input modes	513
Character assignments	534
Character entry screen	512
Copying	519
Cutting	519
Deleting	518

Face marks	516	Message Retrieval setting	296	FOMA PC configuration software	478
Fixed phrases	518	Check SMS	314	Glossary	477
Full-screen entry	512	Checking basic package	22	Packet communication	476
In-line entry	512	Checking number of items i-a ppli	342	Packet communication setting	484
Input Method Setting	522	Mail	284	Usage precautions	476
Input prediction function	516	Schedule	441	64K data communication	476
Kana/Kanji conversion	513	Checking phone numger	48	64K data communication setting	487
KUTEN Code Input	519	Close settings	64	Data interchange with external device	551
List of characters assigned to Input bar	535	Close-up mode (→ Macro Mode)		Data link software	550
Pasting	519	Code input list	541	Date and Time Setting	46
Quoting (Bar Code Reader)	518	Column Search	115	Date To function	453
Quoting (Calculator)	518	Compact light	25	Day Off Setting	432
Quoting (Own Number)	517	Movie Camera	184	DC adapter	43
Quoting (Phonebook)	517	Still Camera	179	Deco-mail (Decoration mail) Creating	253
Save Phrase	518	Video-phone call	96	Decorating characters after specifying range	258
Save Word	520	Compose SMS	310	Entering characters after specifying decoration	253
Slot Input Method	521	Confirm Mail Address	244	Example of decoration	255
Symbols/pictograms	517	Confirm Settings Functions	457	Template	259
5-touch Input Method	513	Mail Setting	244	Delivered report	248
Chara-den	376	Connecting PC to FOMA terminal Connecting using FOMA USB cable	479	Describe function	30
Actions	378	USB Mode Setting	479	Setting	31
Checking Action	377	Connection Timeout Setting	227	Desktop holder	43
Deleting	405	Copying characters	519	Dimo 絵文字♥メール (Dimo Pictogram Mail)	328
Displaying	376	Copying URL	224	Display	24
Downloading	222	Custom Menu	441	Color Scheme	145
Moving	400	Creating	442	Display Light	144
Recording	379	Editing	445	Guide row	27
Recording screen	379	Resetting	445	List screen	29
Recording videos	381	Template	441	Name display	103
Setting substitute image	88	Using menu	443	Original menu design	145
Shooting still images	379	Custom stand-by display	139	Reading	26
Sort	406	Canceling	141	Select Language	46
Still Image Setting	382	Checking	139	Stand-by Display	135
Switching action type	377	Displayed information	139	Task bar	28
Using album	399	Customize Silent Mode	134	Display Address	284
Video Setting	382	Customized Call	56	Display by Type	236
Video-phone call	88			Display Color Setting	229
View/Edit Detail Info	402			Display i-mode Shortcut	215
Charge Alert	132			Display Light	144
Charging				i-a ppli	327
AC adapter	42			Site	228
DC adapter	43			Video-phone	99
Desktop holder	43			Displaying URL	210
Charging terminals	25			DoCoMo for General Inquiries	471
Charging time	41			DoCoMo for Repairs	471
Chat Mail	303			Download	
Broadcast address	307			Certificate	239
Chat mail screen	303			Chara-den	222
Chat Mail Setting	309			Deco-mail template	259
Chat Member Setting	304			Image	220
Deleting all	307			i-a ppli	322
Editing chat members	308				
Exiting	309				
Receiving	306				
Sending	305				
Setting personal information	308				
Check i-mode Message	270				
Check Messages (Voice Mail)	464				
Check new message					
Check i-mode Message	270				
Check SMS	314				

D

Driving Mode	74
Dual Network Service	470
Checking current setting	470
Switching	470

E

Earphone/microphone jack	25
Earphone/microphone set with switch	454
Auto Answer	455
Caution when connecting	454
Connecting	25
Headset Switch	456
Making calls	454
Receiving calls	455
Earpiece	24
Easy Selector Plus	25
Edit by Slide	426
English Guidance	470
English mode	46
Entering characters (→ Characters entry)	556
Error Message	556
External connection terminal ...	25

F

Face marks	
Entering	516
List	535
Features of FOMA D901i	4
File restriction	403
FirstPass	206
User certificate	238
Fixed phrase	
Deleting	518
Registering	518
Flash function	208
Focus Mode	35
FOMA D Series Data Link Software	550
FOMA PC configuration software	482
Dialup connection (APN) setting	491
Disconnecting connection	489
Executing communication	488
Installing	483
Operating environment check	478
Packet comm. setting	484
Packet comm. setup optimization	490
Uninstalling	492
64K data comm. setting	487
FOMA terminal phonebook	104
Caller ID Setting	121

Changing the order of mail addresses	117
Changing the order of phone numbers	117
Checking phonebook entries	115
Chekng number of records	125
Column Search	115
Composing i-mode Mail	111
Composing Short Message (SMS)	111
Copying to other screens	117
Copying to the UIM	119
Customized Call	56
Deleting	120
Displaying in the order of Japanese syllabary	110
Displaying sites from URL	111
Editing	116
Group Search	112
Group Setting	109
Name display	103
Name Search	112
Number Search	114
Ph Book No. Search	114
Quick Dial	125
Ranking Search	113
Registering	104
Reject/Accept Call	166
Replacing the phonebook No.	118
Searching	110
Secrecy Search	124
Secret attribute	123
Secret Code Setting	122
Show all names	110
Video-phone Rate Setting	122
Font	148
Font Size	301
Forward Mail	272
Frames	360
Frames set	360
Shooting	190
Still image editing	360
Video-phone	90

G

G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)	332

H

Handling instructions	18
Headset Switch	456
Holiday Setting	432
Host	
Certificate Host	240
ISP Connection Communication	227
How to use this manual	1

I

International calls	57
Illumination Setting	147
Image	
Adjusting	363
Changing brightness or tone	358
Changing size	356
Clipping	357
Comment	404
Composing mail with image	353
Creating animation	354
Cutting	362
Deleting	405
Displaying	352
Display/Save Image (i-mode Mail)	273
Editing	355
Effects	359
Frames	360
Limiting file size for saving	363
Moving/copying	399
Pasting characters	362
Pasting stamps	361
Reversing/rotating	359
Save Image (Site)	220
Settings	365
Shooting	179
Sort	406
Using album	399
Using images	353
View/Edit Detail Info	402
Image & Effect Setting	228
i-mode	198
i-mode Mail	243
Adding receivers	251
Attachment	260
Check i-mode Message	270
Compose Message	249
Composing from phonebook	111
Composing from schedule	438
Copying texts	290
Creating folders	283
Deco-mail	253
Delete Attachment	277
Deleting	288
Deleting folders	284
Display Address	284
Display Priority	302
Displaying newly-received mail	268
Display/Save Image	273
Editing	265
Font Size	301
Forwarding	272
Inbox/Outbox	278
Incoming Msg. Setting	302
Inserting signature	250
Mail Group	252
Making calls	286
Moving	285

Number of characters sent/	
received	245
Number of items in folder...	284
Play/Save Melody	276
Protecting	287
Quick Mail	266
Reading folder list screen	
.....	279
Reading list/view screen	280
Receive Option	269
Receiving	267
Receiving/playing i-motion	
.....	274
Registering URL as bookmark	
.....	292
Replying	271
Saving	265
Sort Criteria.....	293
Template	262
i-mode Setting	227
Connection Timeout.....	227
Display Color	229
Image & Effect	228
ISP Connection Communication	
.....	227
i-mode Shortcut	
Bookmark.....	215
i-α ppli.....	334
i-motion	346
Deleting.....	405
Downloading	346
Editing	370
i-motion Setting	349
Moving/copying	399
Normal type	346
Playback restrictions	368
Playing (Data Box)	366
Playing/saving	346
Settings	375
Sort	406
Streaming type.....	346
Using album	399
Using i-motion	369
View/Edit Detail Info.....	402
i-motion Mail	247
Receiving/playing.....	274
Sending.....	260
Inbox.....	278
In-camera	24
In-car Handsfree	60
Incoming Msg. Alert.....	232
Incoming Msg. Attach.....	299
Incoming Msg. Setting	302
Incoming & Outgoing	69
Infrared communication	406
Data that can be received	
.....	410
Data that can be sent.....	408
Data Transfer Setting.....	413
INBOX	412
Receiving.....	410
Remote control function.....	413
Saving received data	412
Sending.....	408

Using from i-α ppli	344
Infrared data port	24
Input prediction function.....	516
Intellectual property rights.....	20
International call.....	57
Prefix.....	58
Internet Connection	
Character Encode	213
Entering URL.....	212
URL History.....	212
Using FOMA terminal	
phonebook	111
i-shot.....	246
ISP Connection Communication	
.....	227
i アニメっちゃメール DX	
(i-anime Mailer DX).....	330
i-α ppli	320
Auto Start	335
Auto Start Info Setting	335
Changing ring tone/image	
.....	327
Checking number of software in	
folder	342
Creating folder.....	339
Deleting folder	340
Deleting software	341
Downloading	322
History (Abnormal Exit)	338
History (Security Error).....	326
History (Start Failure)	336
Icon information.....	326
i-α ppli Shortcut	334
i-α ppli To	336
Light setting.....	327
Moving.....	341
Network transmission.....	326
One-touch Button	334
Pre-installed software.....	328
Protecting	340
Quitting.....	325
Software Description	326
Software Info Display	324
Software Information	343
Software Setting	326
Sorting software	342
Starting.....	324
Trace information	325
Upgrade	339
Using Bar Code Reader	344
Using Camera	344
Using infrared communication	
.....	344
Vibrator setting.....	327
Viewing phonebook/dial record	
.....	327
i-α ppli DX	320
i-α ppli stand-by Display	
Abnormal Exit History.....	338
Canceling	338
Setting	137
Starting software	337

K

Keylock switch	25
Key Lock.....	163
Keypad Dial Lock	161
Keypad Sound	132

L

Last call duration	450
Last Visited URL	206
Light setting (→ Display Light)	
Limit Mail Size.....	244
Line feed	514
List of characters assigned to input	
bar	535
List of dial keys and character	
assignments.....	534
List of entries and conversion of	
special symbols.....	539
List of fixed phrases	535
List of pictograph.....	538
List of pictograph entries and	
conversion.....	540
List of symbol	538

M

Macro Mode	
Still Camera/Movie Camera	
.....	189
Video-phone	95
Mail	242
Checking number of items in	
folder	284
Copying texts.....	290
Creating folders.....	283
Deleting	288
Deleting folders	284
Delivered report.....	248
Display Address	284
Display Type.....	300
Font Size	301
Mail List Setting	299
Making calls.....	286
Moving/copying	285
Protecting	287
Reading folder list screen...	279
Reading list/view screen.....	280
Registering in phonebook.....	291
Sort.....	285
Mail address.....	243
Changing	243
Checking	244
Resetting	244
Mail Auto Receive	267
Mail Group	252
Mail Group Setting	297
Mail List Setting.....	299
Mail menu	249
Mail Reply Format.....	298

Mail Setting (FOMA terminal)	292	Incoming Msg. Alert	232	Msgs. in Folder	284
Mail Setting (i-mode Center)	243	Protecting	235	Multiaccess	420
Mail templates	262	Reading list/view screen	234	Combination	545
Composing mail	263	Receiving	230	Multi address transmission	251
Deleting	264	Reloading images	234	Multi-indicator	25
Read Template	263	Microphone	24	Illumination Setting	147
Save Template	264	miniSD memory card	387	Multi Number	473
Mail To		Backing up	394	Multitask	423
Mail	290	Checking free space	391	Combination	547
Site	223	Composing mail with data	395	Executing	423
Mail/Call Image	142	Continuous play of video	396	Functions	423
Call Image	142	Copying/moving from FOMA terminal	392	New Task menu items	547
Outgoing & Incoming Msg.		Copying/moving to FOMA terminal	393	Screen switching menu items	425
Image	143	Data available	390	Switching functions	424
Priority	143	Deleting (Date Box)	395	My Menu	210
Receive Display	144	Deleting (PIM data)	396	Displaying sites	211
Retrieving Image	143	Detail information	395	Recording	210
Making calls from the phonebook	110	Displaying (Data Box)	395	My phone number	48
Making calls (→ Phone)		Displaying (PIM data)	396	My Picture	
Melody		Folder structure	388	Adjusting still images	364
Composing mail with melody	384	Initialize	397	Composing mail with image	353
Deleting	405	Inserting/removing	390	Creating animation	354
Downloading	222	Jumping to pages (Data Box)	395	Deleting	405
Moving	399	Jumping to pages (PIM data)	396	Displaying images	352
Playing	384	Restoring backup data	394	Editing still images	355
Settings	386	Scan Card	398	Moving/copying	399
Sort	406	Searching (Data Box)	396	Settings	365
Using album	399	Searching (PIM data)	397	Sort	406
Using melodies	385	Slot	25	Using album	399
View/Edit Detail Info	402	Updating information	398	Using images	353
Member list	439	Missed Call Notice	465	View/Edit Detail Info	402
Menu		Checking current setting	465		
Describe function	30	Deactivating	465		
Icon design	32	Missed call	66		
List	524	Movie Camera			
Menu Setting	31	Auto Timer	189		
Selecting from check box	35	Brightness	190		
Selecting from confirmation screen	34	Camera effect	190		
Selecting from List view	32	Color density	190		
Selecting from pulldown menu	34	Compact light	184		
Selecting from 3D display	32	Composing mail with recorded video	185		
Selecting functions from menu	29	Frame	190		
Selecting functions from submenu	33	Image size	190		
Shortcut operation	29	Macro Mode	189		
Message Attachment	300	Movie Camera	184		
Message i-appli	321	Quality	190		
Download	323	Recording screen	176		
Message R/F	230	Recording Setting	186		
Auto Display	232	Recording time of videos	178		
Check i-mode Message	270	Resetting camera settings	193		
Deleting	235	Shutter sound	187		
Display by Type	236	Size restrictions	190		
Display Priority	302	Switching cameras	184		
Displaying	233	Switching shooting modes	184		
Displaying newly-received message	231	Switching vertical/horizontal	184		
		Video file details	177		
		White balance	190		
		Zoom	188		

N

Names and functions of parts	24
Network Service	462
Noise Reduction	60
Notepad	452
Checking	453
Composing i-mode Mail	453
Composing notes	452
Date To function	453
Deleting	453
Notification setting (Voice Mail)	464
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	468
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal	36
NW Search Method	457

O

On hold	
On-hold while talking	51
Respond and Hold	71
One-shot Message	193
On-hold tone	73

Open Answer	64
Operations during calls	
video-phone calls	84
Voice call	52
Options and related devices	
.....	550
Outbox	278
Out-camera	25
Own Number	
Checking	48
Displaying details	447
Editing	447
Recording	446
Reset	447

P

Packet communication	
Dialup connection (APN) setup	
.....	491
Optimization	490
Settings	484
Pasting	
Characters	519
Schedules	437
Pause	52
Phone	
Any Key Answer	63
Call waiting ring tone	62
Customized Call	56
Making calls	50
On-hold	51
Operations during calls	52
Operations while receiving calls	
.....	62
Pause/Timed pause/+	52
Phonebook	102
Receiving calls	61
Speakerphone function	51
Sub address	59
Phone To	
Mail	290
Site	223
Phonebook (FOMA terminal)	
.....	104
Phonebook (UIM)	108
Pictograms	
Conversion list	545
Entering	517
List	538
PIM Lock	160
PIN Code ON/OFF	154
PIN1 code	
Changing	155
PIN2 code	
Changing	155
Power	
Auto Power ON/OFF	427
ON/OFF	45
Turning power OFF	46
Turning power ON	45
Predict conversion function ...	516

Prefix	
Customized Call	56
Making calls	56
Settings	58
Pre-installed software	328
Priority Comm Mode	70
Privacy Mode Setting	161
Setting operation	161
Starting	163
Protection	
i-a ppli	340
Mail	287
Message R/F	235
Screen memo	219
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)	38

Q

Quality Alarm	133
Quick Mail	266
Quick Reference Manual	588

R

Ranking Search	113
Mail frequency rank	113
Call frequency rank	113
Resetting	113
Reason for hiding caller ID	62
Receive Option	269
Setting	297
Received Calls	65
Deleting	66
Making calls	65
Missed calls	66
Registering to phonebook	65
Receive/Reject only i-mode Mail	
.....	244
Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
.....	244
Receiving calls (→ Phone)	
Reconnect Alarm	59
Recorded File Restriction	383
Redial	53
Deleting	54
Registering to phonebook	54
Register a Secret Code	243
Register USSD	473
Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
.....	244
Reject non-Registered Caller	
.....	170
Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	244
Reject/Accept Call	
Enabling settings	167
Setting	166
Remote Control	472
Remote control function (Infrared)	
.....	413

Remote Lock	164
Reply message	474
Reply to Mail	271
Reserved Update	567
Reset	
Custom Menu	445
Delete All Data	459
Functions	458
Mail address	244
Number of calls	113
Number of mails	113
Own Number	447
Stand-by display	141
Total calls cost	450
Total calls duration	450
Response and Hold	71
Restoring backup data	394
Ring Alert Delay	169
Ring tone	128
Melody list	130
Movie ringtone	128
Movie ringtone (Phonebook)	
.....	106
Priority	130
Setting	128
Ring Volume	68

S

Save Word	
Deleting	520
Schedule alarm or alarm in	
advance	436
Scheduler	430
Calendar	430
Calendar Mode Setting	431
Calling a member	439
Changing	437
Checking	437
Check No. of Items	441
Composing mail	438
Copying	437
Day Off setting	432
Deleting	438
Displaying a site	440
Holiday Setting	432
Member list	439
Pasting	437
Saving	433
Secret Attribute	440
Sending mail to a member	
.....	440
Screen Memo	
Deleting	220
Displaying	218
Protecting	219
Renaming	218
Saving	218
Scroll	209
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook	123
Schedule	441
Secrecy Search	124

Secret Code		Silent Mode	133		
Registering	243	Site		T	
Setting	122	Connecting to SSL page	205	Talking Voice Memo	448
Secret Mode	166	Displaying	204	Deleting	449
Security code		Displaying URL	210	Playing	449
i-mode password	153	Flash function	208	Recording	448
Network security code	152	Last Visited URL	206	TASK key	25
PIN1 code	152	Operating	207	Terminal security code	
PIN2 code	152	Reloading	209	Changing	153
Terminal security code	152	Scrolling screen	209	Timed pause	53
Selecting functions from submenu	33	Slot Input Method	521	Total calls duration	450
List of characters assigned to		input bar	535	Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)	95
Selecting item from check box	35	SMS	248	Troubleshooting	553
		Snap	367		
Selecting item from pull-down menu	34	Software Update		U	
Self Mode	159	Canceling reservation	568	UIM phonebook	108
Send DTMF	95	Checking reservation	568	Checking number of records	125
Sent mail (→ Mail)		Immediate update	566	Checking phonebook entries	115
Service code	473	Reserved Update	567	Column Search	115
Service Dialing Number	471	Starting	565	Composing i-mode Mail	111
Services available	549	Sort Criteria	293	Composing Short Message (SMS)	111
Shooting		Sound Recorder	414	Copying to FOMA terminal	119
Chara-den	379	Composing mail with recorded sound	416	Copying to other screens	117
Still image	179	Quality	417	Customized Call	56
Video	184	Recording	416	Deleting	120
Short Message (SMS)	248	Recording screen	414	Displaying in the order of Japanese syllabary	110
Check SMS	314	Restricting size	418	Editing	116
Composing	310	Sound files	415	Group Search	112
Composing from the phonebook	111	Speaker	25	Group Setting	109
Deleting (FOMA terminal)	288	Speakerphone function	51	Name display	103
Deleting (UIM)	318	SSL communication	202	Name Search	112
Delivered report	248	Connecting to SSL page	205	Number Search	114
Display Priority	302	Stamps set	361	Registering	108
Displaying	278	Stand-by Display		Searching	110
Moving/copying to FOMA terminal	317	Calendar Display	138	Show all names	110
Moving/copying to UIM	315	Canceling	141	UIM (FOMA card)	
Number of characters sent/received	248	Chara-den	135	Functional differences	39
Quick Mail	266	Clock Display Format	149	Inserting/removing	37
Reading folder list screen	279	Customizing	138	Operation restriction function	38
Reading list/view screen	280	Image	135	Security codes	38
Receiving	312	i-appli stand-by display	137	Unblocking PIN lock	156
Rejection Settings	244	Video/i-motion	135	Unsent mail (→ Mail)	
Setting	314	Stand-by time	41	Unsent messages (folder)	278
Storage period	248	Stand-by Voice Memo		Update Definition	571
Short Message (SMS) in UIM		Deleting	449	Scan Version	572
Deleting	315	Playing	449	Upgrade	339
Displaying	316	Recording	448	URL entry	212
Moving/copying to FOMA terminal	317	Starting i-appli Shortcut	334	URL History	212
Moving/copying to UIM	315	Still Camera (→ Camera)		User certificate	237
Shutter key	25	Substitute image		USSD code	473
Signature		Chara-den	89		
Inserting (i-mode Mail)	250	Setting	92		
Inserting (SMS)	310	Suspend Mail	244		
Setting	296	Switching outgoing images	89		
		Symbols			
		Conversion list	539		
		Entering	517		
		List	538		

V

Vibrator Setting	131
Incoming chat mail	309
Incoming mail	302
Incoming Message R/F	233
i-a ppli	328
Video data interchange	551
Video-phone	82
Brightness/color density	91
Camera effects	90
Chara-den	88
Compact light	96
Customized Call	56
Display settings	96
External Device setting	100
Frames	90
Macro mode	95
Making calls	83
Operations during calls	84
Operations while receiving calls	86
Quality of incoming images	97
Quality of outgoing images	89
Rate setting (Customized Call)	56
Rate setting (Phonebook)	122
Reading screen display	82
Receiving calls	86
Selecting still image	91
Sending still image	91
Sending your image	98
Settings during a call	97
Substitute image (Chara-den)	92
Substitute images (Setting)	88
Switching in-camera/out-camera	94
Total calls duration	450
Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)	95
Voice call auto switch	98
Zoom	94
Video-phone display setting	96
Main screen size	96
Switching main screen/sub screen	96
Video-phone Incoming & Outgoing setting	99
Video-phone Setting	98
Video/i-motion	
Capture	370
Clipping	371
Clipping size	372
Composing i-motion Mail ...	367
Creating ticker	373
Deleting	405
Editing	370
Moving/copying	399
Playback restrictions	368
Playing	366
Recording	184

Setting snap	367
Settings	375
Sort	406
Using album	399
Using video/i-motion	369
View/Edit Detail Info	402
Virus Scan function	570
Displaying scan result	571
Scan Version	572
Setting	570
Update Definition	571
Voice call (→ Phone)	
Voice Mail Service	463
Voice message playback ...	464
Voice Memo	
Deleting	449
Playing	449
Recording	448
Saving to phonebook	449
Volume	
Ring volume	68
Volume of caller's voice	67

W

Warranty	562
Web To	
Mail	290
Site	223
WORLD CALL	57
Auto assist setting	57
Making a call	57
WORLD WING	39

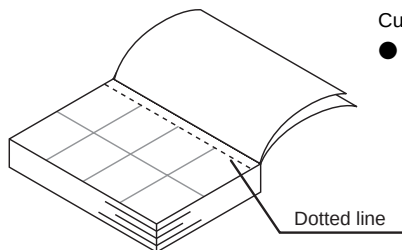
Other

186/184	55
3D Sound	129
5-touch Input Method	513
Character assignment	534
Fixed phrases	516
Input by quoting data	517
Input prediction function	516
Symbols and pictograms	517
64K data communication	
Settings	487
#31#	55
*31#	55
+	53
電車で GO! 3D サウンド 山手線一周 (GO by Train! 3D Sound Going round in Yamanote line)	329
フリップル (FLIPULL)	330
便利! 多機能電卓 (Multifunction calculator)	332

Quick Reference Manual

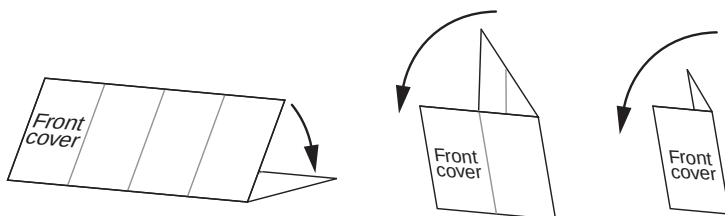
How to use Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

● Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.



Fold the sheet as shown in the illustration so that the front cover is on top.

Contents of Quick Reference Manual

Adding entries in the phonebook	1
Editing the phonebook entries	3
Searching the phonebook entries	3
Character entry	4
Camera	8
Video-phone	10
i-mode Mail	11
Menu list	15
Network services	24
Reading display	28

General Inquiries

<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

* For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Character entry

Switching 5-touch and slot input method

● Switching during character inputs

[Menu] **[7.3.1]**

● Switching during stand-by

[Menu] **[8.3.1]** **[9.3.1]** **[3.3.1]** → Select input method field
→ **[1.3.1]** (5-touch input) / **[2.3.1]** (slot input) → **[0]**

Switching input mode

④ several times

● Pressing **[0]** and selecting input mode can also switch input mode

Adding entries in the phonebook

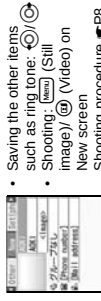
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 **[Menu]** **[4.3.1]** **[2.3.1]** on the stand-by display

2 Select Name field → Enter the name



3 **[0]** → Set each item



4 **[0]**

5 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → **[0]**

1

Entering/converting character (5-touch Input Method)

<Example> Entering "勢水"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode
"勢" : **[3.3.1]** three times → **[0]** (move the cursor one position to the right)
"水" : **[2.3.1]** three times → **[1.3.1]** twice

● Inserting characters: Move the cursor to position to insert → Enter characters
● Operation before setting the entered characters
[Menu] : Changes characters to two-byte katakana

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]** : Canceling entered characters
[0] : Changes upper/lower case
④ several times: Switch characters in the reverse of normal character input (example:
... → **[1]** → **[0]** → **[2]** → **[3]** → **[4]** → **[5]** → **[6]** → **[7]** → **[8]** → **[9]** → **[1]**...)
"s" several times: Adding voiced sound
"s" " and semi-voiced sound "s"
(example: → **[1]** → **[2]** → **[3]** → **[4]** → **[5]** → ...)

4

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

1 **[Menu]** **[4.3.1]** **[3.3.1]** on the stand-by display

2 Select Name field → Enter the name

3 **[0]** → Set each item

4 **[0]**

Registering from the redial list or received call list

1 **[0]** or **[0]** on the stand-by display

2 Place the cursor at the entry to save →

[Menu] **[1.3.1]**

● Adding to the registered entry: **[Menu]** **[2.3.1]**

3 **[1.3.1]** (FOMA terminal phonebook) /

[2.3.1] (UIM phonebook)

● To add to the registered entry, select the party to edit

4 Set each item → **[0]**

● For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 6

5 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → **[0]**

6 Select "Overwrite" or "New entry"

2

2 **[0]**

● Displaying conversion option list: **[0]** /

[0]

● Returning to status before conversion:

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]**

3 **[0]**

Deleting characters

● When the cursor is in the text

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]** : Deleting characters at the cursor

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]** half way for over a second:

Deleting characters at the cursor position

and all the characters after the right at the cursor

● When the cursor is in the end of the text

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]** : Deleting characters after the left

at the cursor

[0.2.3.1] **[0.2.3.1]** half way for over a second:

Deleting all entered characters

6

Editing the phonebook entries

1 **[0]** on the stand-by display

● Switching the phonebook: **[0]**

2 Place the cursor at the entry to edit →

[Menu] **[3.3.1]**

3 Edit → **[0]**

● For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5

4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → **[0]**

5 Select "Overwrite" or "New entry"

Searching the phonebook entries

1 **[Menu]** **[4.3.1]** **[1.3.1]** on the stand-by display

● Switching the phonebook: **[0]**

2 **[1.3.1]** → **[7.3.1]**

● For the UIM phonebook, press **[1.3.1]** to

[4.3.1]

3

Entering symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

● Entering symbols

④ while entering → Select a symbol

● **[0]** **[1.3.1]** can also input

● Entering pictograms

④ while entering → Select a pictogram

● **[0]** **[2.3.1]** can also input

● Entering fixed phrases

④ while entering → Select a fixed phrase

● **[0]** **[7.3.1]** while entering → Select a fixed phrase

● **[0]** **[Menu]** can also input

Kuten Code Input

[0] **[8.3.1]** while entering → Enter KUTEN code

(4-digit)

7

Cut here

Shooting still image/video

- Shooting still image
 - 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
 - 2 Point the camera at the object and or
- Using Auto Focus
 - 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
 - 2 Point the camera at the object and
 - 3 Fully when focused in
- Recording video
 - 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
 - 2 Point the camera at the object and or
 - 3 or

- 2 Select the address field → Select input method → Enter or select address
- 3 Select the subject field → Enter subject message
- 4 Select the message field → Enter message
 - Composing Deco-mail: on the message text entry screen → Select decoration method → Enter characters
- 5 Saving mail:

Displaying or playing shot image/video

- Displaying image
 - 1 on the stand-by display
 - 2 Select "Camera" folder
 - 3 Select image to display
 - Displaying the other images in folder:
- Playing video
 - 1 on the stand-by display
 - 2 Select "Camera" folder
 - 3 Select video to play
 - Operation available during video playback
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play fast forward
 - : Pause/rewind
 - : Stop
 - : Return to video/i-motion list

File attachment

- 1 Select the attachment field on the mail composition screen
 - Display procedure of the mail composition screen
 - 2 Select type of file to attach
 - 3 Select a folder
 - 4 Select a file
 - Canceling attachment: Place the cursor at the attachment field to cancel → → Select "Yes"
 - 5
- Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail
- <Example> Editing unsent mail
- 1 on the stand-by display
 - Editing sent mail: on the stand-by display
 - 2 Select a folder
 - 3 Select mail
 - Editing sent mail:
 - 4 Edit →

Making video-phone calls

- 1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display
- 2
 - Specifying the communication speed for dialing: → Select call type → → Select "Yes"
- 3 Talk with the other party
 - Placing call on hold:
 - Switching the speakerphone call:
 - Switching the image to send:
- 4 If a call is ended,

Receiving video-phone calls

- 1 A call is received
 - Holding answer:
- 2
 - Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making video-phone calls"
- 3 If a call is ended,

Receiving i-mode Mail

- Up to 1,000 received mail/messages can be saved.
- 1 Receive mail
 - Mail ring tone sounds, the multi-indicator flashes and the reception result screen is displayed.
- 2 or
- 3 Select a folder
- 4 Select mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

- twice on the stand-by display

Number of characters sent/received

Item	Two-byte characters	One-byte characters
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Address	-	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Up to 200 unsent/sent mail/messages can be saved.

- 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
-
- Number of one-byte characters that can be entered

Menu list

Press on the stand-by display and input the number of each item.

<Example> Activating a camera

→ → →	→ → →
1 Mail	1 Inbox
2 Compose message	2 Compose message
3 Chat mail	3 Chat mail
4 Outbox	4 Outbox
5 Check new message	5 Check new message
6 i-mode message	6 i-mode message
7 Receive option	7 Receive option
8 SMS	8 SMS
9 Compose SMS	9 Compose SMS
10 Sent SMS	10 Sent SMS
11 Read templates	11 Read templates
12 Mail setting	12 Mail setting
13 Incoming message	13 Incoming message
14 Sort criteria	14 Sort criteria
15 Reply format	15 Reply format
16 Receive option	16 Receive option
17 Incoming msg attach	17 Incoming msg attach
18 Display settings	18 Display settings
19 Message list	19 Message list
20 Display priority	20 Display priority
21 Incoming chat mail	21 Incoming chat mail
22 Signature	22 Signature
23 Receive option	23 Receive option
24 Mail group	24 Mail group
25 Message attachment	25 Message attachment

2	i-mode	
	1 i Menu	2 Bookmark
3	Go to location	2 URL history
	1 Enter URL	3 Last visited URL
	Screen memo	
	i-mode message	
	Message R&F	
4	Message Request	2 Message Free
	3 Message settings	
5	Auto display	2 Message retrieval
	3 Message attachment	4 Incoming msg. alert
6	i-mode setting	2 Connection timeout
	1 i-mode shortcuts	3 Set certificate
7	Host selection	6 Certificate host
	3 Certificate download	
8	Display settings	2 Display color
	1 Image/Effect	
9	i-motion settings	
	3 i-appli	
3	Software list	
	2 i-appli settings	
4	Software sort	2 Auto start
	3 Software info display	4 Light settings
5	Vibrate settings	6 i-appli shortcut

16

8	Settings	
	7 Call	
1	Noise reduction	2 Reconnect alarm
	3 On-hold tone	4 Quality alarm
2	Prefix dialing	6 Auto assist setting
	5 Snd address	8 Close settings
3	Open answer	
	8 Video-phone	
4	Incoming & outgoing	2 Operation
	3 Image	4 External device
5	Others	
	1 Save word	2 Save phrase
6	Text input method	4 Self mode
	5 NW search method	6 Software Update
7	Edit by slide	
9	NW Services	
	1 Voice mail	
1	Activate Voice mail	2 Set ringing time
	3 Deactivate Voice mail	4 Voice mail Status Request
2	Play messages	6 Voice mail settings
	7 Check messages	8 Notification
3	Notify missed call	
	1 Activate Missed Call Notification	2 Deactivate Missed Call Notification
4	Missed Call Notification	2 Missed Call Notification Status Request

20

3	i-appli	
	3 Display history	2 Abnormal ext. hist.
1	Start failure hist.	3 Security error hist.
	3 Phonebook & Logs	
4	Phonebook	2 Phonebook new entry
	3 Phonebook(iUMI) new entry	4 Received calls
5	Redial	
	6 Ans. machine/Voice memo	2 Recorded messages
6	Ans. machine	3 Record voice memo
	3 Record voice memo	4 Voice memos
7	Own number	
	7 Data Box	
5	Image	2 i-motion
	1 Image	4 Chara-den
6	Melody	
	7 Tools	
1	Camera	2 Movie camera
	2 Sound recorder	4 Bar code reader
3	Data exchange	
	1 Send all Ir data	2 Receive Ir data
4	Data exchange settings	4 USB mode settings
	6 miniSD card	
7	Stationery	
	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad
3	Alarm clock	4 Calculator

17

9	NW Services	
	2 Call waiting	
1	Activate Call Waiting	2 Deactivate Call Waiting
	3 Call Waiting Status Request	
3	Call forwarding	
	1 Activate Call Forwarding	2 Deactivate Call Forwarding
3	Register the Forwarding Number	4 Set/Cancel Forwarding Party
	5 Call Forwarding Status Request	
4	Nuisance call barring	
	1 Register Nuisance Caller	2 Delete all entries
3	Delete Most Recent Entry	
	3 Caller ID notification	
1	Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification	2 Caller ID Notification Status Request
	6 Caller ID request	
1	Activate Caller ID Request	2 Deactivate Caller ID Request
	3 Caller ID Request Status Request	
7	Set arrival act	
	1 Activate Arrival Act	2 Deactivate Arrival Act
3	Arrival Act Status Request	
	8 Arrival call act	
9	Others	
	1 Register USSD	2 Record reply message
3	Remote control	
	1 Activate Remote Control	2 Deactivate Remote Control
3	Remote Control Status Request	

21

8	Settings	
	1 Sounds/Vibrate	
1	Set sound	2 Msp. alert volume
	1 Ring alert volume	4 Keypad sound
3	Volume	6 Silent mode
	5 Low battery alert	8 Ring alert delay
7	Vibrator	
	9 Charge alert	
2	Display	
	1 Stand-by	
2	Mail/Call image	
	1 Call image	2 Outgoing msg. image
3	Incoming msg. image	4 Retrieving image
	5 Receive display	
3	Color scheme	4 Battery icon
	5 Display light	6 Illumination
3	Font	
	5 Select language	
3	Security	
	1 Lock	2 PIN lock
1	All lock	
	3 Remote lock	
2	Secret mode	
	3 Keypad dial lock	

18

9	NW Services	
	4 English guidance	
1	Guidance Setting	2 Guidance Status Request
	5 Dual network	
1	Dual Network Switching	2 Dual Network Status Request
	6 Service Dialing Number	
1	ドコモ緊急通報先へ受付	
	0 Own number	

Key operations for functions

Function	Operation procedure
Power ON/OFF	⑤ for over 2 seconds
Setting/canceling Self Mode	⑤②③ for over a second → Select "Yes"
Setting/canceling Key Lock	Slide the keypad switch downward and release
Setting/canceling Driving Mode	③②③ for over a second
Displaying i-mode menu	④
Displaying i-appli folder list	④ for over a second
Displaying Received Calls	⑤

22

8	Settings	
	4 UIM	
1	Change PIN code	2 Change PIN2 code
	3 PIN code ON/OFF	
5	Change security code	6 Privacy mode
	7 Scanning function	
1	Update definition	2 Scanning settings
	3 Scan version	
4	Info/Reset	
	1 Call duration	2 Confirm
3	Battery level	4 Call cost
	5 Reset	6 Delete all data
5	Clock	
	1 Date & time	2 Auto power ON
3	Auto power OFF	4 Clock display format
	5 Alarm auto power ON	
6	Call/Answer	
	1 Incoming & outgoing	2 Anonymous caller
3	Headset switch	4 Auto answer
	5 Reject/Accept call	6 Memory reject call
7	Status message	
	8 Any key answer	
9	Priority comm mode	

19

Function	Operation procedure
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode*	⑤ for over a second (To cancel, ⑤) for over a second → Enter the terminal security code)
Displaying Redial	⑤
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	⑤②③ or ⑤②③ for over a second
New Task menu	②③
Displaying Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu	⑤②③

* Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.

23

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn the power off.

- Airplanes • Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use the phone in Driving Mode.

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet place, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Consider privacy

 Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, or choose some other mode to keep from disturbing those around you.

● Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and other all sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off except for the shutter sound while shooting (Silent Mode).  P133

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode).  P134

● Driving Mode

When a call is received while driving, an announcement informs the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call is then terminated. Your driving concentration is not affected as the ring tones are silenced.  P74

● Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing.  P131

● Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief voice message.  P76

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

 P463, P466



Application for "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "Nuisance Call Blocking Service", "WORLD CALL" and "WORLD WING" is available using e-site.

- Access via i-mode iMenu ▶ □料金とお申込(charges & application) ▶
■ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) No packet communication charges
- Access via PC, etc. <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> ▶ オンライン手続き/照会サービス(Online applications/inquiry service) ▶
ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) or <http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/>
- You will need your "network ID number" that you specified at the time of application in order to access e-site via i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site via i-mode.
- You will need your "user ID" and "password" in order to access e-site from your PC.
- If you do not have or if you have forgotten your "network ID number", "user ID", and "password", please contact the DoCoMo service center listed below.
- e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- There may be cases where access to the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy
and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service center, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



'05.1 (1st edition)